



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

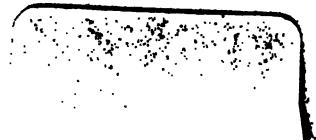
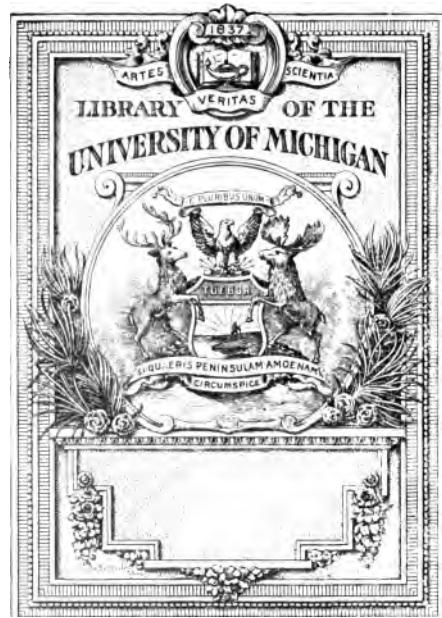
### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



A 3 9015 00394 134 4

University of Michigan - BUHR



K 3



5

Anglistische Forschungen

Herausgegeben von Dr. Johannes Hoops

1340 15

# The Anglo-Saxon Weapon Names

Treated

archæologically and etymologically

## May Lansfield Keller



Heidelberg

**Alle Rechte, besonders das Recht der Übersetzung in fremde Sprachen,  
werden vorbehalten.**

## Introduction.

In making public the following investigation of the weapon names in Anglo-Saxon, attention should be called to the fact that, owing to the frequent use of general terms, such as *wæpen*, *searu* etc., applied to equipment and armour, and to that of the word *sweord* referring to sword, it has been deemed advisable not to include all references to the same, such only having been selected as are of interest either from an etymological or archaeological standpoint.

Furthermore, for a full list of the words (in simplex) used in Epic poetry to designate the coat of mail, which in prose refer usually to an ordinary garment, reference has been made to a dissertation on «Die altenglischen Kleidernamen» by Lilly L. Stroebe, Heidelberg 1904.

It is regretted that the dissertation by R. Wagner on «Die Angriffswaffen der Angelsachsen» was received after the completion of the present investigation, so that comparison of results has been impossible.

The compiler also avails herself of this opportunity to express her thanks and feeling of profound indebtedness to Professor Johannes Hoops, of the University of Heidelberg, for his ever ready suggestion and aid in the planning and execution of the work.

820,5  
150065  
13

Owing to the necessity of having all proof-sheets sent from Heidelberg to America for correction, and as a result of having to read the first sheets while travelling from place to place, some even being lost in forwarding, the difficulties of proof-correction for the present volume have been well-nigh insurmountable. To this fact, then, is due the appended list of corrections, and the mistakes still remaining may also be attributed to the same cause, as well as to the failure to receive all of the final proof-sheets.

Baltimore, Md., Sept. 1905.

**May Lansfield Keller.**

# Table of Contents.

	Page.
<b>List of Abbreviations . . . . .</b>	<b>VII</b>
<b>Bibliography.</b>	
1. Old English Texts examined . . . . .	1
2. Archaeological and philological Books of Reference . . . . .	5

## First Part.

### Antiquarian Investigation.

I. Introductory: General Survey of Weapons in use among the Anglo-Saxons . . . . .	13
II. The Weapons of Attack . . . . .	18
1. The Spear . . . . .	18
2. The Sword and its Attachments . . . . .	31
3. Bow and Arrow . . . . .	48
4. Axe . . . . .	56
5. Sling . . . . .	62
6. War club . . . . .	64
7. Engines of War . . . . .	65
III. The Weapons of Defence . . . . .	67
1. The Shield . . . . .	67
2. The Helmet . . . . .	79
3. The Body Armour . . . . .	98
4. Greaves . . . . .	111

## Second Part.

### Philological Investigation.

I. General Terms . . . . .	118
II. Weapons of Attack . . . . .	128
1. The Spear . . . . .	128
2. The Sword and its Attachments . . . . .	155
3. Bow and Arrow . . . . .	197
4. Miscellaneous . . . . .	215

	Page.
<b>III. Weapons of Defence . . . . .</b>	<b>224</b>
1. The Shield . . . . .	224
2. The Helm . . . . .	242
3. Body Armour . . . . .	255
4. Greaves . . . . .	270
<b>Corrections . . . . .</b>	<b>272</b>
<b>Alphabetical Index . . . . .</b>	<b>274</b>

---

## List of Abbreviations.

---

Av. = Avesta.	NHG. = New High German.
Du. = Dutch.	NLG. = New Low German.
f. = feminine.	North. = Northumbrian.
Fr. = French.	OE. = Old English.
Germ. = Germanic.	OFries. = Old Friesian.
Gl. = Glossary.	OFr. = Old French.
Gr. = Greek.	OHG. = Old High German.
Idg. = Indo-germanic.	OI. = Old Indian.
Icel. = Icelandic.	OCSlav. = Old Church Slavic.
It. = Italian.	ODu. = Old Dutch.
m. = masculine.	ON. = Old Norse.
Merc. = Mercian.	OPruss. = Old Prussian.
ME. = Middle English.	ORuss. = Old Russian.
MDu. = Middle Dutch.	OSax. = Old Saxon.
MHG. = Middle High German.	Port. = Portuguese.
MLG. = Middle Low German.	Prov. = Provençal.
MS. = Manuscript.	rt. = root.
MLat. = Middle Latin.	Span. = Spanish.
n. = neuter.	Skt. = Sanskrit.
NE. = New or Modern English.	WGerm. = West Germanic.
NFr. = New French.	

---



## Bibliography.

---

### 1. Old English Texts examined.

- Aedelst.* = The Victory of Aeðelstan at Brunanburh, Bibl. Poes. I, 374. Kluges Ags. Lesebuch, 128 ff.
- Aelfrc. Es.* = Aelfric's book of Esther, edited by Assmann in Anglia, Bd. IX.
- Aelfc. Gr. and Aelfc. Gl.* = Aelfric's Grammar and Glossar, ed. Jul. Zupitza, Samml. engl. Denkm., Bd. I. Berlin 1880. The Glossary corresponds to the vocabulary printed by WW. at p. 304 ff., 536 ff.
- Aelfc. L. S.* See Homl. Skt.
- Aelfc. Hom.* = The Homilies of Aelfric, ed. Benj. Thorpe. 2 vols. London 1843.
- Aelfc. IS.* = Aelfric's Version of Alcuini «Interrogationes Sigewulfi in Genesins». Ed. by Mac Lean in Anglia, Bd. VI and VII.
- A. L.* = Ancient Laws and Institutes of England. Ed. B. Thorpe. London 1840.
- Ags. Lesebuch* mit Glossar, Fr. Kluge, 3. Aufl. Halle 1902.
- An.* = Andreas, Bibl. Poes. II, 1 ff.
- Ap.* = Die Schicksale der Apostel, Bibl. Poes. II, p. 87 ff.
- Az.* = Azarias, Bibl. Poes. III, p. 491 a. 516 ff.
- B.* = Beowulf, Bibl. Poes. I, 149 ff.
- Bd.* = Old English version of Bede's Ecclesiastical History. Ed. T. Miller, EETS. 95, 96.
- Benet* = The rule of St. Benet (Interlinear Version), ed. by H. Logemann, London-Utrecht 1888.
- Bibl. Poes.* = Bibliothek der ags. Poesie, begründet von Ch. W. M. Grein, neu bearbeitet von R. P. Wülker. 3 Bde. Kassel 1881 ff.

- Bibl. Prs.* = Bibliothek der ags. Prosa, begründet von Grein, fortgesetzt von Wülker. 5 Bde. 1872 ff.
- Bl. Gl.* = Blickling Glossaries to the Psalms (s. Bl. Homl.).
- Bl. Homl.* = The Blickling Homilies of the tenth cent. (971), ed. R. Morris. EETS. 58, 63, 73.
- Boet.* = Metra des Boetius. Bibl. Poes. III, 247 ff.
- Bot.* = Botschaft des gemahls, Bibl. Poes. I, p. 306 ff.
- By.* = Byrhtnoth's Death, Bibl. Poes. I, 358 ff.
- Cant. Ps.* = Eadwine's Canterbury Psalter, ed. F. Harsley, Part II, Text. EETS. 92. (According to Wanley about the time of Stephen 1135–54 — cf. Napier PEB. 23<sup>672</sup>.)
- Cant. H.* = The Hymns — s. Cant. Ps.
- Chart. Th.* = Diplomatarium Anglicum aevi Saxonici. Ed. Thorpe. London 1865.
- Chron.* = Two of the Saxon Chronicles parallel with supplementary extracts from the others, ed. Ch. Plummer on the basis of an edit. by F. Earle. 2 Bde. Oxford 1892.
- Cod. Bruss.* = Die ae. Glossen der Cod. 1650 der königl. Bibliothek zu Brüssel. Anglia VI. Ed. by Hausknecht.
- Cod. Dip.* = Codex diplomaticus aevi Saxonici, ed. J. M. Kemble, London 1839–48. 6 vols.
- Corp.* = Corpus Glossar OET., p. 35 ff. (The same as in WW. 1–54).
- Crä.* = Bi Monna Cræftum, Bibl. Poes. III, 140 ff.
- Cri.* = Cynewulf's Crist, Bibl. Poes. III, 1 ff.
- Dan.* = Daniel, Bibl. Poes. II, 476 ff.
- Dōm.* = Dōmes Day (Exon), Bibl. Poes. II, p. 250.
- DVF.* = «De visionibus Fursei», from MS. jun. No. 23, Bibl. Bodl. oxon. fol. 48 r<sup>o</sup>. A translation of the Latin legend of Fursaeus in Anglo-Saxon. See R. A. Ed. Wright, p. 276.
- El.* = Elene, Bibl. Poes. II, 126 ff.
- Ep. Al.* = Epistola Alexandri ad Aristotelem. Ed. Baskerville, Angl. IV. 139.
- Ep. Erf.* = Epinal and Erfurt Glossaries. OET., p. 36 ff.
- Exod.* = Exodus, Bibl. Poes. II, 445 ff.
- Fæd. lär.* = Des Vaters Lehren, Bibl. Poes. I, 353 ff.
- Fin.* = The Battle of Finsburg, Bibl. Poes. I, 14.
- G. B.* = Cartularium Saxonicum, Ed. W. de Gray-Birch. 3 vols. London 1885–93 (quoted according to number of paragraph and year).
- Gen.* = Genesis, Bibl. Poes. II, 318 ff.

- Ges. Lieberm.* = Gesetze der Angelsachsen, ed. F. Liebermann.  
2 Lieferungen (bis zu Cnuts Gesetzen incl.). Halle 1898 ff.
- Gn. Cott.* = Bibl. Poes. I, 338.
- Gn. Ex.* = Bibl. Poes. I, 341.
- Gosp. Mt., Mk., Lk., Jh.* = The Gospels according to St. Matthew etc. in Anglo-Saxon and Northumbrian versions synoptically arranged by WW. Skeat. Cambridge 1871—1887.
- Gud.* = Guðlac, Bibl. Poes. III, 55 ff.
- Hö.* = Höllenfahrt Christi, Bibl. Poes. III, p. 175 ff.
- Hom. Ass.* = Ags. Homilien und Heiligenleben (1—116 Werke Aelfrics). Ed. B. Assmann, Bibl. Poes. III, Kassel 1889.
- Hom. Skt.* = Aelfric's Lives of the Saints, ed. WW. Skeat. EETS. 76, 82, 94, 114. 2 vols.
- Hpt. Gl.* = Haupt Glossar in Z. f. d. Alter. IX, 401—530, ed. by Bouterwek.
- Judic.* = Judicum, Bibl. Prs. I, 253 ff.
- Jud.* = Judith, Bibl. Poes. II, 294 ff.
- Jul.* = Juliana, Bibl. Poes. III, 117 ff.
- Leechd.* = Leechdoms, wortcunning and starcraft of early England, ed. O. Cockayne, London 1864—66. 3 vols.
- Leid.* = Das Leidener Glossar. Text der Hds. Programm des Kgl. humanistischen Gymnasiums St. Stephan in Augsburg 1901. Verfaßt von P. Plazidus Glogger.
- Lind.* = North. Lindisfarne Glossary to the four Gospels (or Durham Book), s. Gospels.
- Mart.* = An Old English Martyrology, ed. G. Herzfeld. EETS. 116.
- M. C.* = Anglo-Saxon Metrical Charm, printed in Reliquae Antiquae (s. Wright), vol. II, p. 287, from MS. Harl. No. 585, fol. 175 r°, from a book of medical receipts written in the 10<sup>th</sup> cent.
- Men.* = Menologium seu Calendarium Poeticum ex Hickesiano Thesauro. Ed. by. Fox, London 1830.
- Mod.* = Bi Manna Mode, Bibl. Poes. III, 144 ff.
- OEGl.* = Old English Glosses, ed. A. S. Napier. Anecdota Oxoniensia 1900 (quoted according to sections).
- OET.* = The oldest English Texts, ed. H. Sweet. London 1858.  
(Urk. = 7th — 9th cent. charters ib., p. 421 ff.)
- Or.* = King Alfred's Orosius Translation, ed. H. Sweet, EETS. 79.
- Pan.* = The Panther, Bibl. Poes. III, p. 164 ff.
- Past.* = King Alfred's West-Saxon version of Gregory's Pastoral Care, ed. H. Sweet, EETS. 45, 50.

- Phar.* = Pharao, Bibl. Poes. III, p. 182.  
*Ph.* = Phoenix, Bibl. Poes. III, 95 ff.  
*Prs. Deut.* = Deuteronomy, Bibl. Prosa I, 201 ff.  
*Prs. Exod.* = Exodus, Bibl. Prosa I, 110 ff.  
*Prs. Gen.* = Genesis, Bibl. Prosa I, 25 ff.  
*Prs. Job* = Job, Bibl. Prosa I, 265 ff.  
*Prs. Josh.* = Joshua, Bibl. Prosa I, 235 ff.  
*Prs. Levit.* = Leviticus, Bibl. Prosa I, 166 ff.  
*Prs. Numb.* = Numbers, Bibl. Prosa I, 179 ff.  
*Ps.* = Psalmes, Bibl. Poes. III, 332 ff.  
*Ps. Spl.* = Psalterium Davidis Latino Saxonicum vetus a Johanno Spellmanno editum. London 1640. Quoted from B. T.  
*R<sup>1</sup>.* = Mercian Rushworth Glossary to Matthew.  
*R<sup>2</sup>.* = Northumbrian Rushworth Glossary to Mark, Luke, John (s. Gospels).  
*R. A.* = Reliquae Antiquae. Scraps from Ancient MSS. illustrating chiefly early English literature and the English language. Ed. by Thomas Wright and James Halliwell. London 1843. 2 vols.  
*Reim.* = Reimlied, Bibl. Poes. III, p. 157 ff.  
*Ridls.* = The Riddles of the Cod. Exod., Bibl. Poes. III, p. 183 ff.  
*Run.* = Runenlied, Bibl. Poes. I, 331 ff. Kluge ags. Lesebuch 152 ff.  
*Ruth. Cross.* = Ruthwell Cross. — Traumgesicht vom Kreuze, Bibl. Poes. II, p. 111 ff.  
*Sal.* = Salomon and Saturn, Bibl. Poes. III, 304 ff.  
*Sat.* = Christ and Satan, Bibl. Poes. II, p. 521 ff.  
*Sch.* = Wunder der Schöpfung, Bibl. Poes. III, p. 152 ff.  
*Seef.* = Seefahrer, Bibl. Poes. I, p. 290 ff.  
*Spl. Ps.* = Spelmann's Psalter. Quoted from B. T., s. Ps. Spl.  
*VPs.* = (Mercian) Vespasian Psalter, OET., p. 183 ff.  
*VH.* = The Vespasian Hymns, ib., p. 401 ff.  
*Wald.* = Waldere fragments, Bibl. Poes. I, 6.  
*Wal.* = Der Walfisch, Bibl. Poes. III, p. 167.  
*Wand.* = Der Wanderer, Bibl. Poes. I, 284.  
*Wid.* = Widsið, Bibl. Poes. I<sup>1</sup>, p. 1 ff.  
*Wulfst.* = Wulfstan's Homilies, ed. Napier. Zupitza, Samml. engl. Denkm., Bd. IV. Berlin 1883.  
*WW.* = Anglo-Saxon and Old English Vocabularies by Th. Wright, second ed. by R. P. Würker. 2 vols. London 1884.  
*Wy.* = Bi Manna Wyrdum, Bibl. Poes. III, p. 148 ff.

## 2. Books of Reference.

### Archaeological, philological, and those referring to the Manuscripts.

*Agathias Scolasticus* — continued the hist. of Procop. (from the time of Justin. 558—559). Niebuhr, Bonn 1828.

*Akermann* John Y. — An account of Excavations in an Anglo-Saxon burial ground at Harnham Hill near Salisbury. Arch. XXXV, 259 ff.

- Remarks on some of the weapons of the Celtic and Teutonic Races. Arch. XXX, p. 171 ff.
- An Arch. Index to remains of Antiquities of the Celtic, Roman, British, and Anglo-Saxon periods.
- Remains of Pagan Saxendom. London 1852.
- The discovery of an Anglo-Saxon Cemetery at Brighthampton, Kent. Arch. XXXVIII, p. 327 ff.
- Discov. of Anglo-Saxon remains at Kemble in N. Wilts. Arch. XXXVII, p. 113 ff.
- Researches at Filkins and at Broughton Poggs in Oxford. Arch. XXXVII, p. 140.

*ALL.* = Archiv für lateinische Lexikographie. Leipzig 1884 ff.

*Amm. Marcel.* = Ammianus Marcellinus, Rerum gestarum lib. XXXI. herausgeg. von Eyßenhardt, Berlin 1871.

*Angl.* = Anglia, Zeitschrift für Englische Philologie, nacheinander herausgeg. von R. P. Wülker, E. Flügel, G. Schirmer u. E. Einenkel, Halle 1878 ff.

*Anz. d. Mus. Nürn.* = Anzeiger für deutsche Vorzeit des germ. Museums Nürnberg.

*Archæologia* Miscellaneous Tracts relating to Antiquity. — London 1770. In Progress. — Society of Antiquities. — London.

*Arch. Instit.* = Arch. Institute of Great Britain and Ireland. Memoirs illustrative of the History and Antiquities of Wiltshire and the city of Salisbury, July 1849.

*Arch. Review.* Vols. I—IV. London 1888—90. Ed. by G. L. Gomme.

*Archiv.* = Archiv für das Studium der neueren Sprachen und Literaturen, herausgeg. erst von L. Herrig, dann von A. Tobler u. J. Zupitza, jetzt von A. Brandl u. A. Tobler. Braunschweig 1846 ff.

*Atl.* = Atlakviða, s. Edda.

*Baist*, Gottfried, Variationen über Roland, 2074—2156.

(Beiträge zur Romanischen und Englischen Philologie, 1902.)

- Bateman*, Thomas, *Vestiges of the Antiquities of Derbyshire*. London 1848.
- *Ten year's Diggings in Celtic and Saxon Grave-Hills*. 1848—58.
- de Baye*, J., *Études archéologiques, époque des invasions barbares*. — *Industrie Anglo-Saxonne*. Paris 1889. — *Trans. into English by T. B. Harbottle*. London 1893.
- Berneker*, E., *Die preußische Sprache*. Straßburg 1896.
- Bezz. Beitr.* = *Beiträge zur Kunde der indogermanischen Sprachen*, herausgeg. von A. Bezzemberger, Göttingen 1877 ff.
- Boeheim*, W., *Bogen u. Armbrust. Z. für hist. Waffenkunde*. Bd. VII. Dresden 1898.
- B. T.* = *Bosworth Toller, Anglo-Saxon Dictionary*. Oxford 1882 to 1898.
- Boutell*, Arms and Armour in Antiquity and the Middle Ages (little value-popular). New York 1874.
- Boy*, Hist. of Sandwich.
- Braune*, Althochdeutsche Grammatik. 2. Aufl. Halle 1891.
- Brugmann Grdr.* = *Grundriß der vergleichenden Gramm. der idg. Sprachen*. Bd. I Lautlehre, 2. Bearbeitung. Straßburg 1897.
- Bübring*, Altenglisches Elementarbuch. I. Teil: Lautlehre. Heidelberg 1902.
- Caesar*, Gallic Wars.
- Capit.* = *Capitularia Regum Francorum* — ed. by Stephan Baluze, Paris 1780. — Containing the Rip. and Salic laws.
- Cochet*, Abbé, La Normandie Souterraine, Paris 1855.
- Demay*, Le Costume au moyen-âge d'après les sceaux.
- D. Myth.* } s. Grimm.  
*D. WB.* } s. Grimm.
- Dictionnaire Général de la Langue Française du Commencement du XIII. Siècle jusqu'à nos jours*. Hatzfeld, Darmstetter, et Thomas. Paris 1895.
- Diefenbach*, Lorenz, *Origines Europaeae, Die alten Völker Europas mit ihren Sippen und Nachbarn*. Frankfurt a. Main 1861.
- Diefenbach u. Wülker*, Hoch- und niederdeutsches Wörterbuch. Basel 1885.
- Diez*, Etymologisches Wörterbuch der romanischen Sprachen. 5. Ausg. Bonn 1887.
- Diod. Sic.* = *Diodorus Siculus*. — Universal hist. in 40 books. J. Becker, 1853—54.
- Douglas*, James, *Nenia Britannica*. 1798.

- Du Cange*, Glossarium mediae et infiniae latinitatis, ed. G. A. L. Henschel, ed. nova a Leopold Favre.
- Edda-lieder*, Altnordische Gedichte mythologischen und heroischen Inhalts, herausgeg. von Finnur Jónsson. 2 Bde. Halle 1888.
- Edmonson*, Joseph, A Complete Body of Heraldry. Vol. II — 1780.
- Egil* = Egils saga, herausgeg. v. Finnur Jónsson.
- Ellsmere*, Guide to Northern Archaeology by the Roy. Soc. of North Antiquaries of Copenhagen. Ed. for the use of Eng. readers by Lord Ellsmere.
- E. D. S.* = English Dialect Society, original Glossaries from the Isle of Wight etc. Series C, 23—27. London 1881.
- Eng. St.*, Englische Studien, herausgeg. erst v. E. Kölbing, seit 1899 von J. Hoops, Leipzig 1877 ff.
- Ersh u. Grubers Encyklopädie*. I. Sect. 52. Bd.
- Essenwein*, Kulturhist. Atlas.
- Faussett*, F., Bryan, Inventarium Sepulchrale. Ed. Smith, London 1856.
- Fick*, Vergleichendes Wörterbuch der idg. Sprachen. 4. Aufl. Göttingen 1890.
- Files* George, T., The Anglo-Saxon House together with an introduction on English Miniature Drawing of the 10<sup>th</sup> and 11<sup>th</sup>. centuries. Leipzig (Diss.) 1893.
- Florentini Wigorniensis Monachi Chronicum ex Chronicis*. Ed. Thorpe.
- Förstemann*, Altdeutsches Namensbuch. 2. Auflage. Bonn 1900.
- Fosbrooke*, Cyclopaedia of Antiquities. London 1840.
- Foster*, Walter, K., An Account of the Excavation of an Anglo-Saxon Cemetery at Barrington, Cambridge. Cambridge 1883.
- Franck*, Etymologisch Woordenboek der nederlandsche taal., s. Gravenhage 1883.
- v. *Gebhardt*, Oskar, The Miniatures of the Ashburnham Pentateuch. London 1884.
- Georges*, Ausführliches lateinisch-deutsches Handwörterbuch. 7. Aufl. 2 Bde. Leipzig 1879—1880.
- Graff*, E., Althochdeutscher Sprachschatz oder Wörterbuch der althochdeutschen Sprache. 6 Bde. Berlin 1834.
- Grdr.* = Pauls Grundriß der germanischen Philologie.
- Kluge*, Vorgeschichte d. altgerm. Dialekte. Grdr. 2, p. 320 ff.  
— Geschichte der engl. Sprache. Grdr. 2, p. 926 ff.
- Grein*, Sprachschatz d. angelsächsischen Dichter. Kassel u. Göttingen 1861, 1864.

- Grimm, *G. d. Spr.* = Geschichte d. deutschen Sprache. 2. Aufl.  
Leipzig 1853.
- *D. Myth.* = Deutsche Mythologie. 4. Ausg. Berlin 1875—78.
- *D. WB.* = Deutsches Wörterbuch von Jakob u. Wilhelm Grimm.  
Leipzig 1854 ff.
- Grm.* = Grimnismol, s. Edda.
- Hall*, J. R. Clarke, A Concise Anglo-Saxon Dictionary for the use  
of Students, London 1894.
- Hbl.* = Harbarðlioð, s. Edda.
- Haupts* Zeitschrift.
- Hefner-Altmeck*, Trachten des Christl. Mittelalters. Nach gleichzeit.  
Denkmälern. Frkf. a. M. 1840 ff.
- Hehn*, V., Kulturpflanzen und Haustiere. 7. Aufl., herausgeg. von  
O. Schrader. Berlin 1902.
- Hewitt*, Ancient Arms and Weapons in Europe. Vol. I. London 1855.
- Heyne*, Moritz, Körperpflege und Kleidung bei den Deutschen von  
den ältesten geschichtlichen Zeiten bis zum 16. Jhrh. Leipzig  
1903.
- Hoare*, Richard Colt, Tumuli Wiltenensis. London 1829.
- Holder*, Beowulf Wortschatz. Freiburg u. Leipzig 1896.
- Hor. Fer.* = Horae Ferales or Studies in the Archaeology of the  
Northern Nations. John M. Kemble. London 1863.
- Hottenroth*, Handbuch der deutschen Tracht.
- Isid.* = Isidorus Hispanensis «Origines sive Etymologiae». Hist. of  
the Goths and the Vandals.
- I. F.* = Indog. Forschungen. Straßburg 1892 ff.
- Jähns*, M., Handbuch einer Geschichte des Kriegswesens von der  
Urzeit bis zur Renaissance. Nebst einem Atlas von 100 Tafeln.  
Leipzig 1880.
- Entwicklungsgeschichte der alten Trutzwaffen. Berlin 1899.
- Jordanes*, De origine actibusque Getarum C. 5. Holder, Freiburg  
1882.
- Journal of Germanic Phil.*, ed. by G. E. Karsten. — 1897 ff.
- Kahle*, Altsächsisches Elementarbuch. Heidelberg 1896.
- Kemble*, The Saxons in England. Revised by Gray-Birch 1876.
- Klemm*, Gustav, Handbuch der germ. Altertumskunde. Dresden 1886.
- Kluge*, Etymologisches Wörterbuch der deutschen Sprache. 6. Aufl.  
Straßburg 1899.
- Stammbild. = Nominale Stammbildungslehre der altgermanischen  
Dialekte. Halle 1899.

- Kluge-Lutz*, English Etymology. Straßburg 1898.
- Köhler*, G., Die Entwicklung des Kriegswesens und der Kriegsführung in der Ritterzeit. I. Bd. Breslau 1886.
- Körting*, G., Grundriß der Geschichte der engl. Lit. 3. Aufl. Münster 1899.
- Lat. romanisches Wörterbuch. 2. Aufl. Paderborn 1901.
- K. Z.* = Zeitschrift für vergleichende Sprachforschung. Herausgeg. von A. Kuhn, Berlin 1852 ff.
- Lancelot*, Description de la tapisserie de Bayeux. Mém. de l'Acad. des Inscriptions et Belles Lettres. B. VIII.
- Lehmann*, Hans, Brünne und Helm im angelsächsischen Beowulflied. Leipzig 1885.
- Leo*, Angelsächsisches Glossar. Halle 1872.
- Lexer*, Mittelhochdeutsches Wörterbuch. 3 Bde. Leipzig 1872, 1878.
- Lindenschmidt*, Die vaterländischen Altertümer der Fürstl. Hohenzollernschen Samml. zu Sigmaringen. Mainz 1860.
- Die Altertümer unserer heidnischen Vorzeit. Herausgeg. 1858 ff.
- Handbuch der deutschen Altertumskunde. I. Teil: Die Altertümer d. Merovingischen Zeit. Braunschweig 1880.
- Lye*, Edward, Dic. Saxonico- et Gothico-Latinum. London 1872.
- Malmsbury*, Wm. of, Gesta Regum Anglorum. Ed. Hardy.
- Mestorf*, Die vaterländischen Altertümer Schleswig-Holsteins. Hamburg 1877.
- Middendorf*, Altenglisches Flurnamenbuch. Halle 1902.
- Miklosich*, Etymologisches Wb. d. Slavischen Sprachen. Wien 1886.
- Montelius*, Oskar, Die Kultur Schwedens in vorchristlicher Zeit. Übersetzt von Appel. Berlin 1855.
- Morsbach*, Mittelenglische Grammatik. Erste Lieferung. Halle 1896.
- Müllenhoff*, Deutsche Altertumskunde.
- Murray*, J., N. E. D. = New English Dic. on historical principles. 4 Bde. (A-G). Oxford 1888 ff.
- Müller*, Sophus, Nordische Altertumskunde. 2 Bde. Deutsche Ausgabe von O. L. Jiriczek, Straßburg 1897—98.
- Nennius*, Historia Britonum. Ed. Stephenson.
- Neville*, R. C., Saxon Obsequies. London 1852.
- Noreen*, Altisländische u. norwegische Gramm. 2. Aufl. Halle 1902.
- Abriß d. urgerm. Lautlehre. Straßburg 1894.
- Osthoff*, Etymologische Parerga. I. Teil. Leipzig 1901.
- P. BB.* = Beiträge zur Geschichte d. deutschen Sprache u. Literatur. Halle 1874 ff.

- Paul. Diac.* = Paulus Diaconus (781), Historia Langobardum.  
Herausgeg. bei Muratori.
- Persson*, Studien zur Lehre von der Wurzelerweiterung und Wurzelvariation. Upsala, Univ. Årsskrift 1891.
- Pictet*, Adolphe, Les origines Indo-Européennes ou les Aryas primitifs, 1<sup>re</sup> partie. Paris 1859.
- Planché*, James R., A Cyclopedias of Costume or Dic. of Dress. Vol. II. London 1879.
- Pogatscher*, Zur Lautlehre der griech., lat. und roman. Lehnworte im Altengl. Straßburg 1888.
- Polyb.* = Polybius (150 v. Chr.) 40 books of Hist. Herausgeg. von Dindorf. Leipzig 1868.
- Prellwitz*, Etymologisches Wörterbuch der griechischen Sprache. Göttingen 1892.
- Procop.* = Procopius de B. Goth. = de B. Vand. Dind. 3 Bde. Bonn 1833, 1838.
- R. Ben.* = The prose version of the rule of St. Benedict, ed. A. Schröer, Bibl. Prs., Bd. II. Kassel 1885.
- Rahn*, Psalterium aurium in St. Gallen.
- Richthofen*, Altfrisisches Wörterbuch. Göttingen 1840.
- San Marte*, Zur Waffenkunde des älteren deutschen Mittelalters. A. Schulz, Quedlinburg u. Leipzig 1867.
- Schade*, Altdeutsches Wörterbuch. 2. Aufl. 2 Bde. Halle 1872—1882.
- Scheman*, Karl, Die Synonyma im Beowulfliede. (Diss.) Münster 1882.
- Schiller-Lübben*, Mittelniederdeutsches Wörterbuch. 6 Bde. Bremen 1875—1881.
- Schmeller*, Bairisches Wörterbuch.
- Schrader*, Real-Lexikon der indogermanischen Altertumskunde. Straßburg 1901.
- Schulz*, Alwin, Das höfische Leben zur Zeit der Minnesänger. 2 Bde. Leipzig 1880.
- Seemann*, Kunsthistorisches Bilderbuch.
- Sidon. Apoll.* = Sidonius Apollinaris. Epist. XX. — Panegyr. Major.
- Sievers*, Angelsächsische Grammatik. 8. Aufl. Halle 1898.
- Skeat*, An Etymological Dictionary of the English Language. Oxford 1888.
- A Concise Etym. Dic. of the Eng. Lang. Oxford 1901.
- A List of Eng. words, the Etym. of which is illustrated by comparison with Icelandic. Oxford 1876.

- Smith*, C. Roch, *Collectanea Antiqua*. 6 vols. London 1848—1880.  
— *Discoveries at Fairford, Gloucesters. Arch.* XXXIV. 77, 83.  
— *The Antiquities of Richborough, Reculvnr and Lynne in Kent*.  
*Snorra Edda*, herausgeg. von F. Jónsson. Kopenhagen 1900.  
*Springer*, Anton, *Die Psalter-Illustrationen im früheren Mittelalter mit besonderer Rücksicht auf den Utrechter Psalter*. Abhandl. d. phil. hist. Cl. d. Kgl. Sächs. Gesellschaft d. Wissenschaft. B. VIII, 189 ff.  
*Stacke*, Deutsche Geschichte. Bd. I.  
*Stark*, Franz, *Die Kosenamen d. Germanen*. 2 Bde. Wien 1866.  
*Steinm. Siev.*, Die althochdeutschen Glossen, gesammelt und bearbeitet von Elias Steinmeyer u. Edouard Sievers. 4 Bde. Berlin 1879.  
*Stokes*, Urkeltischer Sprachschatz (Teil II des von Fick herausgeg. Wb.). Göttingen 1894.  
*Streitberg*, Urgermanische Grammatik. Heidelberg 1900.  
*Stratm.* = Stratmann, A Middle-English Dictionary. A new ed. by H. Bradly. Oxford 1891.  
*Strutt*, J., A Complete view of the dress and habits of the people of England from the Establishment of the Saxons in Britain to the present time. 1796—99.  
*Sweet*, Hist. of English Sounds. Oxford 1888.  
— *Stud. Dic.* = The Student's Dictionary of Anglo-Saxon. Oxford 1897.  
*Tacitus*, «Annales» et «Germania».  
*Thomsen*. Den gotiske Sprogklasses indflydelse på den finske. København 1869.  
*Thorpe*, Benj., Antiquities in Kent hitherto undescribed. Bib. Top. Brit. Vol. I.  
*Thurneysen*, Keltoromanisches. Halle 1884.  
*Tidskr. f. Phil. og. Paed.* = Tidskrift for Philologi og Paedagogik. Køpenh. 1860 ff.  
*Tours*, Gregory of, Hist. Francorum.  
*Uhlenbeck*, Kurzgefaßtes Etym. Wörterbuch der altind. Sprache. Amsterdam 1898.  
— Kurzgefaßtes Etym. Wb. der got. Sprache. Amsterdam 1900.  
*Flav. Vegetius Renatus*, Epitoma institutionum militaris. 5 vols. Pub. by Lang. Leipzig 1869.  
*Verwijs en Verdam*, Middelnederlandsch Woordenboek. 8. Bd. (A-K) 1885 ff.

- Vigf.* = An Icelandic Eng. Dic. by R. Cleasby, enlarged and completed by G. Vigfusson. Oxford 1874.
- Völsung.* = Völsunga Saga, herausgeg. v. Wm. Ranisch nach Bugges Text. Berlin 1891.
- Wagner*, Richard, Die Angriffswaffen der Angelsachsen. Königsberger Diss.
- Weinhold*, Altnordisches Leben. Berlin 1865.
- Weiß*, Kostümkunde, Geschichte der Tracht und des Gerätes im Mittelalter vom 4. bis zum 14. Jahrhundert. Stuttgart 1864.
- Westwood*, J. O., The Miniatures and Ornaments of Anglo-Saxon and Irish MSS. Oxford 1862.
- Worsaae*, Zur Altertumskunde des Nordens. Leipzig 1847.
- Widukind*, Res gestae Saxonicae. Herausgeg. von Pertz.
- Wright*, Dial.-Dict. = The English Dialect Dictionary. 3 Bde. (A-L) Oxford 1898 ff.
- Wright*, Thomas, The Celt, the Roman, and the Saxon.
- Wylie*, W. M., Remarks on the Angon or barbed javelin of the Franks as described by Agathias. Also Arch. XXXV, p. 48ff. London 1858.
- Fairford Graves. Oxford 1852.
- Account of Teutonic remains apparently Saxon found near Dieppe. Arch. XXXV, 100—113.
- An account of an excavation at Envermeu. Arch. XXXV, p. 223.
- Z.* *Z.* = Zachers Zeitschrift.
- Z. f. d. A.* = Zeitschrift für deutsches Altertum. Herausgeg. von Haupt, Müllenhoff, Steinmeyer, Schröder und G. Roethe. Leipzig 1841—53. Berlin 1856 ff.
- Zupitza*, E., Die germanischen Gutturale. Berlin 1896.



## First Part.

---

### Antiquarian Investigation.

#### I. Introductory: General Survey etc.

To present with any degree of accuracy a picture of the war-equipment of the Germanic invaders of Great Britain, from the time of their first settlement in the island to the year of the Norman Conquest 1066, three prime factors must be taken into consideration: The testimony of historians, such as Agathias, Sidonius Apollinaris, Jordanes and others, with regard to the war-equipment of the various Germanic tribes of the continent; furthermore the entire range of the Anglo-Saxon literature with especial reference to Beowulf and poems such as the Elene or the Judith dealing principally with battles. The illuminations of the MSS. both on the continent and in England from the 8<sup>th</sup> century on. The grave-finds both in England and on the continent, covering the period between the 5<sup>th</sup> and 7<sup>th</sup> centuries, especial attention being given to Frankish remains, which with some few exceptions are identical with those of the Anglo-Saxons.

Simple as this may seem at first sight, the task is accompanied with many difficulties, for the historical testimony is many times contradictory, the epic poems

deal only with equipment of kings and great heroes, while the drawings of the MSS. are often mere conventional representations, frequently of Roman or Byzantine originals, and the grave-finds in more than one instance fail to corroborate history and poetry. On the whole, however, allowing for the aristocratic tendency of the epic, together with certain historical anachronisms, and by carefully comparing the grave-finds of Selzen in Germany, Londonières in Normandy, and Kent in England the arms and equipment of Franks and Anglo-Saxons between the 5<sup>th</sup> and 10<sup>th</sup> centuries may be ascertained with a fair degree of certainty.<sup>1</sup>

Before entering upon the details, a general survey of the equipment of the Anglo-Saxons at this early period may be given.

The spear was the chief weapon of the Anglo-Saxons as the framea (longspear) had been among the Germans at the time of Tacitus.<sup>2</sup> These spears were of two kinds,— a lighter and a heavier; one spear at least, and often two, having been found in the graves of almost every warrior, usually with the point to the ward to head, while in the Selzen graves they are reversed according to the Roman practice.

The battle axe is rarely found in English graves (8 in all) though rarely wanting in the graves of Frankish warriors.

The swords, as will be shown later, in the early period were very precious and costly possessions belonging

<sup>1</sup> For a discussion of the mortuary urns discovered in Norfolk, Suffolk, Cambridgeshire, Derbyshire, Sussex and their relation so those found in Jutland, parts of Friesland, on the borders of the Elbe, in Westphalia, Thuringia, in parts of Saxony etc. S. Kemble, Hor. Fer., p. 87.

<sup>2</sup> Germ. C. VI.

only to princes and warriors of wealth and rank, while the ordinary soldier carried only a spear. These swords were either the heavy two-edged broad sword corresponding to the Roman *spata*, or the one-edged *Scrama seax* so numerous in Frankish, so rare in Anglo-Saxon interments.<sup>1</sup>

Bows were also used for war as well as the chase as a description of a battle in Beowulf proves, and slings were in use among the ordinary warriors.

Of the protective armour the shield alone was in the possession of all warriors. This was usually of linden-wood with an iron umbo or boss, the *randbeag*, in the centre to protect the hand, and serve as a weapon of offence in close conflict, while the edge was further strengthened by an iron band, or rim. In the case of princes gold and precious metals replaced the iron, while metal shields, though probably rare, were not unknown.

The helmet, as the sword, was the property only of the wealthy, one certainly, two probably (the second being doubtful) having been found in the many hundreds of graves opened, and it is strongly to be suspected that many of the helms were simply leather caps strengthened with metal, (cf. *galea*: *leðerhelm* in the glosses) which in the course of time has entirely disappeared. That metal helms existed, however, at the time of the Saxon invasion of England is certain from the description of the boar-adorned helmets of the Beowulf epic.

The body armour consisted of a leather coat frequently stiffened with metal for the ordinary soldiers,

---

<sup>1</sup> This rather negatives the idea that they are the weapons from which the Saxons are supposed to have taken their name; cf. Gotfridus Witerbiensis: *Ipse brevis gladius apud illos Saxon vocatur, unde sibi Saxon nomen peperisse notatur.* A misunderstanding of the two words *sahs* and *Sahso*.

and the *byrne* or shirt made of iron rings either woven together or sewn upon other material for the chief warriors of wealth and rank, which even as late as the 10<sup>th</sup> century was regarded as a costly possession.

Later came metal greaves for the protection of the legs, but at this period the warriors fought for the most part bare-legged, or perhaps in the long leather boots and leg bandages represented in the MSS. of the 9<sup>th</sup> and 10<sup>th</sup> centuries.

Flags, drums, horns, and trumpets were part of every army's equipment, and remains of horses, bridles have in some few instances been found in the graves.

From the above then it is evident that at the time of the invasion, and during the early Anglo-Saxon period, the ordinary warrior was provided with spear and shield, possessed some sort of a leather shirt or coat for the protection of his body, and wore most likely a leather cap resembling a helmet, while swords, helmets, and corselets were the property only of the picked troops or celebrated warriors. The same holds true for the Frankish warriors of this early period, and even at the time of the Carolingians — *arma, id est scutum et lanceam*<sup>1</sup> — were still the equipment of the ordinary soldier.

At the time of the Carolingians, both in France and England, swords nevertheless were becoming more frequent, although still costly, and helms and corselets began to be more general.

In England, in the period following the Carolingian, metal greaves were introduced, the *halsbeorg* for the protection of the neck, and at the very end of the Anglo-

---

<sup>1</sup> S. Capit. of Charl. from year 806, ed. Baluze, p. 450.

Saxon period the gavelock from the Celts and the crossbow from the French. Immediately following the Conquest the long bow came into general use, which was employed with such telling effect by the English in the Hundred Years' War, and the nasale or nose protector (may possibly have been known previously), which developed in the 12<sup>th</sup> and 13<sup>th</sup> centuries into the visor.

The Anglo-Saxons following the tradition of the old military tactics of the Germans of the continent fought in a wedge shaped formation with their king or leader on foot at their head, while the heavy infantry formed the point and wings, the light armed being placed at the centre.<sup>1</sup> They were divided according to districts, as were the Germans of the time of Tacitus according to tribes, and until the time of the Norman Conquest the infantry, not the cavalry, formed the main body of the army.<sup>2</sup> Following the Norman Conquest came a complete revolution in war tactics, the introduction by the Normans of the Feudal System together with Chivalry raised the cavalry, composed of Norman knights, to the first rank, which, united to the sturdy Anglo-Saxon infantry armed with the famous long bow, formed an almost invincible army. This process of amalgamation and reconstruction lies, however, beyond the Anglo-Saxon period, belonging rather to the history of Chivalry and the Middle Ages where its development may be traced in such works as San Martes *Waffenkunde in der Ritterzeit*, Köhler, Jähns and others mentioned in the Bibliography.

---

<sup>1</sup> Cf. the formation at the battle of Hastings. Köhler, Die Entw. des Kriegsw. u. der Kriegsführ. in der Ritterzeit, p. 1 ff.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Roger of Hoveden, who, writing of a battle in 1055, says: *Anglos contra morem in equis pugnare jussit.*

## II. The Weapons of Attack.

Turning now to a more specific examination of the weapons, it will be seen at once that they fall naturally into two main divisions — first the weapons of attack, and second the weapons of defence, each of which may again be divided into several subdivisions, which will here be treated of more in detail than was possible in the preceding general sketch. An exhaustive treatment of the same, however, has not been attempted, the results of most excavations of Anglo-Saxon interments having appeared from time to time in the Arch., in *Collec. Antiqua*, and in various arch. journals, while Linden-schmidt's *Merov. Altertümer*, and L'Abbé Cochet's *La Norm. Sout.* are exhaustive treatises on the subject in their respective countries.

### 1. The Spear.

De Baye. — *Indus. Art of the Anglo-Saxon*, Pl. I.

Neville. — *Saxon Obsequies*, Pls. XXXV, XXXVI.

Smith. — *Collec. Antiqua*, Vol. III, Pl. I, figs. 10—25.

Wylie. — *Fairford Graves*, Pl. XI, figs. 1—7.

As the shield is the oldest weapon of defence, so is the spear that of aggression. Used for the chase as well as for war it served a double purpose, and from the first simple wooden shaft with fire-hardened head, through the successive stages of development in the Stone, Bronze, and Iron Ages to its culminating point in the knightly lance of the Middle Ages, it has remained among the Germanic peoples the weapon par excellence not only of the ordinary soldier, but together with the sword has been found in the graves of those of noble birth. Symbol

of kingship among the Northern tribes<sup>1</sup>, weapon of Wodan, badge of authority, and mark of the free man<sup>2</sup> it has played among Norsemen, Franks, and Anglo-Saxons an all important roll. From it the male line took its name *spere-healf*, as the female line from the spindle, and the spear was the constant companion of the warrior in time of peace as well as in war.<sup>3</sup>

From the time of Tacitus reference to the bearing of spears by the German tribes has constantly been made by Latin historians.<sup>4</sup> The citations, however, will be here omitted excepting the three most important bearing directly on the use of this weapon by the Franks from the 5<sup>th</sup> to the 8<sup>th</sup> century, interesting for the sake of comparison with the similar Anglo-Saxon usage during this period. A citation from the Greek historian Agathias will also be given below.

In the middle of the 5<sup>th</sup> century Sidonius Apollinaris writing of the Franks speaks of *clypeosque rotare ludus, et intortas praecedere saltibus hastas* (Panag. Major.). In the 6<sup>th</sup> century appear in Gregory of Tours<sup>5</sup> the hurling spear together with the sword, axe, and dagger or knife

---

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Lind., Alt. d. Merov. Zeit, fig. 201, for a representation of Childeric I., spear in hand, on his sealring. Cf. also Gregor of Tours VIII, 33, who writing of Gunthramnus giving the spear to Childeberti says: *Hoc est indicium quod tibi omne regnum meum tradidi.*

<sup>2</sup> A special Edict of Charl. forbidding lances to those not free born. *Ut servi lanceas non portent, qui inventus fuerit post bannum hasta frangatur in dorso ejus.*

<sup>3</sup> S. A. L. Th. XXXVI, p. 37, regarding wergeld for injury from spear not carried properly over the shoulder.

<sup>4</sup> S. San Marte, p. 157 ff., and Lind., Merov. Altertümmer, p. 170 ff.

<sup>5</sup> Lib. II, c. 27.

as the ordinary equipment of the Frankish warrior<sup>1</sup>, while in the same century Procopius assigns the spear to the cavalry only, and neither spear nor bow but only the axe to the Frankish infantry. This in all probability, however, has reference to the equipment for this expedition only, namely that of Theodobert I. into Italy, and cannot be taken for the prevailing custom, as shortly afterwards Agathias (7<sup>th</sup> cent.) describes the Frankish foot soldiers as armed not only with the regular spear, but with the more unusual angon<sup>2</sup>, which is hardly to be explained by the supposition that in the course of a few years the Franks had given up the spear as infantry weapon, and then suddenly adopted it again, but rather that the passages in the writers, who omit it as part of every warrior's regular equipment, are descriptions of special expeditions, and not of the Frankish army as a whole.

From the year 806<sup>3</sup> comes a special edict of Charl. de Armis non portandis, where *arma* = shield and spear, and from 813 a writ concerning the arming of troops where every soldier among other weapons must be provided with spear and shield, which proves it at this time as in the earlier period to have been the weapon of all classes.<sup>4</sup>

The MSS. mostly from the 9<sup>th</sup> and 10<sup>th</sup> centuries, though the one of chief interest (Harleian 603) is of a still later date, lead to exactly the same result concerning the Anglo-Saxon use of the spear (cf. the Psalter Aureum<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Cf. also Greg. of Tours III, 10; V, 26; VII, 29.

<sup>2</sup> Lib. II, c. 5.

<sup>3</sup> Capit. III, No. I. (Ed. Baluze, p. 449.)

<sup>4</sup> Capit. II, No. IX. (Ed. Baluze, p. 508.)

<sup>5</sup> Psalter. Aureum IX and X, and the Utrecht Psalter, Taf. IV (pub. by Anton Springer).

and the Utrecht Psalter) where the horsemen and footmen alike are armed with round shield and spear, the angon being the predominating form. The Harl. MSS. shows throughout the fighting men armed with either angon or spear with crossbars, while only picked warriors have sword, axe, or bow and arrows. In the Aelfric MSS. (Claudius B. IV) the warriors are as frequently armed with the sword as with the spear, while the shepherds have only the spear, which points to a more general use of the sword at this time, but in general the MSS. show many more spears than swords.

From the laws of Canute, moreover, concerning *Heriot* it may be seen that double the number of spears and shields is required as the number of swords, corslets, and helms, while all those under the rank of thane are armed not with the sword, but with the spear.<sup>1</sup>

As stated above the spear of the Anglo-Saxons consisted of the heavy spear used both for hurling and thrusting, and the lighter dart for hurling only. To the latter belong the *daroð*, the *pil*, the *gafeluc*, and the angon, while the *gār*, and *ætgār* may be either light or heavy. The *franca* also may be regarded from the passages in By. as equivalent to *gār*, while the general Germ. expression *spere* refers to a light kind of throwing spear, as well as a spear for thrusting, the usual interpretation. As proof of this statement cf. the passage from Ep. Alex. 153<sup>362</sup>, *mid longsceaftum sperum ofscotadon*, or from the Sax. Chron. (AD. 1055) *Ac ær þær wære ænig spere gescoten*, both of which certainly point to the hurling of the spear, as the term *scoten* is not used in reference to thrusting.

---

<sup>1</sup> Ges. Lieberm., p. 358 [71 ff.], and cf. sword, Part I, p. 33.

Turning now to the grave-finds the contents of these interments both in England and Germany fully corroborate the historical evidence, as well as that of the laws and MSS., for in few warriors' graves heretofore opened has the spear head been found wanting, in some, in fact, opened at Little Wilbraham and Gilton, two have been discovered both, the heavy *gār*, and the lighter *dārð*, the latter with a length of 9 inches from the Gilton graves.<sup>1</sup>

The spear consisted of three parts: the head, the shaft, and the iron into which the wood of the shaft was fitted.<sup>2</sup> Sometimes, however, the latter consisted of a button to be driven into the staff by means of a nail issuing from the centre. This spike was probably used to plant the spear in the ground, thereby forming a wall to break the charge of cavalry. In most of the graves this spike has been found at the right side of the body about six feet from the spear head thus giving an approximate length to the spear shaft of six feet, the wood of which has long since rotted away, but enough of which remained in a few instances to be identified with certainty as ash. From the use of ash wood for spear shafts has arisen the poetical term for spear, *æsc*, found so frequently in the epic poetry, but never in prose cf. By. 310 *æsc acwehte*; Wand. 99 *eorlas fornōman easca þryðe, wæpen wælgifru*; B. 330 *garas, æsc-holt ufan græg* etc.

Owing to its universal use both for throwing and thrusting<sup>3</sup>, for the chase and for war, the spear heads

---

<sup>1</sup> For the arrangement in grave cf. Smith, Collec. Antiq. III, p. 3.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Fair. Graves, Pl. XI and Pag. Sax., Pl. IX.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. B. 1766 *gāres flīt* which points to throwing spear; Gaungu Hrolf's Saga c. 18. *Sôti hafði atgcírr atvega með ok to-spear for thrusting.*

varied greatly both in form, size, and weight, from great sword like points 2 ft. long<sup>1</sup>, or the angō with its length of 3 to 4 ft., to the light dart not exceeding 8 inches in length, while the weight of some of these may be inferred from such an expression as *gārbēam*, the spear tree Exod. 246. Cf. also the much later description in the Nib. (B. 73) for the description of Siegfried's spear *Sivrit der fuort ir einen (gēr) wol zwei spannen breit.*

A minute description of the countless spear heads of this period from the graves of Germany, France, and England, more than 20 varieties of the Anglo-Saxon type alone being on exhibition in the Brit. Mu., can not here be attempted, the ordinary varieties and a few of the rarer ones only will be discussed, accurate classifications being found in Hewitt<sup>2</sup> and Lindenschmidt.<sup>3</sup>

The simplest type of spear as well as the oldest is the Frankish spear found in the grave of Childeric<sup>4</sup>, which does not exceed a foot in length. This type has been found in many of the German graves, also in those of Belgium, France<sup>5</sup>, and England, though not in such great numbers.

The leaf shaped spear heads resemble closely the Roman type and are light and short. A noted example of this class is the famous Müncheberg spear with the runic inscription.<sup>6</sup> This class is but seldom found in England, the most frequently occurring form has a lo-

---

<sup>1</sup> S. specimen in Brit. Mu.

<sup>2</sup> Ancient Arms and Armour, Sec. I.

<sup>3</sup> Merov. Altertümer, p. 173 ff.

<sup>4</sup> S. Merov. Altert., fig. 49.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. Cochet, La Norm. Sout., p. 284 ff.

<sup>6</sup> S. Anz. d. Mus. Nürnberg XIV — 1867, No. 2.

zenge-shaped head (Lind. fig. 62), which can be infinitely varied by making it more or less slender. This type is found everywhere in the graves of Germany, France, and England in great number and variety. The typical Anglo-Saxon spear head is almost lozenge-shaped<sup>1</sup> but with a somewhat longer point than the Frankish spear heads of the same class, the greatest number of A.-S. spear heads so far discovered being variations of this type. The blades were always of iron, the specimens found varying in length usually from 10 to 15 inches, one, however, from Little Wilbraham, Cambridge, having a length of but  $2\frac{1}{2}$  inches (of Lat. *spicula i. sagitte: garas* OE. Gl.), while some at Ozingell, Kent have a length of 21 inches.<sup>2</sup> One extremely interesting specimen from Ash<sup>3</sup> slopes from the socket two ft. to the shoulder of the blade, which does not exceed  $3\frac{1}{4}$  inches in length and a quarter of an inch in width in its broadest part.<sup>4</sup>

These spear heads were attached to the shaft by means of rivets passing through the socket into the wood beneath. The cusps were of two kinds either with a socket into which the wooden handle fitted or with a spike to drive into the wood, examples of the latter, however, are extremely rare, the best coming from Livonia, at present in the Brit. Mu., together with a few from A.-S. graves.<sup>5</sup> A ferule of bronze or iron was added to the socketed spear head at its juncture with the staff to insure additio-

---

<sup>1</sup> S. de Baye, Pl. I, fig. 3.

<sup>2</sup> S. Neville, *Sax. Obseq.*, Pl. XXXV and XXXVI.

<sup>3</sup> S. Douglas, *Nen. Brit.*, Pl. VIII.

<sup>4</sup> For a specimen 2 ft.  $5\frac{1}{4}$  inches long, s. *Horae Ferales*, Pl. XXVII, fig. 4.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. Smith *Collec. Antiq.*, Vol. III, Pl. I.

nal strength.<sup>1</sup> A peculiar feature of the A.-S. cusps, which is characteristic for all varieties, and distinguishes them from the Danish and Frankish, which they closely resemble, in all other respects is the longitudinal slit in the socket, which received the wooden staff, and was then closed with iron or bronze rings, braided string or rivets.<sup>2</sup> Comparing these with the Frankish remains<sup>3</sup> the difference will be observed at once, only three of the entire German collection possessing this slit.

A moment's survey of the number of spears recovered in comparison to the number of swords will give an idea of the rarity of the latter, and the great abundance of the former. Thus 125 graves opened at L. Wilbraham yielded 35 spears to 4 swords, from Barrington 15 spear heads no swords, from Gilton 23 spear heads and 34 darts to 7 swords out of 106 graves examined, from 308 graves at Kingston Down 30 darts and 12 spears to 1 sword, from 181 graves at Siebertswold 20 darts, 22 spear heads to 6 swords (Invent Sepul.), from Faversham 45 spear heads to 20 swords, a most unusual find.<sup>4</sup>

The adornment of spears was not so rich as that of swords, nevertheless several spear heads have been discovered in A.-S. interments ornamented with engraved lines, and decorated with silver.<sup>5</sup> Mention occurs, moreover, of a *gar*

---

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Arch. Jour. XI, p. 106, and VIII, p. 425.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Collec. Antiq., Vol. III, Pl. I, fig. 18. Hewitt, Ancient Arms and Armour, p. 22, 23. De Baye, Pl. I.

<sup>3</sup> Lind, Merov. Altert., figs. 49—70.

<sup>4</sup> S. Smith, A Catalogue of Antiquities discovered at Faversham in Kent.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. Sussex Arch. Jour., Vol. II, p. 269, Kemble, and Hor. Fer., Pl. XXVII, fig. 6.

*golde fah* Gn. (C.) 22, and in the will of Wulfsige a *gold wreken spere*<sup>1</sup>, so that gold and silver spear heads for kings' weapons are very likely.

Regarding the strap for swinging the spear, the Lat. *amentum*, A.-S. *sceaft-lō*, *sceaft-tōg* (?) nothing further is known than the passage from Isid.<sup>2</sup>

Of the unusual spear heads 3 only will be dealt with: the *ango*, the *lancea uncata* of Sid. Apoll., and the head with its sides formed on different planes.

Of these the *ango* A.-S. *onga*, is the most unusual in the grave-finds, the most frequent in the MSS.<sup>3</sup>, and the most interesting both because of its unusual form, and the minute description of the method of wielding it given by Agathias II c. 5, who describing the battle in Campania where the allied forces of the Franks and Alemannen were overthrown by Narses 554 A. D. gives the full equipment of the Frankish warriors, the chief weapons among whom were the ἀγγών and the πέλεκυς ἀμφίστομος. The passage is quoted in full in the orig. Gr. in Arch. 36, p. 49, the substance of which is as follows: The weapon is of a length that may both be used as a javelin or in close fight against a charge of the enemy. The staff of the weapon is covered with iron lamina or hoops, so that but very little wood appears, even down to the spike at the butt end. On either side of the head of this javelin are certain barbs projecting downward close together as far as the shaft. The Frank soldier when engaged with the enemy casts his *angon*, which if it enters the body cannot be withdrawn in consequence

<sup>1</sup> Chart. Th., p. 556<sup>22</sup>.

<sup>2</sup> See Second Part, II, 1, *Sceaft-lō*.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Harl. 603, and Psalm. Aureum.

of the barbs; neither can it be disengaged if it pierce the shield, for the iron with which the staff is covered prevents the adversary from ridding himself of it by means of his sword. At this moment the Frank rushes forward places his foot on the shaft of the spear as it trails upon the ground, and having deprived his foe of his defence cleaves his skull with his axe or transfixes him with a second spear.

This form belongs to No. 5 of Hewitt's classification, and some such weapon is certainly referred to in B. 1438 where the seamonster was caught with *eofor-spreotum heoro-höcyhtum*. In the glossaries it appears as *onga: aculeus*. The angon has given rise to much discussion among archaeologists, the difficulty being to identify the various specimens discovered with the description of the same by Agathias.<sup>1</sup>

Lindenschmidt believed that he had discovered the exact weapon answering to this description at Selzen<sup>2</sup> since then several more have been dug up varying in length from  $31\frac{1}{2}$  to 46.8 inches, the Selzen lance attaining this length, while the average is 3 ft. The effect of the blow depended not so much on the strength of the iron handle, which was only of medium weight and thickness, but on the skillful construction of the point, which penetrated at once the wooden shield, while the sharp hooks prevented its withdrawal. The point about 3.5 inches long was usually stronger than the iron staff measuring .48 to .64 of an inch in thickness and was always

---

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Lind. Merov. Altert., p. 178, Arch. XXXVI, p. 78, John Y. Akermann, Teut. and Celt. Weapons, Arch. XXXIV, 171—189, Wylie, Arch. XXXV, p. 48.

<sup>2</sup> S. Arch. XXXVI, Pl. VIII.

quadrilateral.<sup>1</sup> The hooks were usually two in number, only a single angon from Rennecourt possessing four. The staff was always very deep and very long with a longitudinal opening in some cases for the insertion of the wooden shaft to which it was made fast by means of wooden rings.<sup>2</sup>

Wylie working independent of Lindenschmidt arrived at the same conclusion identifying the spear head in the Musée de l'Artillerie at Paris with the angon of Agathias<sup>3</sup> which is 22 inches long with slender stem at first quadrangular but becoming round near the ferule, the thin iron laminae or sheathing of which have disappeared owing to corrosion.

Corresponding to this and identical perhaps with the barbed lances of the Aelfric and Harleian MSS. is the English specimen from Strood in Kent on exhibition in the Brit. Mu. and represented in Collec. Antiqua<sup>4</sup>, which found in a grave with the usual umbo, spear, and knife of Saxon interments, except in length of stem corresponds point for point to the angon of Agathias. It is of iron with quadrilateral head with a length of only  $17\frac{1}{2}$  inches, the remainder having been probably broken off, or it may show degeneration. Lindenschmidt disputes the title of angon for this admitting only the continental ones with long stems as true examples. Length of iron shaft to the extent of 3 or 4 ft. is not, however, imperative, and this with 3 or 4 other English examples may be regarded as

---

<sup>1</sup> Cf. the specimen from Arcy Lind., fig. 79.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Lind., Tur. Altertüm. d. Heid. Vorz. III, Heft IX, Taf. 5.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Arch. XXXV, p. 51, fig. 1.

<sup>4</sup> Vol. V, Pl. II, fig. 1.

belonging to this rare class of spears.<sup>1</sup> Lindenschmidt endeavours to prove the Roman *plum*<sup>2</sup> the prototype of the Frankish angon, which in turn is derived from the old Etruscan iron spear<sup>3</sup>, against which, however, is the distinct mention by Agathias that the angon was of Frankish origin.<sup>4</sup>

But whatever the origin the fact remains that the angon is of extremely rare occurrence about 35 in all having been dug up, and that it is peculiar to the grave-finds of the Ripuarian Franks<sup>5</sup> (the 5 Eng. examples excepted). A single example only, and that uncertain, having been discovered by Cochet during the whole course of his operations in Normandy.<sup>6</sup>

Lindenschmidt and Wylie seeking an explanation for the great scarcity of this weapon in the grave-finds have suggested that it was carried only by tried and experienced warriors, which is borne out by the finding of the angon only in the graves of the wealthiest, being usually found together with remains of horses' bits etc.

Its great frequency in the MSS. may possibly be due to mere conventional representation, but the fact remains

---

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Invent. Sepul., Pl. III, fig. 17; Arch. XXXVI, Pl. VIII, and Hor. Fer. Pl. XXVII, fig. 3. For a representation of this as late as the 15<sup>th</sup> century s. the illus. from the Chron. of Math. Paris. — Strutt A. A., p. 25.

<sup>2</sup> Vegetius, De Re. Mil. I, 20, describes a *plum* as *ferro subtile trigo praefixa*. This trilateral head must have been barbed, for he adds *in scuto fixa non possunt abscindi*.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Mus. Etrus. Greg., Pl. XXI, fig. 6.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. Lind, Altertümer d. Heid. Vorz. I, Heft XI, Taf. 5, and following text.

<sup>5</sup> S. Mém. de la Soc. des Antiq. de Picardie, Vol. X, and Mém. de la Soc. Philomat. de Verdun, Vol. III, p. 199 ff.

<sup>6</sup> S. La Norm. Sout., p. 351, and Arch. XXXV, p. 281.

that it is found in both continental, and Anglo-Saxon MSS. in the hands of at least two thirds of the warriors there depicted.

Differing from the angon yet long mistaken for the same is the Lancea uncata of Sid. Apoll.<sup>1</sup> Such a lance head was found in the Frankish graves at Douvren<sup>2</sup> the prototype of which was the Scythian spear<sup>3</sup>, which although of bronze shows a remarkable identity of form. Although found in the interments of all the Germanic branches the form, on the whole, is rare, with wings at side perhaps to prevent the shaft from entering too far, and not to prevent withdrawal as in the case of the angon.<sup>4</sup> England has furnished some extremely rare specimens of this lance, with wings at the side of the stem, one 19 inches long, with a strong and thick head has an ornamented socket and projecting wings, below which are the rivet holes; the iron rivets are further adorned with silver heads.<sup>5</sup> Two other specimens have been found in England, the one from Henley-on-Thames being fully discussed in the Jour. of the Brit. Arch. Ass.<sup>6</sup>

The third of these rare lance heads is that with its sides formed on different planes<sup>7</sup>, which in the

---

<sup>1</sup> Lib. IV, Epist. XX. «Lanceis uncatis, securibusque missibilibus dextrae refertae.»

<sup>2</sup> Arch. XXXV, p. 51, fig. 2.

<sup>3</sup> Arch. XXXV, No. 14, p. 223—231.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. Lind., Merov. Alter., figs. 71—74, and Cochet, La Norm. Sout., 2nd ed., p. 288.

<sup>5</sup> S. Hor. Fer., Pl. XXVII, fig. 6.

<sup>6</sup> For. 1882, p. 276.

<sup>7</sup> Cf. Hor. Fer. Pl. XXVII, fig. 5, and Pag. Sax., p. X. For a specimen from Harnham Hill, cf. De Baye, Pl. I, fig. 4.

case of the specimen given by Kemble has sunk grooves on alternate sides of the blade in order to give it a rotary motion when thrown. It bears a close resemblance to the assagaye, and calls to mind the frequent A.-S. expression *gares flyht*, which refer to the throwing of such a spear. This reminds one also of the passage in the Walt. lied (V. 1289) *sed illam (hastam) turbine terribilem tanto et stridore volantem.*

At Fairford in Gloucestershire a very remarkable spear head was found shaped like a bayonet<sup>1</sup>, four sided and measuring  $16\frac{1}{2}$  inches in length by two in its widest breadth, which corresponds more nearly even than the angon to the description of Thorolf's famous spear Bryuð-varar in the Egilsage, which had *ferrum duas ulnas longum, in mucrone quattuor acie habentem, desinebat.* This shows also points of resemblance to the Egyptian spears in Sir Gardner Wilkinson's work on the «Ancient Egyptians».<sup>2</sup>

## 2. The Sword.

Unlike the spear the sword was unknown to the rude civilization of the Stone Age, where weapons of war served also for the chase, and workmen's tools were as yet not entirely differentiated from implements of war. Appearing first in the Bronze Age the evolution of the sword out of the long knife of the Stone Age was closely connected with the knowledge of the working of metals, and was the first weapon designed and used exclusively for the purpose of war. With the sword came also the

---

<sup>1</sup> Fair. Graves, Pl. X, fig. 2.

<sup>2</sup> Vol. I, 2nd ed., p. 358.

need for protecting the body at close range, and in this necessity protective armour had its origin.

The bronze sword used for thrusting, which has been discovered in all parts of Europe inhabited by the Celtic tribes, is never found in Teutonic interments. The Teutons on their first appearance in Europe were in possession of iron, and the long blunt iron swords for cutting not thrusting (s. Tacitus VI) offer a striking contrast to the short sharp bronze swords of the Roman legions. According to Tacitus, however, it was a rare weapon, and even in the Salic law is not mentioned as part of a warrior's necessary equipment.

During the Merovingian period the sword became more general, but even at the time of the Carolingians the infantry were not required to carry swords<sup>1</sup>, these being assigned only to the cavalry.<sup>2</sup>

Comparing these capitularies with the statements of Greg. of Tours and Agathias (s. spear p. 19 ff.) both of whom assign the sword to the ordinary Frankish soldier, it will be seen how contradictory the evidence of the historians often is. Notwithstanding their statements it is safe to conclude both from the laws and the grave-finds that the sword together with the helmet and coat of mail continued

---

<sup>1</sup> Capit. II from year 813, No. IX, ed. Baluze, p. 508. — *De hoste pergendi . . . Et ipse Comes praevideat quomodo sint parati, id est, lanceam, scutum, aut arcum, cum duabus cordis, et sagittis duodecim. Et Episcopi, Comites, Abbates, hos homines qui hoc bene praevideant, habeant loricas vel galeas et (ad) temporalem hostem, id est aestivo tempore.*

<sup>2</sup> Cf. the Encyclic, Capit. of 806 (Pertz III, 145), *ita ut unus quisque caballarius habeat scutum, et lanceam, et spatham, et semi-spatam, arcum et pharetras cum sagittis, et in carris vestris utensilia diversi generis.*

to be up to a late period the sign of rank both among Frankish and Anglo-Saxon warriors.

An examination of the laws of Canute concerning Heriot<sup>1</sup> brings out the interesting fact that no one under the rank of thane had a sword to pay, because such was not a weapon suitable to his degree. The earls, however, were compelled to render 8 horses, 4 helmets, 4 coats of mail, 8 spears, 8 shields, and 4 swords, the king's thanes 2 swords etc., while the ordinary thane was required only to provide his own sword, horse, and equipment. Thus all who had swords had also horses to render and according to Kemble<sup>2</sup> the number of horses and weapons may be equivalent to the number of men, which each person was expected to bring into the field. Thus the requirement from the earl must have been to bring 4 horsemen equipped with sword, spear, shield, helmet, and coat of mail: and also 4 footmen armed with spear and shield. This corresponds exactly with the Capit. of the year 806 just mentioned, which assigns the broadsword only to horsemen, and receives confirmation from the game laws of Canute<sup>3</sup>, where only the head forester is in possession of

---

<sup>1</sup> A. L. ed. Thorpe, p. 177, law 72, or Ges. Lieberm. II, law 71, p. 356 ff. Laws of King Canute, Gesetze II, De Hæreotis. *And beon þa heregeata svā hit mædlič sū. I. Eorles svā þær-tō gebyrige þat syndon eahta hors, feōwer gesadelode 7 feōwer ungesadelode, 7 feōwer helmas, 7 feōwer byrnan, 7 ehta spēra, 7 eall svā feala scylda, 7 feōwer swurd, 7 twa hund mancus goldes. II. And syþþan cyninges þegenes þe him nyhste syndon feōwer hors, twa gesadelode 7 twa ungesadelode, 7 twa swurd, 7 feōwer spēra 7 sva feala scylda, 7 helm, 7 byrnan, 7 fiftig mancus goldes. III. And medemra þegna hors 7 his geræblan 7 his wāpm, offþe his heals-fang on West-Sexan. 7 on Myrcan twā pund 7 on East-Englan twā pund.*

<sup>2</sup> Hor. Fer., p. 203.

<sup>3</sup> A. L. VI, VII, and VIII, p. 183.

a sword.<sup>1</sup> Kemble adds furthermore that the swords found in the Anglo-Saxon, Norman, and German graves were *broad swords which could be wielded only by horsemen*.

In the Anglo-Saxon wills mention of valuable swords as part of the *Heriot* given to the royal lord on the death of a warrior occurs several times; but rarely in any will were more than two left except by a king or king's son, and in every instance they are regarded as costly gifts.<sup>2</sup> Aæfelstan left in his will two silver hilted swords, the one by Wulfric wrought, the other owned by Ulfeytil, together with a golden sword belt and eight other costly swords, to various relatives and retainers, the largest number of valuable swords left in any will.

From a sentence in this will and from numerous passages in Beowulf and other poems<sup>3</sup> it is evident that famous smiths and their work were held in great esteem and veneration among the Anglo-Saxons as well as among the Scandinavians, and Continental Germans, while the passing on of famous swords from father to son, or in the same family, was a well known custom. Striking, however, is the almost total absence of proper names for swords in the Anglo-Saxon literature, when contrasted with the vast number in the literature of Germany and Scandinavia<sup>4</sup>, 57 sword names alone being extant in Old Norse, not including the names for helmets, axes, hammers, arrows, spears, shields, war-banners, etc., which amount to several hundred, while in Anglo-Saxon three or four only are

---

<sup>1</sup> Cf. also B. 1035.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Chart. Th., p. 500, 505, 557, 596, and will of Aæfelst. 577.

<sup>3</sup> B. 1681, 1683, 795 etc.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. B. Kable, *Altwestnordische Namenstudien*, Idg. Forsch., Bd. XIV., p. 204.

to be found in the whole range of the literature. *Nægling* the sword of Beowulf (B. 2680), *Hrunting* (B. 1457, 1659) Hunfer's sword, perhaps *Hūn-Lāfing*<sup>1</sup>, and the sword *Mimming* in the Waldere Fragments (1<sup>8</sup>). The *Kenningar* are on the other hand frequent, so that the peculiar lack of proper names for weapons among a people resembling so nearly in ideas and customs their kindred on the continent among whom the naming of weapons was universal is hard to account for, especially as Norse or rather Danish sword names must have been known in England.

From the Anglo-Saxon glossaries it is evident that the general term *sweord* corresponds to the Roman word *spatha*, the large two-edged broadsword, but is also employed to translate the word *framea*. For the earlier meaning of *framea* 'spear', and the later one 'sword' consult the article by Müllenhoff<sup>2</sup>, where it is clearly shown that the meaning of spear was original, and retained until the 3<sup>rd</sup> century, where the last record of its use as spear occurs by the Jurist Ulpian.<sup>3</sup> The later meaning of sword belongs to the Christian literature, and from the Biblical literature<sup>4</sup> was adopted by Greg. of Tours, Isidor.<sup>5</sup>, and in the Lat. of the Middle Ages is used almost exclusively with the meaning sword. *Mēče*, *sweord*, *sečg*, and *heoru* are synonymous terms, the two last being poetical words.

<sup>1</sup> S. Beit. XII, 32, and Zachers Zts. III, p. 396.

<sup>2</sup> Anz. f. d. A. VII, p. 19—164.<sup>5</sup>

<sup>3</sup> Dig. 43, 16, 3, § 2. *Arma sunt omnia tela, hoc est et fustes et lapides non solum gladii, hastae, frameae (id est romphaeae). Romphaea = a powerful spear.*

<sup>4</sup> Cf. Psalms 97; 16<sup>18</sup>; 21<sup>21</sup>; 34<sup>8</sup> in the Vulgata where *framea* is used, in every other instance *gladius*.

<sup>5</sup> Isid. Orig. 18 c. 68. «Framea vero gladius ex utraque parte acutus quod vulgo spatham vocant.»

*Bil* meaning ‘sword’ is also found only in poetry being especially frequent in Beowulf, but in the glosses is used to translate *falcstrum* ‘scythe’.

In Beowulf the sword plays a prominent part, the poetical Kenningar as well as the regular terms for sword being frequent. Thus it is variously designated as *leoma* the flashing light-beam (1570), *beado-leoma* the battle-light (1523), *brond* the fire-brand (1454), *fēla lāf* the leavings of files (1032), *lāf* a remnant, a precious heirloom (2628, 795, 1488 etc.), *hilde-segese* or *egese* the battle-saw, the terror of the battle (3154), *mægen-fultum(a)* the mighty help (B. 1455), and *gaðwine* the battle-friend (2735). The sword is named, moreover, *ečg* from its edge (2506, 2578 etc.), *ord* from mucro, the point (1549, 556), while *bil* and *mēče* next to *sweord* are the most frequently recurring terms for the great two-edged sword of the heroes. Three swords wrought by the giants are mentioned: the great sword in Grendel’s abode (1558), Wiglaf’s sword (2616), and that of Eofor (2979). A sword blade of *stył* is once mentioned in Beowulf (1533), but these blades were usually of iron (B. 2778) with richly adorned sword hilts of costly metal and set with precious stones cf. B. (2700) where the sword is *fah* and *fæted* adorned with golden plates, (2192) the *golde gegyrede; næs mid Géatam þa sinc-mæððum sēlra on sweordes hād*. This last description recalls the golden hilted swords of the Atlaquipa (stanz. 7).

*sjau eigom salhús,*

*sverþ full ero*

*hverjo ero þeira*

*hjolt ór golle.*

Moreover the description of Grendel’s sword hilt (B. 1694) is distinctly Scandinavian, the *wreoden-hilt* and *wurm-fah*

being a very frequent Scandinavian ornamentation<sup>1</sup>, while the runic inscription is also characteristic.<sup>2</sup>

Another reference to a sword *bunden golde* occurs in B. l. 1900, the *wunden-mæl wrættum gebunden* represents the hilt as adorned with etching of some description, and set with jewels as also the *maððum sweord* (1023). Corresponding to these descriptions and also to the *hyrsted sweord* adorned with gold (672) of Beowulf are such passages as a *gold geriseð on guman sweorde* (Gn. Ex. 126), the *scir mæled swyrd* (Jud. 230), a *gold hilted sword* (Ridls. 56<sup>14</sup>), and the several costly swords referred to in the wills, many having hilts either of gold or silver.

At first glance the frequency of the sword at this period, to be inferred from Beowulf and other poems, would seem to offer a direct contradiction to the laws, wills, MSS., and grave-finds, which prove conclusively that it is the weapon only of warriors of wealth and rank. A closer examination shows, however, that in the poems the costly swords mentioned, and the rich gifts of jewelled swords are always either the property of heroes, or the gifts of kings to great warriors. The single exception occurs in B. (1900), where the gift of a valuable sword to the boatswain by Beowulf gives him such an exalted position among his fellows that it proves the rarity of such a possession among those of his class. An absence of the sword in the equipment of the hall thanes occurs at l. 1242, which may be accidental or a true statement of the case:

---

<sup>1</sup> On Dannenberger Bracteaten No. 3 and 4, and the Golden Horn of Gallehus. S. Dietr. Germ. X, p. 278 ff.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Helgaquīþa 9.

*Setton him to heafdon hilde-randas, bord-wudu beorhtan;  
þær on bence wæs ofer aðelinge yð-gesēsene  
heado-stēapa helm, hringed byrne þrec-wudu þrymlic.*

In an exactly parallel case Beowulf preparing himself for the night is described as giving his sword of rare worth to a servant to care for (671), in this instance the *sword* replaces the *spear* of the warriors mentioned in the passage previously quoted.

The testimony of the MSS. as stated in the general sketch is to be used with great discrimination owing to the conventionality of representation at the early period. One fact is, however, perfectly clear, namely that the *sword without cross-piece* is never represented, pointing to the fact that at the time of the illuminations of the MSS. (in most cases later than the 9<sup>th</sup> cent.) the primitive iron sword of the grave-finds without cross-piece had completely disappeared. The mountings of swords in the MSS. are usually colored yellow implying probably a surface of gold either from thin plates of this metal or from gilding.

With reference to the MSS. in particular — Harleian 603 shows comparatively few *swords*, the *angon* and *regular spear* by far predominating over all other weapons. Where, moreover, it does occur it is plainly the property of kings, leaders, or picked warriors and has often a gold adorned hilt.<sup>1</sup> At pages 13, 29, 33, 65 and 67 occur representations of such, and at 69 two horsemen are represented armed with both *angon* and *sword*, the only example in this entire MS. of their being carried together. Comparison of the various illuminations leads then to the result that

---

<sup>1</sup> Cf. illus. to the IX. Psalm and to the XIII. opp. p. 8, where 4 swords are found.

the angon or spear, and shield are the property of the ordinary warrior and not the sword.

In Aelfric's Heptateuch (Cott. Claud. B. IV) swords are much more frequent than in the Harleian MS., in many cases they seem to have taken the place of the angon or spear<sup>1</sup>, and resemble the great broad swords recovered from the graves<sup>2</sup> with cross-piece and gilded hilt.

The Psalter. Aureum<sup>3</sup> represents the ordinary soldier with spear and round shield, the leaders usually with the sword.

An examination of the Psalter Illus. in the early Middle Ages<sup>4</sup> gives the same results as the Psalter. Aureum.

The great Psalter of Boulogne<sup>5</sup>, probably by an Anglo-Saxon artist between 989 and 1008, has a precise duplicate in many parts, in Cott. Tib. C. VI. Here are represented the achievements of David; No. 2, the fight with Goliath, shows the latter in full armour with sword, shield, spear, and a kind of body armour; No. 3 gives a representation of a sword with cross-piece and clover-leaf handle. Pl. 39 represents foot soldiers armed with the usual round shield, angon or spear, but also with sword.<sup>6</sup>

The remaining examples are from the Cott. Psalter now in Utrecht (fol. 91 V) showing a king with sword and scepter.<sup>7</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Cf. p. 120, 122, 128, 151 etc.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. p. 22, 25, 40 and 104.

<sup>3</sup> Rahn, Taf. XV, X und IX.

<sup>4</sup> Anton Springer, Taf. II, III, IV.

<sup>5</sup> J. O. Westwood, Pl. XXXVIII.

<sup>6</sup> Cf. Harl. 603, p. 69.

<sup>7</sup> Westwood, Pl. XXIX, and Pl. XXXV, from the Salisbury Psalter.

In Strutt<sup>1</sup> the horsemen of the 8<sup>th</sup> century appear without either sword or shield, only the spear, but from the same century is a representation of a foot soldier with a sword and sword belt.<sup>2</sup>

Turning to another, which, together with the laws, forms the most reliable source of information, the graves — their contents but serve to confirm previous statements. The swords recovered from the graves are of two kinds: 1. the two-edged sword proper or long sword (Lat. *spatha, gladius*), 3 ft. long with a somewhat rounded point, perfectly flat, the earlier ones without, the later ones with a small guard or cross-piece, and a handle of ivory, horn, wood or some other perishable material. 2. The solid one-edged blade, the *scrama-seax* with sharp point, rarely found in England, but frequent on the Continent. The best specimen of this class is the well known Thames Knife inscribed with runes which is preserved in the British Museum.

The oldest swords found in the graves consist of a rusted iron blade from  $2\frac{1}{2}$  to 3 ft. long, the width near handle being about  $2\frac{1}{2}$  inches, without cross-piece, double-edged, and tapering slightly toward the point, with a strig  $4\frac{1}{2}$  inches long. They are uniformly without pommel, the termination being merely a slight transverse projection from the iron strig for the purpose of securing the wood, which completed the handle.<sup>3</sup>

In the case of a sword recovered at Strood in Kent<sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> D. and Hab. of the People of Eng., Vol. I, Pl. XIII.

<sup>2</sup> Id., for swords from 9<sup>th</sup> and 10<sup>th</sup> centuries cf. Pl. XXIX, No. 17, and Pl. XIX.

<sup>3</sup> For examples of this primitive type see Sax. Obseq., Pl. XXXIV, Hor. Fer., Pl. XXVI, figs. 1 and 2.

<sup>4</sup> For similar specimens cf. Invent. Sepul., Pl. XIV, and Hor. Fer. XXVI, figs. 1 and 3.

the remains of a scabbard is oxydized on to the blade, the interior being of wood, portions of which still remain together with a part of the outer covering, which resembles shagreen.<sup>1</sup> For the relative proportion between the number of swords and spears found, s. p. 25, from which the relative scarcity of the sword becomes at once apparent, but 2 having been recovered from all Derbyshire, 15 from 750 Kentish graves, and from 1010 graves examined by Cochet in Normandy, but 8 swords were recovered, being found only in the most richly provided graves.

In the Later Iron Period No. 1 developed a cross-piece, two very early specimens from Gilton and Coombe<sup>2</sup> showing the process of evolution, for here the cross-piece has projected but little beyond the edges of the blade. Eventually the guard became a very prominent feature of the Scandinavian sword.<sup>3</sup> Proving beyond question that the type with well developed cross-piece belonged to the period in which the pagan practice of interring weapons with the dead had been abandoned, is the fact that genuine examples of this type found in England and in countries early christianized have, in most cases, been either dredged from the beds of rivers, or turned up among old foundations, though in districts where paganism held longer sway they have also been obtained from graves.<sup>4</sup>

The handles of later swords consisted of grip (*hilt, hæft*), pommel, and cross-piece, the grip, being as in the

<sup>1</sup> For continental specimens s. Lind., Das Museum in Mainz, Pl. XII, 3, 6, 7; Cochet, La Norm. Sout., Pl. VII, fig. 1.

<sup>2</sup> Pag. Sax., Pl. XXIV.

<sup>3</sup> S. Worsaae's Afbildninger n. 383.

<sup>4</sup> S. Pag. Sax., p. 47, and Hewitt, Ancient Arms and Armour, p. 31—37.

case of the earlier specimens, commonly formed of wood, portions of which (identified as pine) have been dug up adhering to the strig. This cross-bar was usually straight, but it sometimes curved toward the blade in the manner characteristic of the Danish cross-piece.<sup>1</sup> These cross-pieces of metal, as well as the pommel, were often richly decorated and gilded, the form of the latter being either trefoil, cinquefoil hemispherical, rounded, or triangular, examples of each being found in one or the other of the MSS. mentioned above. Compare furthermore the numerous passages, cited at p. 36 ff. from Beowulf and other Anglo-Saxon poems, referring to ornamental hilts, which are, however, extremely rare in the grave-finds four or five only having been recovered from A.-S. interments, owing in all probability to the fact that such costly weapons were retained as heir-looms in the family of the deceased warrior and not buried with him. Later disturbance of the graves for the sake of their contents may also have contributed to bring about this scarcity of sword-finds.

A rare specimen of such a hilt comes from Coombe in E. Kent<sup>2</sup> found with another sword in a richly provided grave. This handle which is well adapted for a firm grasp is adorned with two metal fillets of bronze gilt at the pommel and cross-piece (cf. the silver hilted sword of Aedelstan), the whole of which is ornamented with a characteristic plaited pattern, and possesses a curious indented ornament on the pommel.

<sup>1</sup> S. specimen in Brit. Mu., also MSS. Cott. Tib. c. VI, fol. 9, and Cleop. C. VIII, the sword from the river Witham, Hor. Fer., Pl. XXVI, fig. 5, Arch. Jour. Vol. VI, p. 75, and Hewitt's Arms and Armour, Pl. IV, figs. 9, 10, 11, taken from Bähr's Livonian Collection.

<sup>2</sup> Pag. Sax., Pl. XXIV, or Collec. Antiq. II, Pl. XXXVIII, fig. 1.

A second one from Gilton<sup>1</sup> of silver gilt is remarkable for the metal loop and movable ring. This perhaps served for the appendage of a charm or talisman, possibly for one of the large crystal beads found only in the graves of men (cf. B. 672 *hyrsted sword*).

Number three is a sword pommel, engraved with runes, from Ash<sup>2</sup>, which corresponds to the gold-hilted rune-engraved sword described in Beowulf (1695). Two more, one from the Isle of Wight and a second from Reading<sup>3</sup> together with a beautiful hilt of soft brown wood in the British Museum with mountings of gold filagree of the usual winding A.-S. pattern, and set with garnets, complete the list of discoveries in the graves of fine specimens of the gold-smith's art.

Danish or rather Scandinavian swords have been discovered surrounded with chains of gold, or wound with fine iron or gold wire<sup>4</sup> with which may be compared B. (1564) *fetel-hilt . . . hring mæl gebrægd*, or covered with plates of gold and silver as in Beowulf (1694). Also from the latest pagan period come specimens with runic inscriptions let into the blade such as on king Hacon's sword *Kuernbitr*.<sup>5</sup>

For years it has been surmised that these swords, owing to their obtuse point, were not used for the thrust. Sidonius Apollinaris, however, disposes of this question with the words: *Alii habetorum caede gladiorum latera*

---

<sup>1</sup> Arch. XXX, p. 132, or Pag. Sax., Pl. XXIV.

<sup>2</sup> Pag. Sax., Pl. XXIV, fig. 3.

<sup>3</sup> S. De Baye, p. 19, fig. 2.

<sup>4</sup> S. Montelius, Die Kultur Schwedens in vorchristlicher Zeit, figs. 133, 134, 164.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. Worsaae's Afbildninger n. 383.

*dentata pernumerant. Alii caesim atque punctum foramina circulos loriarum metiuntur.*<sup>1</sup>

Number 2 the Scrama seax, the single-edged long knife or short sword, is found in many graves in France and Germany, but is of extremely rare occurrence in England, being found only in the graves at Ozingell in Kent, and appears but seldom in the MSS. or in the poems. In the glosses the word is frequently used to translate the Lat. culter, but in the compounds *peoh-seax* = Lat. semispatha, and *hype-seax* = *lytel 'sweord*, while in prose it refers in general to the small knives found in almost every grave of both sex both in England, France, and Germany. In the poetry on the other hand it refers to the short sword or Lat. machaera.<sup>2</sup> These sword knives are probably the cultri validi (*quos vulgo scrama saxos vocant*) of Greg. of Tours<sup>3</sup> who describes them as incised or grooved. Worthy of notice in this connection also is the battle-call of Hengist to his followers on arriving in England *Eu Saxones nimis eure 'Saxes!*<sup>4</sup> and of Widukind<sup>5</sup> *erat autem illis diebus Saxonibus longorum cutellarum usus, quibus usque hodie Anglia utuntur, morem gentis antiquae sectantes.*

An excellent example from the cemetery at Ozingell<sup>6</sup> 16 inches long, of iron, and provided with a cross-piece, corresponds point for point with the illustrated A.-S. Psalter

---

<sup>1</sup> Lib. III, Ep. 3.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. B. 1545 for the seax used by Grendel's mother, also Cri. 1141, and Rā. 766.

<sup>3</sup> Lib. IV. c. 46, VIII, 29.

<sup>4</sup> Nennius, c. 46 p. 37.

<sup>5</sup> Lib. I, c. 6.

<sup>6</sup> Hewitt, Pl. IX, fig. 1.

of the Duc de Berri in the Paris library<sup>1</sup> where the spearman's adversary appears to be employing such an instrument as that from the Kentish grave. The handles were probably of wood, and the Thames knife is inscribed with runes, and the name of the soldier who bore it. An interesting discovery at Kingston Down, Kent was a short sword or dagger 10 inches long with a silver pommel neatly set with oblong squares of calcareous paste.<sup>2</sup>

#### Stæf-sweord.

The staff-sword, known to the ancient Egyptians and Greeks, was among the Romans identical with the *sparum*, the peasants' weapon, which combined a broad blade with a wooden staff.<sup>3</sup>

This curious weapon is also met with in Merovingian and Carolingian graves<sup>4</sup> and is found recorded in A.-S. Glossaries, though no trace of such has been discovered in the grave finds.

In the Middle Ages this weapon received in German the name *Gläfe* from Fr. *glaive* and was applied to the lance of the knights. The Fr. *guisarme* (*gisarme*) refers also to a kind of *Gläfe*, or staff-sword.

This weapon is also wide spread among non-European peoples being known to the Japanese and Chinese<sup>5</sup>, and to certain African tribes.

---

<sup>1</sup> Hewitt, p. 51, No. 8.

<sup>2</sup> Invent. Sepul., p. 55 and for the usual *seax* Collec. Antiq. II, Pl. LVIII, Invent. Sepul., Pl. XV, and Hor. Fer., Pl. XXVI, fig. 6.

<sup>3</sup> S. Jahns Trutzwaffen, p. 260 and Taf. XXVIII, figs. 6, 7, 8, and 9.

<sup>4</sup> The same fig. 11.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. Jahns, p. 174 and 262, also H. B. Meyer, Seltene Waffen aus Asien, Afrika und Amerika im könig. Ethnogr. Mus. zu Dresden. Leipzig 1885.

Possibly the change in meaning of *framea* 'spear' to 'sword' is to be connected with this weapon half spear, half sword, although it is by no means certain.

#### The Sheath.

The sword-sheath was usually of wood covered with leather, and sometimes mounted in bronze.<sup>1</sup> In the British Museum is a sword found at Battle Edge, Oxfordshire, which retains the bronze chape and locket of its scabbard. These were sometimes gilded and even of gold. Occasionally the sheaths were adorned with a winding or snake pattern so characteristic of the period, and one bronze chape inlaid with figures of animals in gilt has been discovered.<sup>2</sup> For a Derbyshire example constructed of thin wood, overlaid with leather, and covered with a pattern of alternate fillets and lozenges, see the article by Bateman.<sup>3</sup>

The curious type of sword scabbard entirely of bronze is in all probability of northern manufacture, such having been found in parts of Scandinavia, and is not of Anglo-Saxon make.<sup>4</sup> Frequently the scabbard is oxydized on to the blade of the sword as in the specimen from Strood, it being impossible to separate the one from the other.

#### The Sword Belt.

Among the Romans the *cingulum militiae*, a leather girdle worn about the hips, and used solely to support the

<sup>1</sup> For bronze chapess cf. Sax. Obseq., Pl. XXXIV, and Fair. Graves, Pl. III, fig. 8, also Lind., Merov. Altertümmer, fig. 122.

<sup>2</sup> S. Arch. 38, p. 84, or Hor. Fer., Pl. XXVI, fig. 3.

<sup>3</sup> Arch. jour., Vol. VII.

<sup>4</sup> For the specimen from Yorkshire s. Hewitt, p. 44, and cf. Arch. jour. X, p. 259.

sword, was sharply distinguished from the *cingulum* for girding the tunic. Among the German tribes on the contrary the two fell together, and the *cingulum militiae* was no longer sword belt alone, but supported the clothing, served as pocket etc. Originally the *sweord-fetel* was a leather strap, more or less ornamented, attached directly to the sheath, girt about the waist, and fastened with a buckle; the buckles and tongues being frequently found in the graves of the Merovingian period. These are generally of bronze, sometimes of copper, and the metal is not infrequently gilded, embossed, or enamelled, some being set with garnets and other stones.<sup>1</sup>

Often these belts were richly adorned, accounts of golden sword belts being not infrequent, cf. Procop.<sup>2</sup> for an account of such among the booty, Greg. of Tours<sup>3</sup> who describes a *baltheum magnum ex auro lapidibusque preciosis ornatum*, Eginhart in his Epitome of the Hist. of France, also writes *et gladio semper accinctus, cuius capulus ac baltheus aut aureus aut argenteus erat*, and Wm. of Malmesbury, who gives an account of the sword belt given by Alfred to his son Aedelstan as follows: *quem etiam premature militem fecerat, donatum chlamy de coccinea gemmato baltheo, ense Saxonico cum vagina aurea.*

The belt is also occasionally worn across the body suspended from the right shoulder as in the Cott. MS. Tiber. C. VI, fol. 9.<sup>4</sup>

The Anglo-Saxon wills mention some richly adorned A.-S. sword belts; thus in Chart. Th. 557 *pæs swurdes*

<sup>1</sup> Pag. Sax., Pl. XXVIII, XXIX, and XXXIX, fig. 1.

<sup>2</sup> Bell. Vand. lib. II, c. 9.

<sup>3</sup> Lib. X, c. 21.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. also Strutt, D. u. Hab. of the People of England, Pl. XXIX, No. 17.

*mid þam sylfrenan hilte* was attached to *pone gyldenan fetils*; in the will of Aðeric<sup>1</sup> his sword *mid fetele* is part of the *Heriot*; also mention is made of a *gyldenan fetils*.<sup>2</sup>

In the 13<sup>th</sup> century the sword sheath was attached not directly to the belt, but was suspended by means of small leather straps and rings, so that it could easily be detached without removing the belt itself. This enabled the warrior further to carry his sword in his hand if so desired. This then was the origin of the *cingulum militaris* or *baltheus militaris*, which was known in England as the *balderich*, the encircling with which attended the ceremony of knighting in the days of Chivalry.

#### The Bow and Arrow.

Notwithstanding the fact that the bow and arrow was the weapon of primitive man, and known to every nation, the terms for arrow have had an individual development in the various branches of the European division of the family of languages and are not descended from one Idg. ground form. The Germanic word for bow is N. Europ. taking its name from the form of the same, the Greeks, on the other hand, deriving their name τόξον 'yew' from the material of which the bow was made.

As the spear so also was the bow used both for war and the chase, and certainly served in this double capacity among the Germanic tribes, although the statement is frequently made that the bow was not employed among

---

<sup>1</sup> Chart. Th. 516<sup>27</sup>.

<sup>2</sup> Chart. Th. 558<sup>12</sup>, and s. San Marte, p. 139.

them as a weapon of war. In answer to this cf. Caesar<sup>1</sup> for mention of arrows among the Gauls; Procop.<sup>2</sup> and Agathias<sup>3</sup> for mention of the non-carrying of bows among the Franks in a certain expedition, which proves conclusively, however, that they had been or were at the time common among the soldiery.

For reference to the use of bows among the Alemanni and Goths cf. Ammian Marc.<sup>4</sup> and Jordanes<sup>5</sup>, while Greg. of Tours<sup>6</sup> describes the Frankish troops as armed with swords and arrows. Furthermore on the Tiberian Cameo of the Paris library the bow is represented among the weapons of the conquered Germans, as also on the Antonine Column.

Turning to the laws the Lex Salica<sup>7</sup> contains the amount of wergeld to be paid for the injury of the shooting finger, which corresponds to the English law of Aeðelbirht<sup>8</sup> and of Alfred. In the Capit. of Charlemagne from the year 813<sup>9</sup> the bow with two cords and twelve arrows is ordered as part of the equipment of every Frankish foot soldier, while bows with arrows and quivers are ordered likewise for the cavalry in the Epist. from the year 784.<sup>10</sup> The

---

<sup>1</sup> Sagittariosque omnes, quorum erat permagnus numerus in Gallia, conquiri jubet Vercingetorix. Bell. Gall. VII, 31.

<sup>2</sup> B. Got. II, 25.

<sup>3</sup> II, 5, s. under spear.

<sup>4</sup> XIV, 10.

<sup>5</sup> De re Get. c. 5.

<sup>6</sup> V, 20; .II, 37. For further references to M. Lat. authors s. San Marte, Waffenkunde, p. 179ff.

<sup>7</sup> *Si secundum digitum, quo sagittatur, excusserit, sol. XXXV culpabilis judicatur.* Lex. Sal. XXXI, 6, ed. Baluze p. 301.

<sup>8</sup> *Gif man scyte-finger of-slæhð VIII scill. gebete.* S. Part. II, p. . under scyte.

<sup>9</sup> No. IX, ed. Baluze, p. 508.

<sup>10</sup> Epistol. Caroli M. ad. Fulradum Abbatem St. Dyonisi.

arrow strange to say is not mentioned in the laws of Canute. The Beowulf, however, and other poems give abundant evidence of the use of bow and arrow as weapon of war among the Anglo-Saxons long before the Norman Conquest. For instance the lines in Beowulf beginning 3114 — *Nu sceal gled fretan*

. . . . . *wigena strengel,*  
*pone-pe oft gebad isern scure,*  
*ponne stræla storm, strengum gebæded,*  
*scoc ofer scild-weall, sceft nyte heold,*

*feder-gearwum fus flane full-eode*, leaves no room for doubt as to their use in battle, or compare l. 1433 where mention of *flan-bogan* occurs, together with the *here-stræl*, again at 1744, while at 2437 appears the form *horn-bogan*, which Schulz (Höf. Leben II, 17) describes as 'a wooden bow covered with a layer of horn here ticker there thinner in order to give it greater strength for casting the arrow'. The *horn-bogan* of the Anglo-Saxons may, however, be named from the curved ends of the bows in comparison to straight ends, horn weapons not otherwise occurring among this people (cf. in this connection horns of a saddle). In other poems occur such expressions as *flanes flyht* (By. 71), *flan-geweorc* (Cri. 613), *draca ne fleoged* (Fins. 3) etc. with several similar expressions from the Judith, Elene, Exodus and others.

At the battle of Hastings, moreover, arrows were employed on the English side, though few in number<sup>1</sup>, while the battle was won by the Normans through their superior archery.<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> S. Bay. Tap., where a single archer only is represented on the Eng. side. Also copied in Jähns Trutzwaff., Taf. XXXIX, fig. 4.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Köhler, Entw. d. Kriegsw. Bd. I, p. 1 ff.

Poisoned arrows were known to the Anglo-Saxons as to all Idg. peoples from the earliest period<sup>1</sup>, cf. An. (1331) *Laetað gares ord eark attre gemæl in gedufan in fæges ferð!*, and in reference to the sword *Hrunting* in B. 1459 *ecg wæs iren ater-tanum fah* showing the use of poisoned weapons.

Important evidence, for the use of bow and arrow, for other than hunting purposes, later than the 8<sup>th</sup> cent., is offered by the representations of such in the MSS., when carried by warriors. Cf. Cott. MS., Cleop. C. VIII, Claud. B. IV, Tiberius C. VI all in British Museum, the Prudentius MS. of the Tenison library, and the illus. of the 24<sup>th</sup> Ps. representing a Bowman and a quiver for arrows in the centre (Anton Springer, Die Psalt.-Illus im früh. M.-A., Tafel II und IV), and the VII Psalm of Harleian 603. Cf. also the ivory figures of two archers forming part of the cover decoration of the prayer book of Charles le Chauve, each holding a leash of barbed arrows and the figure of a warrior from the Stuttgart Psalter<sup>2</sup> provided with coat of mail, helmet, and bow.

Owing to the decaying of the wood no trace of bows have been found in the graves with the exception of eight preserved in good condition in the tree coffins near Oberflacht, and some few found in the moors. Although these graves date from a slightly later period, the contents

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Rigveda VI, 75, 15, where two kinds of arrows are distinguished, bronze and those smeared with poison. — Pliny, Nat. Hist. XXVI, § 76, 27, mentions poisoned hunting arrows. The Lex Bajuvariorum, Tit. III, 'si quis cum toxicata sagitta alicui sanguinam fuderit cum sol. XII componat', and the Lex Salica XIX, 'si quis alterum cum sagitta toxicata percutere voluerit, solidis LXII culpabilis judicetur'.

<sup>2</sup> Weiß, Kostümkunde II, fig. 268.

agree so exactly with those of the Merovingian period that the long bows here preserved may be regarded as typical for the German peoples of the continent and probably for the Anglo-Saxons. These bows were of yew, seven feet long, curving very slightly, strongest in the middle, and tapering gradually to the ends where the bow string was made fast.<sup>1</sup> The finds from the Nydam moor were not so uniform, the bows varying in size from four to eight feet, and either quite plain or ornamented, they had sharp metal points at the corners and dated approximately from the third cent., Roman coins pointing to some such date having been discovered with them. These bows are often made from one piece of wood, others are of several pieces, but in every instance heavier and stouter toward the centre.

The arrows discovered with the afore-mentioned bows (three for each) were completely dried out as might be expected. The shafts were about 2 ft. long, somewhat stronger at the top than at the bottom, and with kitts for the feathering. Remarkable is the fact that the metal arrow points had completely disappeared, although the small clamps used to attach them to the shaft were still present, and only a brownish red coloring was seen where the points should have been. Some of these arrows attained a length of  $3\frac{1}{2}$  ft., while a quiver found with them about 2 ft. long points to much smaller arrows.

The arrow heads may be divided into 3 classes:

1. Round and smooth with a spike which was driven into the wood of shaft.
2. Leaf shaped with a cusp to fit over the shaft.
3. Those with barbed hooks.<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Lind., *Merov. Altertümer*, fig. 46.

<sup>2</sup> For other divisions s. Lind., p. 154.

Number 1 prevailed among the Romans, while 2 and 3 are the prevailing forms found in German graves, which make it extremely difficult to distinguish between these and the light spear heads (*daroð*).<sup>1</sup> Although John Y. Akermann denies the existence of arrows among the Anglo-Saxons for the purpose of war<sup>2</sup>, and identifies all heads resembling arrow points as belonging to a light spear, the fact remains nevertheless that certain discoveries of arrow points, although in very few instances authentic, have been made. Thus for instance in Invent. Sepulchrale a find of arrow heads containing both the barbed and triangular forms, the latter approaching somewhat the bolt shape, from Chessel in Kent is described. Nenia Brit.<sup>3</sup> contains an iron arrow head from Lancashire, while Bateman<sup>4</sup> gives an account of an arrow head discovered in Derbyshire. Their extreme rarity may be due in part not to their scarcity among the Anglo-Saxons but to their rapid decomposition and, on account of small size, entire disintegration in a moist soil.

The arrows were carried in a quiver, which was probably slung over the shoulder after the manner represented in fig. 114 of Montelius (*Urkultur Schwedens*).

The highest pitch of excellence in archery was attained in England under Norman rule, as was demonstrated by the supremacy of English archers in the hundred years' war with France, a skilled archer being able to shoot 600 yards.

---

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Lind., figs. 47 and 48, Cochet, *La Norm. Sout.*, Pl. XV, fig. 9.

<sup>2</sup> Arch. 30, p. 171.

<sup>3</sup> Pl. XIX, fig. 7.

<sup>4</sup> *Ten Years' Diggings*, p. 126.

Owing to this great skill with the bow archers were retained as regular troops in England until 1627, and to this day archery has remained a favorite sport of the English nobility. For further development in Middle Ages cf. Dillon.<sup>1</sup>

### Arcubalista.

The arcubalista, OE. *arbaleste*, was introduced into England from France after 1000. It was known among the Chinese, however, as early as 1200 B. C., appeared later among the Greeks, and was known to the Romans in the 4<sup>th</sup> cent. A. D. under the name *arcubalista* or bow hurling machine from Lat. *arcus* and Gr. βάλλειν. Cf. the column from a Roman grave at Polignac sur Loir, in the museum at Puy, for a Roman cross-bow and quiver<sup>2</sup>, and also Veg.<sup>3</sup> *Fustibalos arcuballistas et fundas describere superfluum puto, quae praesens usus agnoscit* pointing to general use of same at this period. Ammian. Marc.<sup>4</sup> and Jordanes<sup>5</sup> ascribe the carrying of cross-bows to the Goths, and then follows silence until the 10<sup>th</sup> cent. when it again appears in an MS. of Louis IV. (937), and toward the end of the cent. in a bible from St. Germaine now in the Nat. Lib. at Paris.<sup>6</sup> It was in use during the Crusades, and during the 12<sup>th</sup> cent. appears to have come into general use again. For the illustrations from the Chron. of

---

<sup>1</sup> Arch. Tackle in the Middle Ages.

<sup>2</sup> Jähns, Trutzwaff., Taf. XL, fig. 9.

<sup>3</sup> E. R. M. II, 15 and IV, 22.

<sup>4</sup> XXII, 8.

<sup>5</sup> De re Get. c. 5.

<sup>6</sup> S. Jähns, Trutzwaff., Taf. XL, fig. 11.

Math. Paris, in the 13<sup>th</sup> cent., showing numerous cross-bows, cf. Strutt.<sup>1</sup>

The cross-bow consisted of a very strong bow, originally of wood, afterwards made of steel or iron, fastened in the centre to a wooden shaft. It possessed in addition a lever, the aim of the whole being to increase the force of the shot, and was known as an arbalestre with crows (footlever). In the 12<sup>th</sup> and 13<sup>th</sup> centuries this cross-bow was strung with the hand, and the artificial means of spanning came first in the 14<sup>th</sup> cent.<sup>2</sup>

The projectiles used were *bolts* — *catapultia* — so heavy that only a few could be carried upon the battle field. These were carried in a quiver, and both quiver and cross-bow were carried slung over the shoulder by means of a strap. The cross-bow was not so true as the bow, and the bolts were shorter and less accurately made than the arrows, but when they struck they penetrated every thing. Cf. Lampr. Alex. 2262

*die Armborst unde di phile  
täten ime vil grôsen schaden.*

At the most eight shots only to the minute were possible, and furthermore the thick strings when once dampened could not be used as was the case with the Genoese bowmen at Crecy. On the other hand in sieges where the bolts could be supplied promptly without the necessity of carrying, and some one was near to help span the bow they could be used on the walls with deadly effect against the enemy attacking from below.

---

<sup>1</sup> Angleterre Ancienne, p. 25.

<sup>2</sup> For the further development s. Wendelin Boeheim, «Bogen und Armbrust» (Z. f. hist. Waffenkunde 7. Dresden 1898).

### The Axe.

The axe though not primarily a weapon of war has served as such among all nations in their early stage of development since the Pre-historic Age. From the primitive wedge-shaped stone axe of the Stone Age<sup>1</sup> developed the battle axe of the Bronze Age, a variation of which was the celt, used for close fighting and for throwing, the chief weapon of the Celtic tribes<sup>2</sup>, which was in turn superseded by the iron war axes at an early period of the Christian era. Later these became the favorite weapon of the northern tribes especially among the Franks and the Scandinavians.

That the axe was not a common war weapon of the Greeks and Romans is a well known fact, war axes being mentioned but twice in the entire Iliad<sup>3</sup>, once where Pisandros is described as carrying a battle axe beneath his shield, and a second time in the battle about the ships.<sup>4</sup> On the other hand among the Franks of the 5<sup>th</sup>, 6<sup>th</sup>, and 7<sup>th</sup> centuries, the chief historians bear testimony to its frequency. Thus Sid. Apol. describing the war like appearance of the Franks says *excussisse citas vastum per inane bipennes, et plagae praescisse locum* Pan. Majorian, while in Epist. XX the throwing axes appear under the title *securibus missilibus dextrae refertae*. Procop. in the 6<sup>th</sup> cent., and Agathias<sup>5</sup> in the 7<sup>th</sup> assign πέλεκυς and πέλεκυς ἀμφιστόμος as the chief weapons of the Franks. Greg. of Tours also<sup>6</sup> employs both the terms *bipennis* and

<sup>1</sup> Jähns, Trutzwaff., Taf. III.

<sup>2</sup> Jähns, Taf. II.

<sup>3</sup> Bk. XIII, l. 611.

<sup>4</sup> Bk. XV, l. 711.

<sup>5</sup> Lib. II, c. 5.

<sup>6</sup> II, c. 27.

*securis*, and enumerates sword, axe, and spear as the chief weapons of the ordinary soldiery at the time of Clovis. Flodoardus and Hincmar<sup>1</sup> mention the francisca, while Isid.<sup>2</sup> at the beginning of the 7<sup>th</sup> cent. remarks that the *bipennis* was called by the Spainards, i. e. Goths, *francisca*.

In the case of the battle axe archaeological research has corroborated history, the Frankish grave-finds being rich in *franciscas* found together with the spear and shield. The difficulty, however, is to reconcile the kind of axe found with the terms *bipennis* and ἀμφιστόμος of the historians<sup>3</sup>, both of which undoubtedly convey the meaning of *double-axe*, while all those discovered in the graves are single.

The three principal types of axe met with in the grave-finds are: No. 1 the genuine francisca or throwing-axe, which although varying in size and weight is the lightest and simplest of all axe forms<sup>4</sup>, with a comparatively short handle, and blade broadening out to a flat quarter of a circle with the peculiarity that the middle of the blade does not coincide with the middle of the axe head, this position of the blade probably strengthening the force of the blow when hurled. No. 2 much more seldom found in the graves of the Rhine Franks, is a slender axe with slightly curved or straight blade, the middle of which is horizontal to the centre of the axe head.<sup>5</sup> In fig. 91 is a still further evolu-

<sup>1</sup> Hist. Remens I, 13, and Vita St. Remigii.

<sup>2</sup> Orig. XVIII, c. 6.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Veg. V, 15. — *Bipennis est securis habens utraque parte latissimum et acutissimum ferrum.*

<sup>4</sup> Lind., Merov. Altert., figs. 84 and 85.

<sup>5</sup> Id., figs. 87 and 91.

tion of this blade, which form serves as connecting link between the *francisca* and the broad-axe. No. 3, the war or broad-axe<sup>1</sup>, has the widely extended blade characteristic of these axes, which was retained even into the Middle Ages. This type is often found together with the *francisca* in the same grave.

Calling to mind the description of the *bipennis* given above, and the frequency with which it is employed by the M. Lat. writers it must strike even the most casual observer as curious that out of the hundreds of Merovingian graves opened not a single double axe in the true sense of the word has as yet been discovered. Why is it, and how can it be accounted for? Lindenschmidt<sup>2</sup> offers the suggestion that the double axe forms may at one time have been prevalent, but that at the time of the Merovingians they were either no longer or very rarely used, and so it came about that the term *bipennis* at first applied by the Romans to the double Asiatic battle axes may have lost its significance, and have been applied to any axe. This explanation is very plausible, especially considering the change of meaning which *framea* has undergone, but notwithstanding that fact the description for instance of Veg.<sup>3</sup> quoted above is so exact, that it scarcely leaves room for doubt that such an axe must have existed at the time of writing. Roach Smith, Akermann, and Rigollot agree with Lindenschmidt that the *bipennis* of the historians is not an actuality. Wylie<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Lind., Merov. Alter., figs. 92—94.

<sup>2</sup> Id., p. 197.

<sup>3</sup> S. p. 57.

<sup>4</sup> Arch. XXXV, p. 228—231.

and Abbé Cochet<sup>1</sup>, on the other hand, have attempted to prove its existence on the basis of a certain find made at Parfondeval, identifying a double axe found there, of very solid and weighty proportions, with one vertical blade shaped like a *francisca*, and another smaller and of horizontal form<sup>2</sup>, with the πέλεκυς ἀμφιστόμος of Agathias. On a Grecian urn in the British Museum, Theseus is armed with a double axe, not very dissimilar from a double *francisca*, and axe No. 13 of Pl. XVI illustrating the paper on the Scythian Tumulus near Asterabad<sup>3</sup> is likewise a double axe resembling the one from Parfondeval. It must be added, nevertheless, that this is the only specimen extant in France, Germany, or England answering in any way to that description, and there is, moreover, a suspicion of its being a carpenter's tool, it bearing a strong resemblance to the carpenter's axes of the Romans. Having been found in a warrior's grave is evidence for its use as a weapon of war, which does not prove beyond question, however, that double axes or even this double axe was in use as a weapon among the Franks.

Though agreeing in so many details with the Frankish graves, the Anglo-Saxon interments differ widely in this instance for out of many hundreds of graves opened only 8 axes in all have been recovered, while in the Rhine Frankish region the proportion of finds is about one axe for every fifth warrior's grave. These 8 axes, however, though so few in number offer an almost exact correspondence to the Continental forms, the taper axe<sup>4</sup> found in

<sup>1</sup> La Norm. Sout., p. 232.

<sup>2</sup> Arch. XXXV, p. 229 for cut.

<sup>3</sup> Arch. XXX.

<sup>4</sup> Pag. Sax., Pl. XXIII.

the river Thames strongly resembling the francisca though not identical, while the Kentish axes from Coombe and Richborough<sup>1</sup> closely resemble fig. 6 from Selzen and fig. 4 from Livonia.<sup>2</sup> A small iron axe from Colchester<sup>3</sup> corresponds to the axes taken from the graves of Frankish youths. Cf. the axe from Little Wilbraham<sup>4</sup>, from Faversham and from Beachdown<sup>5</sup>, which together with two from Ozingell, Kent complete the list.

In the MSS. axes appear in the Cott. MS. Cleop. C. VIII and Harl. 603, double axes appearing twice in the later<sup>6</sup>, but this MS., not being earlier than the close of the 11<sup>th</sup> cent., has no weight as evidence of their use in England at an early period.

For the later period also the Bayeux tapestry must be taken into consideration<sup>7</sup>, there every man on the English side is represented with a battle axe, and furthermore the historians and poets, who have later described this battle, without exception, assign the battle axe to the English as characteristic weapon. Compare for instance Wm. of Malmesbury's description of the English army at Hastings *pedites omnes cum bipennibus, conserta ante*

---

<sup>1</sup> Arch. XXXIV, p. 179.

<sup>2</sup> Akermann, Celt. and Teut. Weapon, p. 9. For French examples s. La Norm. Sout., Pl. VII, IX, XI, and for Danish Worsaae's Copenh. Mu., p. 68 and 69.

<sup>3</sup> Hor. Fer. Pl. XXVII, fig. 18.

<sup>4</sup> Sax. Obseq. Pl. XXXIX, fig. 83.

<sup>5</sup> Arch. Index, Pl. XIV, fig. 20.

<sup>6</sup> For reproduction s. Celt. and Teut. Weapons, p. 12.

<sup>7</sup> Descrip. de la tapisserie Bayeux par M. Launcelot im 8. Band der Mém. de l'Acad. des Inscript. et Belles Lettres. Also — G. Köhler. — Die Entw. des Kriegswesens und der Kriegsführung in der Ritterzeit, Bd. 1, S. 1—55.

*se scutorum testudine, impenetrabilem cuneum faciunt<sup>1</sup>.* In the *Gesta Guilielmi Ducis Normannorum<sup>2</sup>* is found *jactant Angli cuspides ac diversorum generum tela, saevissimas quasque secures et lignis imposita saxe.* Wace<sup>3</sup> writes

*Geldones Engleiz haches portoient  
Egisarmes ki bein tranchoiant,*

the terme *egisarmes*, occurring again in the Statutes of Wm. of Scotland (1165—1214)<sup>4</sup>, has the very unusual meaning of 'axe': *Et qui minus habet, quam 40 solidos, habent gysarum, quod dicitur Hand axe.* Also Extr. de la Chron. de la Norm. contains the statement

*Et sitost comme les Anglois les virent fuir  
Ils commencèrent à poursuivre  
Chasquun la hache à son col.*

The axe is wanting altogether on the Norman side. The axe here carried is in all probability the Danish battle axe with moderately long handle, the favorite weapon of the Norsemen, which under Canute became the weapon of the ordinary Anglo-Saxon soldier, and is not as is usually supposed the retention of the old Continental axe owing to insular isolation and the conservatism thereby engendered, long after the Continental Germans, had ceased to carry it. This theory of conservatism has hitherto found much favour, but has been upset by the scarcity of axes in the grave-finds, proving that it was never, as the francisca with the Franks, the weapon of every Anglo-Saxon warrior. It remained, however, in

---

<sup>1</sup> *Gesta Regum Anglorum*, c. 241, p. 414.

<sup>2</sup> p. 201.

<sup>3</sup> 12927.

<sup>4</sup> Cap. 23, § 4.

England after the Conquest, for in the 15<sup>th</sup> cent. Fishart (*Gargantua*) speaks of the throwing of the *English Beihel*, which eventually developed into the *helbard*, and remained in use until late in the Middle Ages.

### The Liðere or Sling.

The sling was well known to the Anglo-Saxons, although very rarely mentioned in the literature, owing to its use being confined to the lower classes. Reference is made to it in Sal. 27, otherwise it is found only in the glossaries.

Among the Franks the assurance of Agathias<sup>1</sup> that in the year 553 no slings were carried by the Frankish army proves conclusively that it was not unusual for warriors to carry such. Furthermore a Capit. of Charl. No. X<sup>2</sup> appoints *secures, taretrōs, fundibulas* for those men *qui exinde bene sciant jactare*, indicating clearly that slingers formed a certain part of the Frankish army at that time. In all probability the same usage existed among the Anglo-Saxons at this period, but the direct proof for this comes from a later period, the sling being in use among them as late as 1066. For a representation of this weapon s. Westwood<sup>3</sup>, the plate being taken from the Great Psalt. of Bologna (executed by A.-S. artists in the Abbey of St. Bertin between 989 and 1008) where David appears unarmed except for the sling in his hand.

The slings may be divided into two classes, the simple more primitive type made of a leather band

---

<sup>1</sup> II, c. 5.

<sup>2</sup> Ed. Baluze, p. 509.

<sup>3</sup> Miniatures and Ornaments of A.-S. and Ir. MSS., Pl. 38.

or strap with an open pocket in the middle for the projectile such as is represented in the above mentioned Psalter, and on the border of the Bayeux tapestry<sup>1</sup>, and the staff-sling, or *stæf-lidere*, a later development of the same. For a description of this cf. Veg.<sup>2</sup>, who describes the staff as four ft. long, in the middle of which is a leather sling (*funda*), which weapon is handled with both hands, and throws stones like the *onager*. According to San Marte the Greeks named the ballista (a machine for hurling stones) *onager*, and the Romans *manganum*.<sup>3</sup> In the OE. Glosses, moreover, *ballista* is several times glossed by *stæf-lidere* OE. Gl. 3442<sup>3442</sup>, Hpt. Gl. 423<sup>26</sup>, and Ep. 1<sup>36</sup>, so that it may be concluded that the *stæf-lidere* was an instrument for hurling stones with considerable more force than the simple sling.<sup>4</sup>

The projectiles used, OE. *gescot*, have been discovered in several places in Europe<sup>5</sup>, and were either stones, *lapides missiles*, or leaden balls, which were carried by the slinger in a hanging pocket. Leaden projectiles with Etruscan, Greek, and Roman inscriptions have been found, the Roman ones bearing usually the mark of the legion upon them. The Romans first employed slings in the Punic Wars cf. Jähns.<sup>6</sup> That small darts were sometimes shot appears also from the report of Treball (Claud. c. VIII), that the German battle field was found covered with small

---

<sup>1</sup> S. Jähns, Trutzw., Taf. XI, fig. 7 for cut.

<sup>2</sup> Ep. r. Mil. III, 14.

<sup>3</sup> S. San Marte, Waffenkunde, p. 275.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. Lind., fig. 45, for the representation of such a sling from the Chron. of Matth. Paris.

<sup>5</sup> Collec. in Mu. at Vienna. — Jähns, Trutzw., Taf. XI.

<sup>6</sup> Taf. XI, fig. 6, for a Roman slinger.

lances after the battle, as also the use of the word *pila*: *gesceot* WW. 143<sup>10</sup>, *pila* having reference to something pointed, a stick with pointed head. Egg-shaped stones are also to be seen in the Museum at Mainz.<sup>1</sup>

### The War club.

Whether the War club was in use among the Anglo-Saxons or not rests upon the authority of two Aelfrc. glosses WW. 140<sup>se</sup>, 143<sup>10</sup>, no mention occurring elsewhere, nor are any pictorial representations of the same at hand earlier than the 11<sup>th</sup> cent. The real solution of the matter depends then on the interpretation of the Lat. words *cautegia*, *clava*, *tentona*, which have been variously described by writers of the period. Thus Isid.<sup>2</sup> writes of the *clava* as follows — *Clava est, qualis fuit Herculis, dicta, quod sit Clavis ferreis in vicem religata, et est cubito semis facta in longitudine.* Cf. the *cateia* — *Haec est cateia quam Horatius cajam dicit . . . est enim genus gallici teli ex materia quam maxime lenta, quae jacta quidem non longe propter gravitatem evolat; sed quo pervenit, vi nimia perfringit.* Further *Hujus meminit Virgilius*<sup>3</sup>, dicens: *Teutonico ritu soliti torquere catejas. Unde et eos Hispani et Galli teutonos vocant.*

Important is the remark concerning the skill in throwing *Quod si ab artifice mittatur, rursus venit ad eum qui misit*, which recalls the bomerang of the Australians. Compare also Ammian Marc.<sup>4</sup>, who reports that

<sup>1</sup> For the use of slings at the battle of Hastings compare the passage quoted from the *Gesta Gulielmi Ducis Norm.* at p. 61.

<sup>2</sup> Orig. XVIII, 7.

<sup>3</sup> Aen. VII, 740.

<sup>4</sup> XXI, 7.

the *barbari* (Goths) *ingentes clavas in nostros conjicentes ambustas*, destroyed the left wing of the Roman army with such clubs. The above mentioned glosses read as follows: — Cautegia. i. telum: *gesceot* WW. 140<sup>36</sup>; clava, vel cateia, vel teutona: *anes cynes gesceot* WW. 143<sup>10</sup>, which in the light of the above passages point at least to the *anes cynes gesceot* as being some sort of a war club for hurling at the enemy. In this connection cf. the hammer of Thor Mjolner, which always returned to his hand after being thrown.

The *clava* may have been among the Anglo-Saxons, and certainly was among the Franks, a strong heavy wooden club with a decorated handle of gold or silver.<sup>1</sup> Cf. also the reproduction of the Bayeux tapestry for the representation of such a club in the hand of Bishop Odo, brother of Wm. the Conqueror, and for further use especially in MHG. poetry s. San Marte.<sup>2</sup>

### War-machines.

War-machines among the Anglo-Saxons are, as in the case of the war club, largely a matter of conjecture, no A.-S. term for, such being preserved except the single word *ram*, for, in the description of the storming of a town in king Alfred's translation of Orosius<sup>3</sup>, the Lat. word *ballista*

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Monach, San Gallensis I, 34.

<sup>2</sup> Waffenkunde, 196 ff.

<sup>3</sup> *þa gegaderade Regulus ealle þa scyttan þe on þam farelde wæron, þe hy mon mid flanum ofercome, ac þonne hy mon sloh oððe scead. Þonne glað hit on þam scillum swylche hit were smiðe iren. Þa het he mid þam palistar mid þam hy weallas bræcan. Þonne hy on fæstenne fuhton þæt hire mon mid þam þwirer onwurpe.* Or. 4, 6, p. 399.

is simply turned into *palistar*, which would lead naturally to the conclusion that an Anglo-Saxon word for the same was lacking. The basis for the conjecture that such existed is the Lat. word *phalarica*, which occurs in the Hpt. Gl. (425<sup>18</sup>), and has usually the meaning of an arrow, or burning arrow shot from a machine. Cf. Gloss. San germ., No. 501 *falarica, genus arcae grandis aut genus teli.* Gloss. of MS. R. (Hpt. Gl.) *falarica, lancea magna, telum mulieris.* Greg. of Tours<sup>1</sup> gives the meaning of lance, while Isid. Orig.<sup>2</sup> describes falarica as fallows: *falarica est telum ingens, torno factum, habens ferrum cubitale et rotunditatem de plumbō in modum sphaerae in ipsa summittate. Dicitur etiam et ignem habere affixum. Hoc autem telo pugnatur de turribus, quas Phalas dici manifestum est . . . Phalis* (i. e. *turris lignea*) *igitur dicta est Phalarica, sicut a muro muralis.* Later the name of the object hurled was transferred to the machine, which hurled it, the meaning of the same being identical with *mangana*.

The *ram*, the favorite siege machine of the Romans, was used frequently in connection with the *taratrum*, a machine for breaking down walls. There were three different kinds of *ram* in use among the Romans, the first suspended, the second running upon rollers, and the third carried by the men, who worked it, often consisting of a mere wooden beam with a bronze or iron ram's head at one end for battering down the walls of the besieged town. No description of such is to be found in the A.-S. literature, the word *ram* (usually referring to the animal) being found only in the glossaries, a few times

---

<sup>1</sup> IV, 35.

<sup>2</sup> Orig. XVIII, 7.

among lists of war-equipment, but with no further notice, which would enable an idea to be formed as to which of the three methods of working the *ram* was employed by the Anglo-Saxons.

The use of stones in war is also several times mentioned.<sup>1</sup> This does not, however, necessarily imply the use of war-machines, it being possible that the stones were thrown down from the wall, but it suggests nevertheless the possibility of the existence of such machines for hurling stones in sieges among the old English inhabitants of the island.

---

### III. The Weapons of Defence.

#### The Shield.

Taking up in this second division the protective armour, the shield will first be discussed as the oldest weapon of defence, the general introduction of helmet and coat of mail among the Germanic tribes taking place at a considerably later period, and under foreign influence.

Old as is the shield, however, not one of the European names for the same can be traced in the old Indian or Sanscrit, and there is a possibility of its being regarded as an Ureuropean weapon owing to this singular absence of the word in OI., it not once occurring in the Rigveda. Among the Greeks the Homeric shield is described almost without exception as round, while among the Romans six different types existed, the best known of which the

---

<sup>1</sup> Or. 4, 10, p. 416, 428, and obolisci: *Stanes Hpt.-Gl.* 446<sup>29</sup>.

scutum or long shield had the form of a half or third cylinder. This Roman long shield of wooden plates, covered first with linen and above this leather, bound with an iron band around the edge, was used by the heavy infantry, while the lighter round shield or parma, borrowed from the Greeks, was the form chiefly used by the light infantry and cavalry. Later followed the introduction of oval, oblong, and six-sided shields, the form of which perhaps served to distinguish the different divisions of troops. From the Greeks also came the half-moon-shaped shield, the pelta. To the metal shields belonged the clypeus, a small oval brass or bronze shield, while the cetra and ancile were small oval shields covered with leather. This leather covering was of oxenhide, often seven layers thick, over which frequently a metal plate was nailed, and in the middle a richly ornamented knob of metal (the *umbo*), adorned at times with the emblem of the eagle, wolf, or half-moon.

According to Tacitus<sup>1</sup> the shield was well known to the Germanic tribes before the Roman invasion, being either of basket-work or wood, of enormous size, and painted different colors to distinguish the various tribes.<sup>2</sup> Finding these great unwieldy shields too clumsy in their conflicts with the Romans, smaller shields from 3 to 4 ft. long gradually replaced the basket-work affairs, and in the Merovingian period the round or slightly oval shape adopted from the Roman bronze shield, so valuable for its lightness, became the universal form among Franks, Alemannen, and Anglo-Saxons.

---

<sup>1</sup> Annales II, 14, Germ. VI and XLIII.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Caesar, B. G. II, 33, and Hottenroth, Taf. 13, No. 3.

At this period on the Continent as in England the chief material used for these shields was linden-wood, often covered with leather as among the Romans, with a metal bound edge to insure greater strength, together with an iron umbo in the centre, and an iron bar beneath, which served as handle. Scarcely a vestige of wood or leather has been discovered in the grave-finds, which makes all the more valuable the testimony of such writers as Greg. of Tours and Paul. Diac. concerning the material of Frankish shields. According to the former<sup>1</sup> these were of wood, the soldiers of Sigebert having made use of their shields to swim across the Rhone, as did Leo and Attalus in their flight across the Mosel, while Paul. Diac.<sup>2</sup> relates that the army of Childebert dying of hunger, consumed even their clothing and shields, which could refer only to the leather covering of the latter. From the writers such as Sidon. Apol., Agathias, Procop.<sup>3</sup> it may be learned that the shield together with the spear formed part of the equipment of every Frankish warrior.

An examination of the Capitularies quoted at p. 32 further proves that not only the footsoldiers but also the horsemen were provided with shields, while the Lex Rip.<sup>4</sup> assigns a value of 2 solidi to shield and lance together, showing how common a possession they must have been at that time. Furthermore a glance at the laws concerning the punishment for loss of shield shows in what dishonor it was held for a warrior to have lost his shield, the loss

---

<sup>1</sup> IV, 30 and III, 15.

<sup>2</sup> III, 31.

<sup>3</sup> S. p. 19 ff.

<sup>4</sup> *Si quis weregeldum solvere debet scutum et lanceam pro duobus solidis tribuat* — tit. XXXVI, No. 11, ed. Baluze, p. 37.

being at first punished by a fine of 15 sol.<sup>1</sup>, which later fell to 3<sup>2</sup>, as the shield gradually lost its earlier importance as chief weapon of defence through the introduction of protective armour. The Anglo-Saxon laws agree substantially with those of the Franks, as early as the time of Aedelstan a law for the punishment of dishonest wheelwrights occurring<sup>3</sup> and from the laws of Canute<sup>4</sup> it is seen that shield and spear were part of the ordinary equipment of every Anglo-Saxon warrior, even the lesser thanes, and those under the rank of thane, who had no sword to render, being equipped with both spear and shield.

A glance at the wills<sup>5</sup> is sufficient to show that in almost every instance the number of spears and shields bequeathed is double that of the swords, coats of mail, and helms pointing clearly to the rarity of the latter in comparison to the former.

In the Glossaries the Lat. words for shield seem to be used absolutely without reference to the distinction between the various kinds of shields, the Lat. *scutum* *pelta*, *parma*, etc. being glossed indifferently by *scyld*, *bord* etc., so that no conclusion as to the shape of the Anglo-Saxon shield may be drawn from the use of the Latin terms. Two words for shield, nowhere else recorded with this meaning have also been found in the Glossaries, *ðel* translating *pelta*, and *tude*, *tud*: *parma*. The word *lind* is poetic only, found frequently in Beowulf and other poems

<sup>1</sup> Lex. Sal. tit. 33 de conviciis.

<sup>2</sup> Lex. Sal. a Carolo M. emendata, de conviciis 33, No. VI.

<sup>3</sup> *Feorðe: þæt nan scyld wyrhta ne lecge nan scepes fell on scyld;*  
*7 gef he hit do gilde*, XXX scill. Ges. Lieberm., p. 158 [15].

<sup>4</sup> S. pages 33 and 34.

<sup>5</sup> Chart. Th., p. 596, 573, 505, etc.

together with *rand* or *hilde-rand* — more frequent in Beowulf than *scyld* —, and *bord*, *bordwudu*, pointing clearly to the material of which the shield was made. That this was only in very rare instances of metal may be inferred from the passage in B. 2337<sup>1</sup>, where Beowulf orders an iron shield that will withstand the terrible fire of the dragon, this being so unusual that special mention is made of the same. No specimens of metal shields have been found in A.-S. interments, although of rather frequent occurrence in Scandinavia.

The Anglo-Saxon MSS. are rich in the representation of shields, but are absolutely valueless for reconstructive purposes before the 9<sup>th</sup> or 10<sup>th</sup> centuries, the majority of these MSS. being not earlier than the 10<sup>th</sup> century. In Harl. 603 (11<sup>th</sup> century) the Anglo-Saxon warrior is represented armed with angon or spear, and round shield, often colored yellow<sup>2</sup>, the horsemen as well as foot soldiers being so armed.<sup>3</sup> At p. 57, moreover, the sharp-pointed umbo or boss exactly corresponds to some of the Kentish grave-finds, while the ornamentation of the horseman's shield, mentioned above, appears to be along radiating lines diverging from the centre and sloping toward the edge. Exactly the same characteristics are observable in Aelfric's Heptateuch<sup>4</sup>, in the Psalt. Illus. im früheren Mittelalter<sup>5</sup>, and in the illus. from old Irish and A.-S. MSS. by J. O. Westwood — Comment. on Psalms by Cassio

---

<sup>1</sup> *Heht him þa gewyrcean wigendra hleo  
eall-irennē . . . . wigbord wrætlic.*

<sup>2</sup> S. MS. p. 8, 18, 50, 57, etc.

<sup>3</sup> Lind., fig. 222 for representation of horseman from Harl.

<sup>4</sup> Claud. B. IV, p. 22, 25, 26, etc.

<sup>5</sup> Anton Springer, Taf. IX, III, and II.

dorus<sup>1</sup>, from the Utrecht Psalt.<sup>2</sup> (9<sup>th</sup> century), from the Salisbury Psalt.<sup>3</sup> (10<sup>th</sup> century), from the Great Psalt. of Bologna<sup>4</sup> (corresponding closely to Cott. Tib. C. VI, Psalt. of the 10<sup>th</sup> century), and Cott. Psalt. Tiber. C. VI.<sup>5</sup> Cf. further a drawing from the Stuttgart Psalt.<sup>6</sup> with round shield and helmet (about 950), and the representation from the Psycomachia of Prudentius (Paris, Nat.-Lib.) of two warriors wearing Phrygian caps and carrying the A.-S. round shield with sharp-pointed boss.<sup>7</sup> The shields from the Bayeux tapestry prove nothing as to English equipment, being in every case a representation of the pointed long shield of the Normans.

Very far from clear is the history of Anglo-Saxon shield-ornamentation, which is largely a matter of conjecture, the only sources of information being isolated passages in the poems, and reports of other than A.-S. writers concerning the similar shields of the Germans of the Continent, the shields themselves having come down in such a state of preservation, that only the (iron) umbos and handles have remained, and precious stones if used for their decoration have long since perished. Judging from a Celtic shield in the British Museum<sup>8</sup>, of bronze with a slightly oval boss decorated with three pointed oval pieces of coral, and two small studs of the same material near by, from the few Anglo-Saxon bosses of the precious

---

<sup>1</sup> Pl. XVII.

<sup>2</sup> Pl. XXIX.

<sup>3</sup> Pl. XXXV.

<sup>4</sup> Pl. XXXIX.

<sup>5</sup> Pl. XLVI.

<sup>6</sup> Hefner-Alteneck, Pl. L.

<sup>7</sup> Reproduced in Jahns Kriegsatlas, Taf. XXXVII, fig. 6.

<sup>8</sup> S. Hor. Fer., Pl. XIV.

metals discovered in the grave-finds, and from the descriptions of MHG. poetry, it may be surmised that the principal decoration of the Anglo-Saxon shield was the button upon the shield boss, and the nails used to fasten this boss to the shield. The *rand-beag* may also, in exceptional cases, have been of gold or other metal set with stones, although there is no direct proof from the grave-finds, and the few passages from the poets regarding shield-ornamentation do not specify the mode of decoration. The *geolo-rand* of B. 438 may be taken as a reference to a golden band encircling the shield rather than to the yellow color of the linden-wood, the usual interpretation of the expression, while the *þryð-bord stenan* (El. 151) is an exactly parallel case to the *Stain-bord* of the Hildebrands Lied, which may have reference to a shield with both rim and boss adorned with precious stones of some description. Furthermore the *fætte scyldas* of B. (333) undoubtedly point to golden ornamentation, while *bord beorht* (B. 231), and *bord-wudu beorhtan* (B. 1243) refer either to a shield glittering with gems, or what is much more likely to a decoration of some sort with gold and silver, probably boss and shield-rand. In this connection cf. Or. (6, 25<sup>492</sup>), who mentions *anne gyldenne scyld*. That the decoration was also at times in lines diverging from the centre is clear from the shield of the horsemen from the Harl. MS., perhaps painted, perhaps adorned with metal discs resembling those found in the interments at Great Driffield (s. p. 78). For richly adorned Frankish shields cf. the description of Sid. Apoll.<sup>1</sup> of the snow, white round shields

---

<sup>1</sup> *Clypeis laevam partem adumbrantibus, quorum lux in orbibus nivea, fulva in umbonibus, ita censem prodebat et studium.*  
Epist. XX.

with gold bosses of certain Frankish or Gothic youths in the triumphal procession of Sigismer, and the gold shield presented to Charlemagne by the Pope, and deposited with him in the grave. From a much later period cf. the shield of Brunhilde<sup>1</sup> of *alrōtem gold einen schildes-rant mit stālhertem spangen michel unde breit*, and vers. 37 *man sach ouch dā zebrochen vil manege buckel starc, vil der edelen steine gefellet üf daz gras.*

The supposition is not unlikely that the German tribes, after the fashion of the Greeks and Romans, may have adorned their shields at this early period with devices such as the eagle, wolf, or boar<sup>2</sup>: cf. Wand. 98, where a shield wall adorned with dragons, the war emblem of the West-Saxons, would do away with the difficulty of the passage, not a single direct proof, however, can be adduced to support the theory, the sole instance of a shield (other than Roman), from this period in England, bearing such an emblem is the bronze shield (mentioned at p. 72) upon which the figure of a boar was nailed, and which is unmistakably of Celtic origin. The bearing of family crests upon the shield arose certainly not before the 12<sup>th</sup> century.<sup>3</sup>

From the grave-finds together with the MSS. has it been possible to reconstruct the Anglo-Saxon shield with a considerable degree of certainty, although wood and leather have completely disappeared, the iron boss and handle, together with a few nails alone remaining. As already stated in connection with the MSS. the usual shield

<sup>1</sup> Nib. B. 414.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Tac. (Germ. 43) for the various colored shields distinguishing the different tribes.

<sup>3</sup> For a full discussion of which and the later development in the age of Chivalry s. San Marte, Waffenkunde, p. 103.

was round, made of linden-wood, covered with oxhide<sup>1</sup>, and about 18 inches in diameter, being not longer than the length of the extended arm. In the centre was a large hollow iron boss, back of which the wood was cut away to make room for the hand between the boss and the iron handle, which extended across the hollow of the boss. The buttons, which were fastened to the boss at its apex, were sometimes tinned or plated with silver and gold, as were also the nails used to fasten this to the wood of the shield, which was additionally strengthened by a metal band extending around the edge.<sup>2</sup> In the graves the position of the shield boss varied greatly, being found on the breast, on the right arm, upon the knees, and beneath the head.

These umbos or bosses vary considerably in form, the four divisions, however, given by Lindenschmidt<sup>3</sup> form the ground types to which most of the others conform, subject to more or less variation. The first three only are found in Saxon graves, No. 173 being the most frequent in Anglo-Saxon interments. Fig. 175, distinguished by its conical shape (a height of 4 inches being sometimes attained), and extremely narrow rim, is much more unusual, though found in great numbers in Kentish graves, while the fourth type No. 176 is found only in West-Frankish and Burgundian interments. For a very similar

---

<sup>1</sup> S. p. 70, note 3.

<sup>2</sup> S. Hewitt, *Arms and Armour*, Pl. XIX, XX; Cochet, *La Norm. Sout.*, Pl. VIII; Wylie, *Fairford Graves*, Pl. X, figs. 3 and 5; Smith, *Coll. Antiq.* II, Pl. 36, figs. 5, 6, 8, Vol. III, Pl. II, 1—7; Lindenschmidt, A. M. Z. 173—181; Douglas, *Nen. Brit.*, p. 113; Kemble, *Hor. Fer.*, Pl. XXVII.

<sup>3</sup> Merov. *Altert.*, figs. 173—176.

umbo to the Kentish ones cf. Mestorf.<sup>1</sup> The umbo, usually of iron and not exceeding six inches in diameter, was made fast to the shield by means of 4 or 5 rivets driven through the rim into the wood beneath. Such an umbo with the rivets still in place was found at Gilton, the 3 iron rivets, with flat round heads nearly 2 inches broad, having part of the wood of the shield still adhering to them, which from the length of the rivets appeared to have been half an inch thick. A round hollow iron cylinder an inch and a half in diameter and about 5 inches long was found beneath, bound with some string not unlike our pack thread, which has been identified as the handle. The use of these iron bars, always found with the umbos, was for a long time uncertain, until the discovery of a skeleton at Brighthampton, whose left hand was found encircling such an iron cross piece within an umbo, removed all further doubt as to their purpose.<sup>2</sup> For a very unusual specimen with a hide covering over the umbo as well as the shield proper s. Arch. Jour.<sup>3</sup> Also for an enormous hemispherical umbo seven inches across from Kingston Down s. Invent. Sepul.<sup>4</sup>

Once only have remains been recovered by Goddard Johnson<sup>5</sup>, enough of which remained to show the form of the shield to have been circular, with laths of wood converging from the extremity to the umbo. These laths were fastened to the body of the shield, probably of wood,

---

<sup>1</sup> Die vaterl. Altert. Schles.-Holst., fig. 709.

<sup>2</sup> Arch. XXXVII, p. 391, and for handle s. Sax. Obseq., Pl. XXXVIII, and Lindenschmidt, Merov. Altert, figs. 177—181.

<sup>3</sup> XI, p. 98.

<sup>4</sup> Pl. XV, fig. 19.

<sup>5</sup> Collec. Antiq., Vol. II, p. 237.

with twine or pack thread so well preserved that it could be unwound to the extent of a yard or more. The sketch of the shield remarkably resembles that carried by the horseman in the Harl. MSS.<sup>1</sup>, with lines radiating in the same manner from the centre. An interesting find in a grave mound by Gokstad in southern Norway of an entire ship decorated with 32 shields on each side shows the Viking shield also to have been round.<sup>2</sup> This ship of the dead hung with shields recalls the funeral pyre of Beowulf (3139) *helnum behongan, hilde-bordum beorktum byrnum, swa he bena wæs*, a survival of which heathen custom may perhaps be traced in the custom of hanging the shield of the dead warrior in the church, which arose in the Middle Ages under christian influence.

The ornamented umbos are rare, but such bosses plated with silver, together with the nails remaining in the broad rim, have been found at L. Wilbraham, while from Ash comes a fine specimen exceeding six inches in diameter, ornamented at the top with a thin plate of silver on a ground of mixed metal, composed of copper and calamine, riveted to the iron point. Five studs of the same metal around the rim are thinly plated with silver. This umbo has a concavity continuing to a point, and does not exceed  $\frac{1}{10}$  of an inch in thickness. In the British Museum is an umbo with an enormous silver button, together with a very beautifully chased button of the finest workmanship, excavated at Barrington, Cambridgeshire<sup>3</sup>, of gilded bronze attached to the umbo by three nails. The workmanship of this button recalls the finely chased

---

<sup>1</sup> Lind., fig. 226.

<sup>2</sup> Montelius, fig. 168.

<sup>3</sup> De Baye, p. 85.

fibulae of the Anglo-Saxons, for on the bronze can be traced the head of a swan, and in the neighbouring compartment lies what may possibly be the letter S.

A most unusual find at Great Driffeld, Kent<sup>1</sup> was of an umbo not unusual in itself, but found together with 3 iron discs to be placed on the shield to strengthen it. This is a very rare find, such discs not having been discovered at all on the Continent, and only at one other place in England.

The best preserved specimen of a rim is that from the shield found in the Torsberger Moor. The wood is practically intact, and the boss and *randbēag* of bronze are partially preserved.<sup>2</sup> Although few traces of this rim have been found in Anglo-Saxon and Frankish graves, that most of the shields were so strengthened may be inferred from the frequent use of the word *rand* for shield, and the phrase from Gn. Ex. (94) *scyld (sceal) gebunden leoht lindenbord*.

In battle the shield was carried at arm's length, the bearer thereby breaking the force of the weapon hurled against him, even if it penetrated or broke the shield (cf. *clypeos rotare* of Sid. Apoll., Panegyr., Major.). Furthermore in case of need the umbo was used as a kind of defensive or striking weapon against the head and breast of the opponent. When not in use the shield was probably slung at the back by a strap over the shoulder, a conclusion drawn from the figure from the Harl. MS.<sup>3</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Pag. Sax., Pl. IX.

<sup>2</sup> S. Mestorf, Vaterland. Altert., Taf. 45, fig. 513, and Taf. 44, fig. 545.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Arch. XIX, p. 77.

The number of shield umbos found in the various interments varies greatly being poorest in W.-France, where from the great cemetaries of Londonières and Envermeu from 860 graves only 4 umbos were recovered, while from the Anglo-Saxon gravefields of Gilton, Kingston Town, and Sibertswold from 532 graves 58 such bosses were unearthed, 18 being found at Gilton alone. In Germany also the proportion varies, from Fridolfing only 8 to 10 being found while at Nordendorf from 500 graves 40 such were brought to light.

#### The Helmet.

The basis for this and the following sketch of the coat of mail is the Leipziger Diss. of Hans Lehmann, *Brünne und Helm im Angelsächsischen Beowulfliede*, which deals with the main points in question. Certain matters of detail have been altered perhaps in a few instances investigation of the original MSS., however, in the British Museum and a comparison with other Anglo-Saxon poems and Glossaries have led, practically to the same results as those stated in the above mentioned Diss.

Previous to the Carolingian period it appears to be almost an impossible task to ascertain with any degree of certainty the appearance of the Anglo-Saxon helm. It may, however, be stated unqualifiedly that, like the byrnies, its origin was not Germanic<sup>1</sup>, *non loricam Germano non galeam*, and *paucis loricae, vix uni alterive cassis aut galeae*, but was of foreign origin, and it was long before the freedom loving barbarians hampered their movements by encasing their limbs in steel, or covered their heads with metal.

---

<sup>1</sup> Tac. Ann. II, 14, and Germ. VI.

As with the coat of mail so with the helmet, the chief sources of information for this early period are the laws dealing with the *heriot* etc., and a few notices from contemporaneous Continental historians.

In the Salic law the helm is not even mentioned, but in the Ripuarian a worth of 6 sol is set upon it against 12 for the coat of mail.<sup>1</sup> From the year 813 Cap. IX<sup>2</sup>, concerning the arming of troops, demands that the upper classes shall come armed with *loricas* and *galeas* beside the usual equipment. Ine's Law 54<sup>3</sup> towards the end of the 7<sup>th</sup> century reads as follows: *gif him mon gilt, ponne mot he gesellan on para hyndenna gehwelcere monnan and byrnan and sveord on þæt wer-gild, gif he byrfe*, omitting the helm, which is not mentioned until the beginning of the 10<sup>th</sup> century in Anhang VII 2<sup>10</sup>. In the laws of Canute<sup>4</sup>, the Earl had 4 helmets to pay, likewise the king's thane, but the middle thane had neither helm nor coat of mail to render, showing that they were costly, and exclusively the possession of people of rank. The helmet is several times mentioned in wills together with the sword and byrnies<sup>5</sup>, in the will of Archbishop Aelfric (1006) the very unusual number of 60 helms and 60 coats of mail being bequeathed by him to his royal lord together with his best ship. Greg. of Tours<sup>6</sup> mentions the *lorica* and *galea* as worn by the Frankish warriors under

---

<sup>1</sup> Bruniam bonam pro 12 Sol. tribuat, helnum cum directo pro 6 sol. tribuat. Tit. 36, XI, ed. Baluze, p. 37.

<sup>2</sup> Capit. of Charl., ed. Baluze 508.

<sup>3</sup> Ges. Lieberm., p. 114 [54].

<sup>4</sup> S. p. 33.

<sup>5</sup> Chart. Th. 556, 549, 572, etc.

<sup>6</sup> X, 3.

Childebert in 590, and in another chapter<sup>1</sup> assigns the helm to the regular equipment of Frankish nobles.<sup>2</sup>

Another source of information is the description of Anuerin, a Gaelic bard, who as eyewitness of the battle against the Saxons at Cattrae wrote the following: *300 warriors in gilded armour, three armour clad troops with three leaders, who wore golden necklaces. Armed were they with knives in white sheaths: they wore four-cornered helmets. Some had spears and shields, the latter from cleft wood. Their leader carried a rounded shield: he was equipped with scale armour, carried a death-dealing spear, and wore the skin of a wild beast.* These 300 warriors are to be regarded as picked troops, which fact, combined with the laws of England and the Continent, leads to the conclusion that in the 8<sup>th</sup> century, the helm was worn only by the highest class of warriors, even as late as the beginning of the 10<sup>th</sup> century it belonged still to the comparatively rare and costly equipment, and only in the 11<sup>th</sup> did it begin to be more general.

The seal rings of Alaric and Childeric represent the warriors with body armour, but without helmets<sup>3</sup>, also the metal figure found in the tomb of Queen Thyra<sup>4</sup>, while on the Xantener and Kranenburger<sup>5</sup>, as well as on the English ivory casket of the 8<sup>th</sup> century, figures both with and without helmets are represented. On the other hand the French miniatures of the Carolingian period together with the Ashburnham Pentateuch point to the almost

<sup>1</sup> IV, 42; V, 23.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. further Paulus Diac. V, 40, and V, 23.

<sup>3</sup> Lind., Merov. Altert., figs. 201, 202.

<sup>4</sup> Weiß, Kostümkunde, fig. 199.

<sup>5</sup> Lind., Merov. Altert., figs. 203, 204.

universal use of helmets for warriors of rank. The great difficulty, however, is the genuineness of the representation i. e. whether they represent the helmets really worn by the people in question, or whether they are only conventional or barbaric representations of Roman originals as is the case with the whole of the defensive armour in general. In the Codex Aureus the warriors are armed with spear and helmet or some kind of head protection, while their leader Saul appears in a four-cornered helmet<sup>1</sup> resembling that of one of the body guards of Charles le Chauve, minus the crest<sup>2</sup>, which is in all probability the four-cornered helmet of the Franks.<sup>3</sup> In the Utrecht Psalter (written in England or by A.-S. monks) are seen everywhere round shield and spear, but the helm seems to point to a leader or warrior of wealth as the rank and file are not so represented.<sup>4</sup> In Harl. 603 at p. 13 is the first appearance in this MS. of a four-cornered helm with crest, which bears a strong resemblance to that of the bodyguard of Charles le Chauve. At 57 appears another warrior so equipped, and in Aelfric's Heptateuch<sup>5</sup> similar figures.

Much more frequent is the head covering known as the Phrygian cap. In the French Codices its occurrence is not frequent, but it is seen in the Utrecht Psalter<sup>6</sup>,

---

<sup>1</sup> Rahn, Taf. IX.

<sup>2</sup> Weiß, Kostümkunde, fig. 266.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. description of Anuerin above.

<sup>4</sup> Springer, Taf. IV, and cf. further Essenwein, Culturhist. Atlas II, Taf. XVII, fig. 8 (from a Prudentius MS. in the nat. lib. Paris), and Hefner-Altenbeck, Taf. 32, fig. D. From a parchment illumination in the Brussels library.

<sup>5</sup> Claud. IV, B. pages 104, 153, 154, etc.

<sup>6</sup> Rahn, Taf. IV.

in the Stuttgart<sup>1</sup>, and Salisbury Psalter<sup>2</sup> (10<sup>th</sup> century), where it is worn by four of the figures, apparently without other warlike equipment being here perhaps merely a leather cap. Such a helmet or cap is worn by Goliath in the Great. Psalt. of Bologna<sup>3</sup>, and the horseman, mentioned at p. 77 from the Harl. MS., is provided with the same kind of cap or helmet.<sup>4</sup> In the MS. of the Psycomachia of Prudentius (10<sup>th</sup> century) a warrior appears with the usual round shield, spear, and this same cap or helmet.<sup>5</sup> — Judging from its use by other than warriors it may be suspected that this cap though represented in many MSS. with the color of metal is, nevertheless, only a strong leather cap, perhaps strengthened with metal, worn by many of the Anglo-Saxon men, and, when colored, represents only the delight in color of the artist not that the caps themselves were of metal.

Toward the 10<sup>th</sup> century are discovered in some of the MSS. the representation of simple conical metal helmets one of which is seen on the head of a figure from the ivory casket from Xanten<sup>6</sup>, likewise from the Salisbury Psalt.<sup>7</sup>, from Harl. 603 p. 68, and from the Stuttgart Psalt.<sup>8</sup> the figure of an archer with exactly the same kind of helmet as that on the Xantener casket. The art of the Carolingian period was, however, so strongly in-

<sup>1</sup> Hefner-Alteneck, Taf. XXIV, fig. A.

<sup>2</sup> Westwood, Pl. 35.

<sup>3</sup> Westwood, Pl. 38.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. further p. 15 of the same MS., and pages 22 and 25 of the Aelfric MS., where such caps are again represented.

<sup>5</sup> S. Jähns Kriegsatlas, Taf. 37, fig. 7.

<sup>6</sup> Lind., Merov. Altert., fig. 193.

<sup>7</sup> Westwood, Pl. 35.

<sup>8</sup> Weiß, Kostümkunde, fig. 268.

fluenced by the Roman-Byzantine art that conclusions from the representations of the MSS. alone, without further verification from grave-finds, chronicles, Anglo-Saxon poems, etc., cannot be relied upon.

Turning now to the grave-finds it is but natural to expect that, since helmets were at least everywhere known, and to a certain extent worn by the German tribes both of the Continent and in England at the time of the Carolingians, at least some trace of such should be found in the graves of an earlier period than that of the Merovingian epoch, and in England, in some few instances, such remains have been brought to light. In the Frankish graves of the Continent, however, not a single authentic example has been found (all those unearthed being of foreign manufacture), and only in England and from a later period in Scandinavia are certain proofs at hand. For a specimen of the conical helm corresponding in all respects to that of the helm represented on the Xantener Casket cf. Smith<sup>1</sup> for a reproduction of what appears to be the framework of a helmet dug up at Leckhampton Hill near the skull of a skeleton. The metal is thin-bronze, and the question as to Saxon manufacture immediately arises. As iron was used exclusively by the Saxons in the manufacture of their arms, the bronze would seem to speak rather for Roman or Celtic origin, but with the scarcity of specimens at hand, two from all England, it is impossible to speak with certainty. Setting aside, however, the question of origin, it proves the ancient use of helmets by Anglo-Saxon warriors, and the later development of the same in the 10<sup>th</sup> and 11<sup>th</sup> centuries

---

<sup>1</sup> Coll. Antiq. II, 36 or Ten Years' Diggings by Bateman.

may be traced from such a form as this. The helmet is formed of a frame work of crossed metal bands of bronze united and held at the top by a button, and underneath by a circular head band to which, it is stated, was attached a complete chin chain, which was destroyed in the process of excavation.

The second specimen<sup>1</sup> discovered by Bateman at Bently Grange is so rare, so unusual, and of such value for corroborating certain passages in Beowulf that a full description is thought not out of place. Bateman<sup>2</sup> describes the discovery as follows: *The helmet consists of a skeleton formed of iron bands, radiating from the crown of the head, and riveted to a circle of the same metal which encompassed the brow: from the impression on the metal it is evident that the outside was covered with plates of horn disposed diagonally so as to produce a herring bone pattern, the ends of these plates were secured beneath with strips of horn corresponding to the iron frame work and attached to it by ornamental rivets of silver at intervals of about an inch and a half from each other; on the bottom of the front rib, which projects so as to form a nasal, is a small silver cross slightly ornamented round the edges by a beaded moulding, and on the crown of the helmet is an elliptical bronze plate supporting the figure of an animal carved in iron, with bronze eyes, now much corroded but perfectly distinct as the presentation of a wild boar. Also many fragments, some more or less ornamented with silver, which have been riveted to the helmet in some manner not now understood. There are also some small buckles of iron which probably served to fasten it*

---

<sup>1</sup> Lind., Merov. Altert., fig. 195.

<sup>2</sup> Ten Years' Diggings, p. 31.

*upon the head.* This is the famous Eber-helm, the framework of which was probably covered at one time with horn, felt, or leather, most likely the latter and well known to the OE. Epic poems. Comparing this helmet with the following passages from Beowulf, an idea of the frequent mention of the Anglo-Saxon Eber-helm may be obtained: — thus from

B. 1111      *swin eal-gylden, eofer iren-heard;*

303—305 *Eofor-lic scionon:*

*ofer hleor-ber(g)an gehroden golde;*

*fah and fyr-heard ferh-wearde heold;*

1286 *swin ofer helme;*

El. 76      *eofor cumble beþeaht;*

El. 259      *grim helm manig, ænlic eofor cumbul;*

B. 2152      *Het þa in beran eafor heafod-segn, heaðo-  
steapne helm<sup>1</sup> . . .*

For a similar helm, from the Viking period in Scandinavia, from a figure on four bronze plates found in a stone mound by Bjørnhofde at Öland cf. Montelius<sup>2</sup>, and the name *Hildiswin* applied to a helmet in the Snorre Edda<sup>3</sup>, where after the death of the leader Adil occurs the following line: *þá tók Aðils konungr af honum dauðum hjálminn Hildisvin ok hest hans Hrafn.*

The framework of the English helmet, though differing from the later ones formed of one piece of metal, or as in Scandinavia of several metal plates welded together, forms a most interesting link between the leather helmet of the earliest period, and the entire metal helm of the

<sup>1</sup> For the OHG. *epurhelm*, *eparhelm* s. Grimm, Myth. 195.

<sup>2</sup> Fig. 144.

<sup>3</sup> Ed. Jónsson, Skaldskaparmál, p. 108.

following, in this instance the spaces between the iron ribs being probably filled in with horn or leather, which later gave way to metal plates. This fragment shows plainly also that the connection of the boar with Freyr, the sword-god, had been forgotten in England, and was used only as a protective talisman, otherwise the christian emblem of the cross would not have occurred side by side with the heathen symbol of the Norse god of the sword.

A third specimen showing a still greater advance in the evolution of the helmet is the metal helmet with brass ribs, and iron plates, which at one time belonged to the Rhine Collec. of antiquities.<sup>1</sup> The origin and place of finding of this helmet is unknown, and owing to the fact of its being one of but three extant specimens of this class, it is impossible to identify it with certainty. Its similarity to the above mentioned helmets, and its likeness to the art of metal working of the Merovingian period allows it, however, to be assigned with a fair degree of probability to this period. The helmet is formed of six bronze ribs between which are fastened flat plates of strong iron, the ribs run together forming a point at the top, and are closed with a round plate, the button of which has been broken off. The iron plates are held fast by strong bronze nails, and the six ribs are held fast at the bottom by a strong band of iron, covered with a highly ornamented border of bronze, upon which are engraved the figures of two animals. Cf. B. 1448—1455.

*se hwita helm hafelan werede . . . . .*

*. . . . since geweordad,*

---

<sup>1</sup> Lind., Merov. Altert., fig. 197.

*befongen frea-wrasnum, swa hine fyrn-dagum worhte wæpna smið, wundrum teode, besette swin-licum, þæt hine syððan no brond ne beado-mecas bitan nemeahton,* which description tallies with the helm in question. The *frea-wrasn* is the diadem worn only by kings and princes, and may perhaps apply to the engraved rim of some such massive helmet as the above. That the helm is unusual may be seen by comparison with the English specimens, which are of much lighter construction. The verb *besettan* may point to the fact that the boar was engraved upon the metal rim as in the case of the above mentioned helm. On the other hand it may also be taken to mean a boar made from other metal and nailed to the rim of the helmet as in the case of the Celtic shield.<sup>1</sup> With this furthermore cf. the bronze helm from a figure of Wodan von Ultima and Vendel covered likewise with iron plates, and dating from the late Iron Age.<sup>2</sup>

Of the ornamentation of the helmets, apart from the figure of the boar, the only source of information is contained in the Anglo-Saxon poems, and in the wills and records. That the helmets of kings and princes were of precious metal is certain from such expressions as *gold fah* (B. 2811), *gylden grima* (El. 125), *se hearda helm hyrsted golde fætum befeallen* (B. 2255), *scire helmas* (Jud. 193), the *brun fagne helm* (B. 2615), and *brune helmas* (Jud. 318) being perhaps of ordinary metal, but the preceding refer undoubtedly to gold or gilded helmets. A reference is made from a much later period to gilt helmets by Wm.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. p. 72.

<sup>2</sup> Montelius, fig. 137.

of Malmesbury<sup>1</sup> where he mentions Godwin's gift to Hardi-Canute of a ship having on board eighty soldiers with gilt helmets. Cf. further

B. 1030 — *ymb þas helmes hrof heafod-beorge wirum  
bewunden wala (walan) utan heold,*

*þat him fela lafe frecne ne-meahton scur  
heard sceðdan*, where an arrangement of

spirals, coils, etc. as on the fibulae are perhaps to be thought of, although exactly how this wire was arranged has not been ascertained.<sup>2</sup> An interesting comparison from the MHG. poetry may here be made from Wigalois 5556: where *sin helm* was *von gesteine und von golde geworchet*, or from Eneit 8749: *Camilles helm vil schöne was,  
Luterbrun also ein glas, gezieret wol mit steinen*, which seems to have been common among the highest class of warriors at this period. The words *puf*, *cræsta* (?), and *camb* point, moreover, to some sort of ornamentation at the top of the helmet probably a tuft of feathers or of horse hair, to which may be compared the following from Ulrich v. Lichtenstein: *Dar umb von federn was ein Kranz* 170,25; and *Ein rasch von pfans vedern guot fuort af dem helm der hochgemuoht* to which is added *Din rüsch was wol ellen hoch Gebunden af dem helm sin Mit einer rtsin guot sidin* 259, 27.

The helmets of less skillful workmanship were often damaged in fight: *helm oft gescær* B. 1526; *guð-helm toglad* B. 2487, and the servants after every battle must repair

<sup>1</sup> Bk. III.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. the singular head piece from Ascheraden in Livonia (Bähr, Gräber der Lievin, Taf. V, No. 1), formed of spirals of bronze wire, passed on a cord, and with a small bell forming the termination at the top.

these damages: *feormynd swefad þa-pe beado-griman by-wan sceoldon* B. 2257, and keep rust away; otherwise the helmet became *eald and omig* B. 2763.

The origin of the ribbed helmet is to be traced back to the early Germanic period, the first appearance of such a form being that worn by a German body guard in the Roman service on the Trajan Column<sup>1</sup>, consisting of two ribs bent at right angles to each other above a band for the head, the spaces between are not yet filled in, but important for the archeologist is the metal or leather band, which passes under the chin, and serves to hold the helmet in place. The sculptures from the Xantener and Kranenberger caskets<sup>2</sup>, and from an Italian casket<sup>3</sup> belonging to the 9<sup>th</sup> and 10<sup>th</sup> centuries show still greater similarity to the frame work of the grave-finds, even to the button at the top. From the miniatures of the 9<sup>th</sup> and 10<sup>th</sup> centuries this form appears principally in the Stuttgart Psalt.<sup>4</sup>, worn also by two cavalry men.<sup>5</sup> Although these helmets are painted blue it is not necessary to conclude that the spaces between the ribs are filled with metal, in comparison with the Phrygian caps<sup>6</sup> showing that they also are painted the same color. In regard to form the Eber-helm, the one represented on the Trajan column, and those of the Psalter are half spherical, while the sculpture and the third helm described on p. 87 more nearly approach the conical, the latter becoming the more frequent in the

---

<sup>1</sup> S. Stacke, Deutsche Gesch. I, 115.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. p. 83, note 6.

<sup>3</sup> Essenwein, Kulturhist. Atlas, Taf. XIX, fig. 2.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. Archer mentioned at p. 83, note 8.

<sup>5</sup> Hefner-Altenbeck, Taf. XXVI, fig. C. and A.

<sup>6</sup> S. p. 82.

10<sup>th</sup> century.<sup>1</sup> This helm composed of several pieces set together in contrast to the one piece helmets of Greeks, Romans, and Etruscans lasted up until the 12<sup>th</sup> century. Heavy metal helmets have been found, one from Beitsch, and another from Selsdorf being found in Hor. Fer.<sup>2</sup> No trace, however, of the four-cornered helmet has anywhere been discovered outside of the MSS.

The long pointed helm composed of one piece of metal is found in the Copenhagen Museum<sup>3</sup>, showing great similarity with certain East Slavic helms<sup>4</sup>, which Lehmann believes to be the home of this helm, reaching England through the medium of commercial intercourse between the north Germanic peoples and the Slavs. The *heavo-steap helm* (B. 1245, 2153) perhaps refers to some such head-covering. The very heavy helms appear, in the representations, at least later than the ribbed forms. Those of conical shaped being found in the MSS. from the 11<sup>th</sup> cent. on, and are the prevailing type up until the middle of the 12<sup>th</sup>.<sup>5</sup>

No representations of cheek protectors occur in the minatures or sculptures of this period, appearing first in the 11<sup>th</sup> and 12<sup>th</sup> centuries although even then very seldom seen.<sup>6</sup> Two rings found attached to the bronze

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Westwood, Pl. XXXV; Bayeux Tapestry; and seal of Gui de Laval reproduced in Demay, *le Costume au moyen-âge d'après les sceaux*, p. 111.

<sup>2</sup> Pl. XII, figs. 6 and 7.

<sup>3</sup> Essenwein, *Culturhist. Atlas*, Taf. XX.

<sup>4</sup> Weiß, *Kostümkunde*, fig. 80.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. the one in Ambraser Collec. Wien, Hefner-Alteneck, Taf. 99 — and the so-called helmet of little Wenzel in Prague, Essenwein, *Kulturhist. Atlas*.

<sup>6</sup> Cf. Essenwein, *Culturhist. Atlas*, Taf. XXV, fig. 4.

ribbed helmet may have served for some such purpose of attachment. That they were known at an earlier period than the above representation is, however, certain from the *hleor-beran* or *hleor-beorg* of Beowulf (303) and Gen. (444) where a reference to such a protection is as follows: *hæled helm on heafod asetie and þone full hearde geband.* For reference to a chin protector cf. Ex. 175.

The nasal or nose protector was known to the Anglo-Saxons at an early period, as is proven by the nose piece bearing the cross on the Eber-helm, but whether extensively used or not before the 10<sup>th</sup> century is doubtful as there is no proof either for or against, unless the passage in the Lex Rip.<sup>1</sup> *cum directo* be taken to refer to such a nose piece. San Marte<sup>2</sup> translates the Lat. with *gerade aus*, and understands under *directum* 'the nose protector, that which projects forward and protects the nose'. In the MHG. period this was often richly adorned with precious stones.<sup>3</sup> From the 10<sup>th</sup> cent. on the nasal is often found on miniatures and on seals, occurs also once in the 8<sup>th</sup> century on an English ivory casket<sup>4</sup>, and was not replaced by the visor until towards the end of the 12<sup>th</sup> century.<sup>5</sup>

The words *grima*, *grimma*, and *grim-helm* found in Beowulf, Elene, and other Anglo-Saxon poems have led to much confusion, owing to the false interpretation of the word as visor. In Icelandic the word means 'a mask,

<sup>1</sup> S. p. 80.

<sup>2</sup> Waffenkunde, p. 65.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Eneit 9023, 5679, etc.

<sup>4</sup> Essenwein, Taf. 23, fig. 2.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. warriors of the 10<sup>th</sup> cent. in copper relief, Jähns, Kriegs-atlas, Taf. 36, fig. 11; Frankish foot soldiers, chessmen of Charlemagne from the 12<sup>th</sup> cent., Jähns, Taf. 36, fig. 2; and warriors from the Bayeux Tapestry, Jähns, Taf. 37, figs. 2, 4, 5.

that which conceals', *Grimr* being a by-name of Wodan from the fact of his going disguised, but in this case such an interpretation is out of the question as the visor was not introduced until the end of the 12<sup>th</sup> cent., the first representation being found in Herrad v. Landsberg's *Hort. Delic.*<sup>1</sup>, in 1180. This is followed in 1190 by the seal of Eudes de Bourgogne.<sup>2</sup> The nasal gradually developed into the *barbiere*, which came into use about the beginning of the 13<sup>th</sup> cent., forming the transition to the *Topf-* or *Kübelhelm*.

#### The Coat of Mail.

Body armour together with the helmet came into use among the Germanic tribes at a later period than the shield and weapons of attack<sup>3</sup>, and was not as in the case of these a native product. What few specimens the Barbarians possessed, before the coming of the Romans, were imported from the East, or had found their way hither from Roman or Celtic territory, and not until the Merovingian period did protective armour become at all general through the long continued contact with the Romans.

The Roman mail consisted of the *lorica squamata* or scale armour, which was formed of four-cornered pieces of metal overlapping each other, or of metal scales bound together with the under sides rounded.<sup>4</sup> This fitted closely

---

<sup>1</sup> Pub. by Engelhardt, Taf. III.

<sup>2</sup> Demay, Costume etc., p. 131.

<sup>3</sup> Tacitus, Germ. VI, reports the Germans as: *pancis loricae vix uni alterive cassis aut galeae* — Annales II, 14 *non loricam Germano non galeam*.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. Lindenschmidt, Tracht u. Bewaff. des röm. Heeres z. d. Kaiserzeit, Taf. XII.

to the body, reached to the hips with a short sleeve for the protection of the shoulder, and not infrequently a leather doublet was worn over this. The second type was the *lorica hamata* or chain mail, which consisted of a net, made of finely woven iron rings, worn either under or over a doublet.<sup>1</sup> Remains of such a ring byrnie found in the Torsberger Moor has its rows of rings simply bent together, the ends being beaten out and then fastened together.<sup>2</sup>

For the Merovingian period the reports of the various historians are both valuable and interesting. Compare for instance Agathias<sup>3</sup>, who describes the Frankish warriors on an expedition to Italy in 552 as wearing neither coat of mail nor greaves, but having their legs and thighs defended by bands of linen or leather. Again Paulus Diac.<sup>4</sup> represents the Heruler, at the beginning of the 6<sup>th</sup> century, with bodies unprotected in battle, and Widukind<sup>5</sup> says of the war garments of the Saxons, who in 531 assisted the Franks against the people of Thuringia, *vestierant sagis*, which points distinctly to an absence of the *byrne*. Sidon. Apoll.<sup>6</sup> does not ascribe the coat of mail to the Goths, but in a letter describing a battle he says: *Ahi caesim atque punctim foraminatos circulos loricarum digitis lves centibus metiuntur*, probably here of Roman origin. The Germans had an inborn love for freedom of movement, and the *byrine* made its way but slowly, it being not even mentioned in the Lex Salica (5<sup>th</sup> century), appearing

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Fröhner, la Colonne Trajane, Pl. XIV, XX, XXI, XXIX.

<sup>2</sup> S. Mestorf, Die vaterländ. Altertümer, Taf. XLVI, No. 554.

<sup>3</sup> II, c. 5.

<sup>4</sup> I, 20.

<sup>5</sup> Res. gest. nam Sax. I, 9.

<sup>6</sup> Bell., Goth. lib. III, epist. 3.

first in the Ripuarian law<sup>1</sup> with the high value of 12 sol. Greg. of Tours<sup>2</sup> in his enumeration of the war-equipment of an ordinary soldier, at the time of Clovis, makes no mention of either body armour or helm, which, added to the fact that no certain trace of armour has been found in any of the Merovingian graves, leads to the conclusion that in the 5<sup>th</sup> century and beginning of the 6<sup>th</sup> the coat of mail was the property only of kings and famous warriors.<sup>3</sup>

In three instances only has any trace of the *lorica hamata* been discovered in the grave-finds, the first by Cochet in Eaulenthal France<sup>4</sup>, the second by Bateman at Bently Grange in Derbyshire together with the Eber helmet, which *consisted of a mass of chain work formed of large quantities of links of two descriptions attached to each other by small rings half an inch in diameter amalgamated together from rust.* There were present, however, traces of cloth, which make very probable the supposition that the links constituted a kind of quilted cuirass by being sewn within or upon a doublet of strong cloth.<sup>5</sup> The *byrne* discovered in Jutland in 1850<sup>6</sup>, now in the Copenhagen Museum, cannot be adduced as evidence for this period, since the date of its manufacture is uncertain.

At the time of the Carolingians the *byrne* became more general. From a Capit. of Charlemagne from the

<sup>1</sup> Tit. 36, c. XI. *Si quis weregeldum solvere debet, brunitam bonam pro XII solidis tribuat.*

<sup>2</sup> Lib. II, c. 27.

<sup>3</sup> For representations of Germans without armour cf. Roman Sarcophagus in Capotoline Mu. at Rome, Stacke p. 9, and Colonna Antonia, id. p. 28, also a Roman gravestone in Mainz, id. p. 32.

<sup>4</sup> S. La Norm. Sout., Pl. XVI, fig. 4.

<sup>5</sup> S. Bateman, Ten Years' Diggings, p. 34.

<sup>6</sup> Antiq. Tidskrift for 1849, No. 51, p. 111, and Weinhold, Alt-nord. Leben, p. 210.

year 805 is taken the following clause: *et insuper omnis homo de duodecim Mansus bruniam habeat*, which points to a much more frequent use of the same than in the preceding period, due to the rapid evolution of weapons and war tactics at this time. That they were becoming objects of trade is shown from another Cap.<sup>1</sup>, and their sale in foreign lands is likewise forbidden. Cf. further Carol. M. L. VI, c. VI<sup>2</sup>, where it is forbidden to merchants to sell weapons or body armour to the Slavs and Avari, which is a point against the theory that the Germans obtained their protective armour from the Slavs, and does away with the idea of the greater skill in metal working, which the old Slavs are supposed to have possessed over the Germans. Cf. also the Cap. from the year 813 requiring loricas and galeas for the leaders and nobles.

With reference to the Miniatures of this period it must be said that the conservative clinging to Roman and Greek representations by the monks, and the tendency to conventional rather than accurate drawing renders the conclusions as to the form of the byrnie based on such representations alone extremely liable to error. For instance the Bible of Charles le Chauve represents Roman armour<sup>3</sup>, also the figure of Emperor Lothair<sup>4</sup>, and a warrior from

---

<sup>1</sup> Carol. M. L. VI, c. 223, ed. Baluze p. 961: *ut armillae et bruniae non dentur negotiatoribus*; Capit. from the year 779, No. XX, Baluze p. 198: *ut nullus (brunias) foras nostro regno vendere uon praesumat*

<sup>2</sup> *De negotiatoribus qui partibus Sclavorum et Avarorum per-*  
*gunt . . . et ut arma et brunias non ducantur ad venundandum.*  
*Quod, si inventi fuerint portantes, omnis substantia eorum auferatur*  
*ab eis; dimidia quidem pars partibus palatii, alia vero medietas inter*  
*jam dictos missos et inventorem dividatur* — ed. Baluze p. 755.

<sup>3</sup> Hottenroth, Handb. d. deutsch. Tracht, Taf. I, figs. 10, 7, 11.

<sup>4</sup> Essenwein, Taf. XV, fig. 3.

a Brussels MS.<sup>1</sup>, while the figure of an Egyptian from the Ashburnham Pentateuch<sup>2</sup> is a not very accurate imitation of the same.

The simplest and most primitive equipment is that of the warriors of the Prudentius MS., who are provided only with a sort of coat, with feet and legs entirely unprotected (usually bare).<sup>3</sup> This representation of warriors with short military cloak, tunic, helmet, spear, and shield without protective body armour is the form most frequently met with in all the MSS. Cf. Alcuins *Lib. de Offc. Divin.*  
— *Sicut soluit habere milites tunicas lineas sic aptas membris ut expedite sint dirigendo jaculo, tenendo clypeam, librando gladium etc.*<sup>4</sup> In the Utrecht Psalt., the Harl. MS., the Aelfc. MS., and the Anglo-Saxon Calendar<sup>5</sup> the same costume prevails, which combined with the testimony of the wills, the charters, and the failure of any trace of byrnies in the grave-finds, leads to the inevitable conclusion that up until the 10<sup>th</sup> century at least, and in all probability the 11<sup>th</sup>, the coat of mail was a sign of rank, wealth, and influence of the possessor. That old traditions have been adhered to in the representations of armour in the Codices may be seen by comparing the figure of one of Charles the Bald's standard bearers<sup>6</sup> with a figure from a Munich Evangelium<sup>7</sup> (11<sup>th</sup> century) with comparatively little difference in the two representations. According to Lin-

<sup>1</sup> Hottenroth, id., Taf. I, fig. 12.

<sup>2</sup> Gebhardt, Taf. XVII.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. Essenwein, Taf. XVII, figs. 8, 9, 10.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. also Strutt., Pl. XIII.

<sup>5</sup> Akermann, Pag. Sax., p. 52.

<sup>6</sup> Essenwein, Taf. XV, fig. 5.

<sup>7</sup> Seemann, No. 198, 3.

denschmidt<sup>1</sup> the oldest battle shirt or coat of mail was of leather, represented on a metal plate from Munich, of Byzantine origin, strengthened by bands of leather lattice work, metal being not yet employed. Leather armour of this sort was probably most frequently worn by the ordinary warriors between the 5<sup>th</sup> and 8<sup>th</sup> centuries, which having naturally moulded and completely disappeared, would account, in part at least, for the entire absence of body armour in the graves of German warriors. This explains also the complete disappearance of the horn armour of the Quadi described by Ammian<sup>2</sup> as: *Loricae ex cornibus rasis et levigatis, plumarum specie linteis indumentis innexae.* The handing down of valuable armour as a precious heir-loom contributed also its share to the singular absence of anything pointing to the use of armour by the Merovingian warriors, for being the possession most highly valued by the chief, it was as a matter of course passed on to the nearest male relative as a legacy to be kept in the family.

Scale armour is shown both on the seal ring of Childeric and of Alaric<sup>3</sup>, though exactly how constructed is difficult to decide. The simplest type of scale armour may be seen in the illustrations of the Stuttgart Psalter<sup>4</sup>, consisting of scales overlapping one another, reaching to a little below the hips, and with short sleeves. This same sort of armour is worn also by the warriors in the Psalter Aureum.<sup>5</sup> Differing from this is the coat of mail of the

---

<sup>1</sup> Lind., Merov. Altert., p. 262, fig. 199.

<sup>2</sup> XVII, 12.

<sup>3</sup> Lind., Merov. Altert., figs. 201 and 202.

<sup>4</sup> S. Jähns, Kriegsatlas, Taf. 36, figs. 8 and 10.

<sup>5</sup> Rahn, Taf. XV.

warrior from the Xantener casket<sup>1</sup>, and the horseman from the Kranenberger chest, which reaches only to the waist. Comparing with these the figure of Saul and another leader from the Psalter Aureum<sup>2</sup>, a distinct advance is made upon the preceding, not only do the sleeves reach below the bend of the arm, thereby allowing free play of the whole arm, but according to the artist's representation the byrnie appears to be slit both back and front, in fact so clearly is it shown that it would seem almost as if the warrior in question had on breeches of scale armour which is, however, impossible as these were not introduced until the 11<sup>th</sup> century. Corresponding almost exactly to this is the figure from the Xantener chest<sup>3</sup>, where it may be observed that the sleeves are not yet firmly fastened to the byrnie, an unprotected place being still left on the shoulder. The figure from the grave of Queen Thyra mentioned above (10<sup>th</sup> century) shows likewise the slit in the byrnie, which being used by horsemen fell on both sides of the saddle protecting the thighs. The above mentioned coats of mail are all descendants of the Roman *lorica squamata*, the *lorica hamata* although much earlier mentioned occurring in none of the MSS. of the period, probably on account of the difficulty of representation. The chain mail of the Waltharilied is called *lorica hamata* (v. 911), and a much earlier mention occurs in Hildebrandslied: *Gurtun sih iro suert ana, helidōs ubar hringā, dō siē tō dero hiltju ritun.* The Beowulf epic, however, offers the main evidence for the use of chain mail at this period.

---

<sup>1</sup> Lind., Merov. Altert., figs. 203 and 225.

<sup>2</sup> Rahn, Pls. X and IX.

<sup>3</sup> Lind., fig. 204.

The frequent mention of the byrnies in the Beowulf and other poems leaves no room for doubt that it was known at an early period among the Anglo-Saxons, and not only the *lorica squamata*, but the *lorica hamata* or chain mail is frequently referred to. Of the thirteen words employed to designate the coat of mail in Beowulf *byrne* occurs most frequently to which are applied the various epithets of *har*, *hringed*, *gebrogden*, *hond-locen*, *beorht*, and *sid*, to which may be added the numerous compounds such as *gūð*, *heado*, *here*, *isern* and *iren* *byrne*.

Of the countless circumlocutions of these words *wæd*, *gewæd* with its compounds *here*, *hilde*, *gūð*, *breost*, and *eorl-wæd*; *hrægl* together with its compounds, and *serče* are among the most important and frequent. Such expressions as *heado-reaf* (B. 401), *beadu-scruda* (453), *fyrd-hom* (1504), *hilde-sceorp* (2155), *here-pād* (2258) occur only once in Beowulf, although found in other poems. Cf. further the *byrn-homa* of Jud. (192). All of the above mentioned words refer as a rule in simplex to clothing in general, but in the poems are used with reference to the coat of mail.

The *serče* is also used to designate the battle-shirt, a word which is used in the Glossaries to translate *armilla* WW. 267<sup>43</sup>, *dalmatica*, *vestis* (Haupt. Z. Bd. IX, 483), and *colobium* WW. 7<sup>15</sup>. This use in the sense of *byrne* is confined, however, to Beowulf and to the single reference *hilde-serče* from the Elene (234), otherwise it refers to the ordinary garment. In ON. *serkr* is principally a woman's garment, but was used both by men and women, being often adorned with gold embroidery.<sup>1</sup> It was cut out

above and seems to have had no other opening<sup>1</sup>, being slipped over the head. The later byrnies which developed from the primitive breast covering of skin or bark of trees, resembles this garment closely, and took its name therefrom. Comparing the illustrations of the Stuttgart Psalter, the Psalt. Aureum, and the drawings of two shirts of chain mail, and the figure of a king from the Aelfric MS.<sup>2</sup> the likeness is immediately recognized, a shirt-like garment being in each instance represented, with this difference, however, that whereas in the minatures it is strongly to be suspected that the rings are sewn upon cloth or leather (uncertain on account of inaccuracy of drawings), in the poems the majority of references point with absolute certainty to chain mail. Cf. for instance the expressions from Beowulf such as: *breostnet broden* (1548), *hring utan ymb-bearh* (1503), *byrnan hring* (2260), *guð-byrne scan heard hondlocen*; *hring-iren scir song in searwum* (321), *hringde byrnan* (2615), *hringed byrne* (1245); from the Elene *wridene wæl-hlencan* (24), *brogden byrne* (257); *Byrhtnoð hring locan* (149); further from Beowulf *here-byrne hondum gebroden sid ond searo fah* (1443), *wið laðum lic-syrce min, heard hond-locen* (550), *locene leoðo-syrcan* (1505), *beado hrægl broden on breostum læg golde gegyrwed* (552). The *wæl-hlenca* (slaughter links), the ringed shirt, the battle garment hard hand-woven were certainly all formed from iron links bent together by hand and pressed into one another (cf. specimens of chain mail found in England and Scandinavia referred to at p. 95), and the wearing of the same during the swimming contest (B. 550) with Breca speaks for a very light, close-fitting, shirt-like gar-

<sup>1</sup> Weinhold, *Altnord. Leben*, 162, 172, 173.

<sup>2</sup> Claud., IV. B.

ment. From the resemblance of this closely-woven shirt to a net arose then the term *hring-net* so widely used with reference to this class of armour. Cf. the following expressions from B. with reference to the clang of the same as the warriors walked *byrnan hringdon* (327), *syrcan hrysedon* (226), *byrne sang* (By. 284), further the mention of *net* as *hring-net* (1889, 2754), as *here-net hearde* (1553), as the work of a skillful smith *searo-net seowed smides or-pancum* (406). For its general use among the warriors of the Anglo-Saxon poems cf. B. 237, 1889, 2623, Jud. 17, 39, with reference to the general custom of the period, however, cf. statement at p. 107 in regard to the Epic poems. A general term for warriors is *byrnum werede* (2529), nevertheless the corselets were of great value, highly prized, and famous ones were attributed to the workmanship of celebrated smiths. Cf. B. 406 above and 455 where Beowulf's byrnies is said to be *Welandes geweorc*.

The ordinary byrnies was formed of iron rings welded together from whence arose the epithet *græg* B. 334, Jud. 328, but those of kings and princes as in the case of helmets, shields, and swords were much more elaborate, being in all probability gilded cf. B. 322, 405, and 3140, for although the byrnies of Beowulf (1444) is described as *searo-fah*, nevertheless the fact remains that the links were of iron (671), and *searo-fah* refers probably to a gilding over of the same. Cf. König Rother *er truoc ein brunien gulden* (1100, 2696), and Nibel. *Brunhild trug eine briüne von golt* (407).

In Beowulf *breost-net* and *breost-gewædu* point to a simple breast-protection<sup>1</sup>, while the *side-byrne*, *serče*, *beado-*

---

<sup>1</sup> Cf. figures on Xantener casket.

*hrægl, gap-gewædu* etc. refer to the long wide garments of the Psalters and the Aelfric MS. These were of great value cf. B. 1291, 1444, Jud. 338, Sal. 453, and some may have been of great weight as in the case of the Frankish armour cf. Greg. of Tours<sup>1</sup>, who describes the drowning of a follower of Duke Gunthram on account of the great weight of his armour, but the Anglo-Saxon ring net must have been light.<sup>2</sup> The armour of the (Longobards) Lombards was also light, cf. Paulus Diac.<sup>3</sup> for the discovery of a ring net shirt under the other garments of the would-be murderer of king Liutprand. That it was not only light and close fitting, but also closely woven so as to be impenetrable is likewise to be inferred from the story of the swimming contest in Beowulf, also contest with Grendel's mother 1511, 1527, and By. 144, from this arose then the myth of impenetrable armour.<sup>4</sup> Nevertheless the sword often pierced the byrnies, and after every battle the armour had to be repaired (B. 2256, 1442). B. 2866 ff. shows that the byrnies varied in quality as well as in length, size, and weight, the most excellent from far and near being there presented.

Next to Beowulf is the death of Byrthnoð of most importance for terms referring to the *byrne*, followed by the Elene, while in the otherwise warlike Exodus the *byrne* is not once mentioned only general terms for war equipment being employed.<sup>5</sup>

Although all Continental representations from the earlier period are of scale armour, the Roman *lorica*

---

<sup>1</sup> Ut erat loricae pondere adgravatus VI, 26.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. B. 1444 and 323.

<sup>3</sup> VI, 37.

<sup>4</sup> Saxo Gram. II, 79.

<sup>5</sup> Cf. Exod. 157, 194, 219.

*squamata*, and the Anglo-Saxon illustrations of the Aelfric MS. cannot be identified positively with chain mail, one pictorial representation is, nevertheless, extant, which bears out the numerous references of the Anglo-Saxon literature to the woven chain or link mail i. e. that of an English ivory casket dating from the 8<sup>th</sup> century<sup>1</sup>, representing the storming of a fortress. The drawing is crude but two of the warriors are clad in what appears to be chain mail — scale armour on account of weight having a wider opening at the wrist in order to give free play to the hand, or what was still more usual in the early period before the 11<sup>th</sup> century extending only to the elbow. In the above representation, however, the sleeve extends close fitting quite to the wrist, and still allows the hand free play, pointing probably to chain mail. This garment in one case extends nearly to the knee, and may be supposed to be the *swd serče* of Beowulf, the other protects only the breast, hips, and arms, but the artist may have neglected to fill in other parts. The other warriors wear short close fitting doublets or coats, most likely of leather, or of some stiff material with long sleeves (the later *wams*), and beneath some sort of a folded under-garment, the nature of which it is almost impossible to decide.

In the Aelfric MS.<sup>2</sup> are represented two coats of mail resembling shirts, of a blue color probably with iron rings sewn upon them, and with sleeves extending only to the elbow. This with a representation of a king<sup>3</sup>, wearing a battle shirt resembling the two above constitutes the only representation of body armour adorned or made of metal

---

<sup>1</sup> Essenwein, Taf. XXIII, fig. 2.

<sup>2</sup> S. p. 101, note 2.

<sup>3</sup> S. J. Strutt, Pl. XIV.

throughout the whole of the Aelfric MS., although many warriors and battles are there depicted. From the Great Psalter of Bologna<sup>1</sup> toward the end of 10<sup>th</sup> or beginning of 11<sup>th</sup> century occurs another representation of scale armour, where Goliath is represented fully armed in a shirt upon which are sewn metal scales. This extends almost to the knee, but the sleeves are short. At p. 74 of the Harl. MS. is found the first and only example of a coat of mail. This is apparently long and heavy, made of links or of pieces of metal sewn upon leather. This garment covers the arms to a little below the elbow, and encases the legs almost to the knee. The figure wears a pointed cap or helmet, carries a spear in the left hand, while the right rests upon a round shield somewhat approaching the oval. Very similar to the battle shirt of the Aelfric MS.

Considering the prevalence of the scale rather than chain armour on the Continent, and, according to Beowulf, the frequency of the chain mail in England, the question naturally arises why was its use there so wide spread, and from whence did it come? Three ways are possible: — first from the Celts, who had received it from the Romans, and passed it on to the Saxon invaders; 2<sup>nd</sup> from Rome itself as late as the Carolingian period or perhaps earlier in the Merovingian; third from the East through the medium of the Slavs.<sup>2</sup> On the Sassanian monuments chain mail is found together with scale armour; the Persian warriors passed it from them to the Arabs, and a certain chain mail byrnie of this latter people shows a great similarity to the Roman find of the Nydamer

---

<sup>1</sup> Westwood, Pl. 38.

<sup>2</sup> Weinhold, Altord. Leben, p. 209.

Moor.<sup>1</sup> The relation of the Germ. *Brünne* to O Bulg. *bronja* proves nothing in regard to Eastern origin as the Slavic word is borrowed from the Germanic.

In the laws of the Anglo-Saxons the coat of mail is first mentioned in the laws of Ine at the end of the 7<sup>th</sup> century<sup>2</sup>, where one found guilty of murder shall be allowed to pay to each of the *Hynden* a man, a byrnie and a sword as wergeld. No mention of the same occurs in Alfred's laws, and it does not make its appearance again before the beginning of the 10<sup>th</sup> century (Ges. Schmidt, Anhang VII, 2, § 10). Law. IX reads: *And gif ceorlisc man geþeo, þæt he hæbbe V hida landes to cynges ut-warē, and hine man ofslea, forgilde man hine mit twam þusend þryensa*, which is immediately followed by § 10 *And þeah he geþeo, þæt he hæbbe helm and byrnan and goldefæted sweord, gif he þæt land nafað, he biþ ceorl swa þeah oðer he biþ siþcund* that is to say that the possession of these weapons gives him great prestige among the freemen of the land, where they are rare and in the possession only of the wealthy. Dating Beowulf approximately in the 8<sup>th</sup> century the apparent contradiction which it offers to the above statement cannot fail to strike the reader. There the *byrne* and *helm* are the common possessions of every warrior, swords and byrnies accompany the dead Viking as the tide bears him out upon the flood (B. 39), a countless number are given by Weohstān to his son (B. 2624), and the funeral pyre of Beowulf is hung with bright byrnies, helms, and shields, which bears a strong resemblance to the description of Walhalla<sup>3</sup>, where the beams of the

<sup>1</sup> Montelius, fig. 137.

<sup>2</sup> Ges. Lieberm., p. 114 [54].

<sup>3</sup> Grimnismol 9.

great hall of Odin are of spears, shields serves as shingles for the roof, and on the benches the byrnies are laid. The prevailing use of byrnie and sword (weapons) in the Anglo-Saxon epics, especially Beowulf about corresponds to that indicated by the laws of the 11<sup>th</sup> century, which may be completely reconciled, however, by reference to the fact previously stated that the Beowulf warriors are choosen troops, heroes every one, and furthermore that this universal equipment with sword, helmet, and chain mail at a period when according to the laws it must be assigned, exclusively to those of the highest rank, may be due to the epic love of pomp, display, and exaggeration.

In England as on the Continent the general use of stiff metal body armour spread slowly, and not until the time of Canute the Dane did it become frequent.<sup>1</sup> At this period the *heriot* of an earl consisted among other things of 4 byrnies, 4 swords, and 4 helmets, then followed the king's thane with two of each of the above, while the middle-thane had no weapons to render, and no man under the rank of thane possessed either byrnie or sword.<sup>2</sup> The head-forester, although provided with sword, spear, and shield, had no byrnie. Under Wm. the Conqueror<sup>3</sup> the laws in regard to arms remain practically the same as under Canute. From c. 20, § 2, it is learned that every vassal must be armed with byrnie (or hauberk), helm, shield, lance, and sword, while the villains were without these weapons. Under Henry I<sup>4</sup> the number of lances

---

<sup>1</sup> Cf. *Laws of Canute*. — Ges. Lieberm., p. 358 [71].

<sup>2</sup> S. sword.

<sup>3</sup> *Laws of Wm.* Ges. Lieberm., p. 506 [20].

<sup>4</sup> Ges. Schmidt, *Anhang XXI*, 14.

required is doubled (for the tournament, Fr. influence), but the requirements remain otherwise unchanged.

The Anglo-Saxon wills and charters bear out the statement of the scarcity and value of the byrnies even as late as the 11<sup>th</sup> century. In 1006 Aelfric bequeathed to his lord his best sailing ship, 60 helms, and 60 coats of mail showing his great wealth.<sup>1</sup> About 970 Bishop Theorcre left swords, shields, and spears, but no byrnies. In 1008 Aeðelred preparing for war commanded that ships should be built over all England i. e. from 310 hides one long ship; and from 8 hides, a helmet and corselet showing value of the latter even in the 11<sup>th</sup> cent. In 1030 Wulfsige leaves two coats of mail<sup>2</sup>, while in 1038 Aeðelstan son of Aeðelred II bequeaths a silver hilted sword together with a coat of mail to his father as a treasured possession.<sup>3</sup>

#### The Healsbeorg.

In the Aelfric glossaries *lorica* and *thorace* are translated by both *byrne* and *healsbeorg*. Gradually the simple breast-covering had widened out, become larger, and in Beowulf it is called on account of its size the *side byrne*. These new shirt shaped forms, called in Lat. *tunica ahenā*, and by Saxo Grammat. *vestes*, are known in Beowulf as *serče*, *syrče*. This form was the stiff foldless coat, which extended almost to the knee<sup>4</sup>, with short wide sleeves, and covered with metal scales or rings — possibly a *ring net*? So is to be understood then the passage *dominus loricatus super et tunicatus* as a warrior wearing a narrow

<sup>1</sup> S. Chart. Th. 549.

<sup>2</sup> Chart. Th. 556.

<sup>3</sup> Chart. Th. 557.

<sup>4</sup> S. MS. Claud. B. IV.

breastplate and over this the wide *tunica ahena*. The OHG. glossaries translate a few times *lorica* with *halsperg*<sup>1</sup>, also Isid.<sup>2</sup> The original meaning is not *al-berc* as Besly believes, followed by Benecke<sup>3</sup>, but refers to a *collum tegens*<sup>4</sup> the Fr. form being borrowed from the Germ. Certain, however, is the fact that the *healsbeorg* in various countries refers to a different piece of armour, the origin of which is a much disputed question. San Marte<sup>5</sup> treats it as a collar, which gradually lengthened until it formed a second protection over the first (the byrnies).<sup>6</sup> That seems unlikely, however, and the *healsbeorg* was probably evolved from the *byrne* by the lengthening of the latter at the top to a sort of hood, which covered the back of the head, and partly protected cheek and chin. Lehmann sees the intermediate stage between *byrne* and *healsbeorg* in the figure from the Stuttgart Psalter<sup>7</sup>, where a cloth appears to be wound about the back of the head, cheeks, and chin, but is not as yet firmly fastened to the byrnies. In the Lucan MS. in St. Gall<sup>8</sup>, from the end of 9<sup>th</sup> or beginning of 10<sup>th</sup> century, the protecting hood is found well under way. These warriors have a widening of the byrnies at the hand, which is not the case on the Bayeux tapestry<sup>9</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Steinm. Sievers X<sup>8</sup>.

<sup>2</sup> XVIII, 13, 14.

<sup>3</sup> Wb. Zum Wigalois, and Müller-Zarncke Wb.

<sup>4</sup> Diez, Etym. Wb. 365.

<sup>5</sup> p. 34.

<sup>6</sup> Demay, Cost. au moyen âge 110, Schulz, Höf. Leb. II, 26, and Lehmann, Diss. p. 20.

<sup>7</sup> Jähns, Kriegsatlas, Taf. 36, fig. 10.

<sup>8</sup> Essenwein, Taf. XVII, fig. 2.

<sup>9</sup> S. Lancelot, Mém. de l'Acad. des Inscript. et Belles Lettres Bd. VIII, or Jähns, Kriegsatlas, Taf. 37, fig. 3.

Wace describes the *hauberks* or *healsbeorge* of the heavily armed troops at Hastings as short and small

*Cors haubers orent è jutis  
E helmes de sor lor vestis.*

These shirts of mail with short sleeves were of woven chain mail, with hoods of the same material, and of the same structure on one side as on the other. The seal of Wm. the Conqueror<sup>1</sup>, a miniature<sup>2</sup>, and the figures of the 12<sup>th</sup> cent. warriors painted upon the roof of the church at Brauweiler all show the short-sleeved hauberk. In the 11<sup>th</sup> century, however, the long-sleeved hauberk was known on the Continent together with hand greaves or gauntlets<sup>3</sup>, seen on a knight from the beginning of the 11<sup>th</sup> century from the Evangelium Book of Henry II, 1010. In the 12<sup>th</sup> century this seems to be apparently the prevailing form.<sup>4</sup> At this period also the *healsbeorg* was for more in use than the byrnies.<sup>5</sup> Later representations of the byrnies are very difficult to find, although still worn, owing to the fact that they were made smaller and more close fitting, were cut out at the neck, and worn under the *healsbeorg*. References to such a use are frequent in the MHG. poets — cf. for instance Rosengart. 2266

*durch halsberg und durch ringe er mich gar sere  
sluog;*

Biterof 1075

*durch schilt und ringe er in schlug duz die prunne  
mail gewan;*

---

<sup>1</sup> Lacroix, *Les Arts au moyen-âge*, p. 81.

<sup>2</sup> Essenwein, Taf. XXV, fig. 1.

<sup>3</sup> Jähns, *Kriegsatlas*, Taf. 38, fig. 1.

<sup>4</sup> Id. Taf. 38, figs. 9, 6 and 7.

<sup>5</sup> S. Seemanns *Kunsthistor. Bilderbuch* 92,6.

in Wigalois 7371 occurs the following:

*Ein brune het er an geleit über einen wizzen halsperch. Daz was heidenischer werch von breiten blechen hurnin* (mit Edelsteinen besetzt), and certainly not intended to be worn under a steel shirt.<sup>1</sup>

#### Greaves.

Metal greaves in the Old English period may be regarded as among the rarest of all war equipment. No trace of such has been found in the grave-finds, the pictorial representations are few, and reference to such in the A.-S. glossaries is rare.

As in the case of the byrnies so are greaves once mentioned in the Rip. Law.<sup>2</sup>: *Si quis weregeldum solvere debet, bain bergas bonas pro sex solidis tribuat*, a very high value when compared to that of the shield or even of the sword and exactly equal to that of the helmet. For a long time also they were worn only on the side, not protected by the shield.

The glossaries contain the Lat. word *ocrea* variously translated by *bān-beorg*, *scinhosa*, *bān-rift*, and *sceanc gebeorg*. Heyne<sup>3</sup> refers the *ocrea* to the leather protectors worn by the Roman cavalry, the word being also once glossed by *leper hosa* in an A.-S. glossary, and in that case would refer to some sort of protection for the legs other than metal, perhaps to the bands of cloth, linen, or leather terminating a little below the knee, either in close rolls or

<sup>1</sup> For further development in the Middle Ages consult San Marte, Waffenkunde, p. 33 ff., and the excellent article on the «Body Armour anciently worn in England» by Sam. Rush. Meyrick in Arch. XIX, p. 120.

<sup>2</sup> Tit. 36, c. 11.

<sup>3</sup> K. u. Kleidung, p. 286.

crossing each other sandal-wise, so frequently represented in the MSS.<sup>1</sup> *Ocrea* is further translated by *boot* (WW. 598<sup>41</sup>), which would lead to the inference that *ocreia* in the earlier period referred in all probability to some sort of a leather protection for the limbs.

The first representation of metal greaves is from a Saxon Reliquary after 890<sup>2</sup>, which represents a Dane and two of his companions with thin plates of metal attached to the front of the stockings, and reaching from instep to knee. At the beginning of the 11<sup>th</sup> century an advance is made upon the Danish greaves fastened to stockings, and they are here represented as extending from knee to instep and completely protecting the foot as well.<sup>3</sup> That they only gradually superseded the leather boots and bandaged legs of the previous period, however, is shown by the representations of the MSS., where as late as the 12<sup>th</sup> century an English warrior appears with the bandaged legs of the OE. period. In the Middle Ages, however, they became an important part of the equipment of the knight, were made of iron or steel plates extending to the knee, where they joined the iron breeches (*caliga*) formed of iron or steel rings, which protected the limbs. Cf. Walthar 335: *Ingentes ocreis suras complectitur aureis*, and Herz. Ernst 4667: . . . *von bainbergen und sarwete gut gerete.*<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Jähns, Kriegsatlas, Taf. XXXVII, fig. 6, and Westwood Pl. 38 (early 11<sup>th</sup> century), where Goliath is provided with boots and some sort of leather stockings; also figs. 210 and 211 Lind., Merov. Altertümer.

<sup>2</sup> S. J. Strutt, Pl. 24, and note on p. 53.

<sup>3</sup> S. Jähns, Kriegsatlas, Taf. 38, fig. 1.

<sup>4</sup> Cf. further the representations in Hagen's Bildersaal, Taf. III, IV and X, and in Herrad v. Landsberg.

---

## Second Part.

### Philological Investigation.

#### I. General Terms.

##### Gearwe.

Forms. *gearwe* pl. f. (wō), *gearwe* f. (wōn).

References.

###### 1. Clothing.

dat. pl. *smicere on gearwum wudum and wyrtum cymed wlitig scriban* *Marius Men.* 76; *ac he (Enoch) cwic gewat mid cyning engla of Iyssum laenan life feran on þam gearwum, þe his gast onfeng, ær hine to monnum modor brohte* *Gen. 1210.*

###### 2. Arms : Arma.

pl. acc. *oð þæt hie on Guðmyrce gearwe bæron* *Exod. 59; guð-preat gumena gearwe bæron* *Exod. 193; and wacxon hig to mergen hira reef and sin' gearwe* *Prs. Exod. XIX<sup>10</sup>.*

*gearwe* f. (wōn) clothing : vestitus habitus.

dat. sg. *ic on his gearwan geseo* *Gen. 657.*

###### Compound.

*feðer-gearwe* pl. f. pennis vestitus : feather-gear, feathering (of the arrow).

pl. dat. *sceaft feðergearwum fus flane fulleode* *B. 3119.*

Meaning. Vestitus, habitus, arma : arms, armour, clothing, ornaments, gear.

Etymology. s. Graff (IV 238, 243), San Marte (Waffenkunde p. 4), and Murray (N. E. D. under gear).

The subst. *gearwe* is formed from the OE. adj. \**gearu*, *gearo* ‘paratus, promptus, prepared, ready’. Cf. OSax., OHG. *garo* ‘to make ready, ready, complete’, NHG. *gar* ‘completely, entirely’, ODu. *garu* ‘ready’, ON. *gorr* ‘ready, prepared’, Goth. \**garwa-* is not found, ME. *zare*, NE. *yare* is obsolete but at the time of Shakespeare was in use as adv. with the meaning ‘quickly’ cf. Temp. (I, 1').

Cognates to OE. *gearwe* are OS. *garuwi* f., ON. *görvi*, *gjörvi* ‘gear, apparel’, OHG. *garawi* ‘armour, ornament, clothing’, MHG. *garwe* with similar meaning, whence OFr. *garbe*, NE. *garb* beside NE. *gear* the direct derivative of OE. *gearwe*.

### Geatwe.

Forms. *geatu* pl. *geatwa*, -e f. (wō). Cf. Sievers, Angl.-Säch. Gramm. 43<sup>4</sup>.

#### References.

1. armamenta: equipment.

pl. dat. *twegian englas gesceldode and gesperode and mid heora geatwum gegyrede* Bl. Homl. 221<sup>28</sup>; *freolic in geatwum* Reim. 38.

2. Ornaments.

*þa þe geolo godwebb geatwum (geatum Leid. Codex.) frætwat Ridls. 36<sup>10</sup>.*

pl. acc. *ic wæs þær inne ond þæt eal geond-seh, recedes geatwa* B. 3087.

Compounds. *geatwe* as second member of the compound.

*eored-geatwe* pl. f. ornatus militaris.

pl. acc. *se eow ða maðmas geaf, eored-geatwe* B. 2865.

*fyrd-geatwe* pl. f. apparatus bellicosus : warlike trappings or arms.

gen. *yr biþ fyrd-geatewa sum* (quoted from BT.) Hick. Thes. I, 135, 54.

*gryre-geatwe* pl. f. vestimenta uel armatura bellica.  
dat. pl. in *hyra gryre-geatwum* B. 324.

*guð-geatwe* or *getawa* pl. f. armatura bellica.

acc. pl. *þæt we him þa guð-geatwa* (or *getawa*) *gyldan woldon* B. 2636.

*here-geatu* f. apparatus militaris.

sg. acc. *þa here-geatu* By. 48.

nom. acc. pl. *he . . . here-geatewa* (Hs. A.) [*here-geatowe* Hs. B.] *wigeð* Sal. 52; *ond þam cinge minne hære-geatwa* Chart. Th. 499<sup>28</sup>; *ond beon þa here-geata* [*here-geate*] *swa fundene* Ges. Liberm. II [71] p. 356.

pl. dat. *þa bioð gehyrste mid here-geatwum hilde torhtum* Boet. 25<sup>9</sup>, id. Ep. Al. 142<sup>78</sup>.

*hilde-geatwe* pl. f. apparatus uel vestitus bellicus, armatura.

pl. acc. *and (he) gehealdan het hilde-geatwe* B. 674.

pl. gen. *hæfde him on earme ana þrittig hilde-geatwa* B. 2361.

*wíg-geatwe* pl. f. s. *wíg-getawa*.

Meaning. Armamenta, vestimenta, ornamenta: trappings, garments, arms, armour, military adornment.

### Getawa.

Form. *getawa* f. pl. (wð).

References. instruments : instrumenta.

*Mannes getawa* Lchdm. II 70<sup>7</sup>.

Compounds, with *getawa* as second member of compound.

*guþ-ȝetāwa* pl. f. *armatura bellica* : war equipment.  
acc. pl. ~ B. 2636 s. *guð-ȝeatwe*.

pl. dat. *Nu ge moton gangan in eowrum guð-ge(a)ȝawum*  
B. 395.

*wig-ȝetāwa* pl. f. war armour, equipment.

pl. dat. *Hy on wig-ȝetawum* B. 368.

Meaning. s. *ȝeatwe*.

Etymology. Cognates to OE. *ȝeatwe*, *ȝetāwe* are: Goth. *tēwa* f. 'Ordnung' (from which is derived the verb *gatēwan*), OHG. *gazawa*, MHG. *gezawe*, *gezouwe* f. n. 'tools, military equipment', ON. *gptvar* 'military equipment'.

That *ȝeatwe* and *ȝetāwa* are originally one and the same word with different accentuation in Germ. is certain. In Germ. following the rule for the accent of Nominal Composita the first syllable bears the chief accent, nevertheless compounds with the open prefixes *ga-* *fra-* *bi-* have very early given up this accentuation, and through analogy with the Verbal Composita have the accent on the root syllable, which in the Verbal Composita always bears the chief accent (cf. Bülbring § 68, § 72). Traces of the old accentuation are retained in the words *ȝeatwe* and *frȝetwe* — *ȝetāwa* having undergone the later accent shifting from prefix to stem vowel (cf. also the compound *\*gunþ-gatēwōs*). Kluge (KZ. 26<sup>75</sup>) sets down the Goth. forms as *\*gátewōs* and *gatēwōs*, which give respectively *ȝeatwe* and *ȝetāwa*. Cf. also Kluge in Pauls Grundr. I, p. 391 ff.

The rare form *here-ȝeatwe* or *-ȝeatwe* Sal. 52 perhaps points to an older form before final dropping of the vowel (cf. also *ȝetawum* B. 395), but it is more likely that the *e* or *o* is simply a new transition vowel developed between a cons. and *w* followed by a vowel after a short accented

syllable, the vowel being originally *u*, but was weakened later to *o*, *a*, *e* (cf. Bülbring § 452).

The oldest references for *getāwa* are found in Beowulf in composition with *wig* and *gað*, the Germ. form of which would be \*gúnþ-gatēwos. The syncopation of the long vowel in *gatēwōs* > *geatue* is to say the least striking, but parallel cases are found in OE., one of which is *sinew* < Goth. *sinēva*, which appears in nom. as *sinu*, *seonu* with elision of long *e*. Cf., however, Uhlenbeck (Goth. Wb. p. 146), who connects OE. *geatewe*, *geatwe*, ON. *gotvar* with a lost Goth. \**gataws* 'ready, prepared' from the verb *tajan* 'to make, to do', which appears in OCSlav. as the loan word *gotovъ*.

### Rēaf.

Forms. sg. *rēaf* nom. pl. *reaf* n. (a).

In general *rēaf* has the meaning 'vestimentum: robe, garment', here and there the meaning 'coat of mail' (*he wolde þas beornes beagas gefeccan, rēaf and hringas and gernod swurd* By. 161; and *Aelfheres laf... ealles unscende ætelinges rēaf to habbanne* Wald. 2<sup>20</sup>), and belongs rather to a treatment of Anglo-Saxon garments, than to that of weapons (s. Diss. mentioned at beginning of Chap. on 'Body Armour'). In the compounds, however, the usual meaning is that of 'war-garment, arms', and a second meaning that of 'booty, prey, plunder' belongs also to the department of arms.

References. 1. *vestis*, *uel vestimentum*, *cultus*, *indumentum*: garment, vestment.

sg. nom. *indumentum* : *rēaf* WW. 86<sup>18</sup>; *cultus*: ~ WW. 151<sup>7</sup>; *vestis*, *uel vestimentum*, *uel indumentum*: ~ WW. 327<sup>19</sup>; *ætelinges rēaf* Wald. 2<sup>20</sup>.

sg. gen. *on his reafes fnæd* Ps. 132<sup>8</sup>.

sg. dat. *hyrste beorhte reade and scire on reafe*  
Ridl. 12<sup>2</sup>; *mid swilcum reafe* Prs. Exod. XXI<sup>3</sup>.

sg. instr. *reafe birofene* Ridls. 14<sup>7</sup>; *mid lineum reafe*  
Prs. Gen. 41<sup>42</sup>; *mid oðrum reafe* Prs. Gen. 38<sup>14</sup>; *mid reafe*  
Deut. 22<sup>5</sup>.

sg. acc. *þæt halie reaf, þæt Aaron wered*, Prs. Exod. 29<sup>29</sup>;  
*he wolde þas beornes beagas gefeccan, reaf and hrings* By.  
161; *(he) him selfa sceaf reaf of lice* Gen. 1565; *agif him*  
*his reaf* Prs. Exod. 22<sup>26</sup>; *and sylðme... reaf to werigenne* Prs.  
Gen. 28<sup>26</sup>; *þu sprenest Aaron and his reaf* Prs. Exod. 29<sup>21</sup>.

nom. acc. pl. *þa dyde heo of hire wydewan reaf* Prs.  
Gen. 38<sup>4</sup>; *and (hie) abædon æt þam Egiptiscum... eall hira*  
*bestan reaf* Prs. Eod. 12<sup>55</sup>; *and wacxon hig to mergen hira*  
*reaf* Prs. Exod. 19<sup>10</sup>; *ac þa Israeliscan wif biddað æt þam*  
*Egiptescum wifon æt hira nehgeburon... sylfrene fatu and gyl-*  
*dene and reaf* Prs. Exod. 3<sup>22</sup>; *þu sprenst... and his suna and*  
*hira reaf* Prs. Exod. 29<sup>21</sup>; *ealde madmas, reaf and randas*  
Exod. 585; *vestes : reaf* WW. 96<sup>20</sup>.

pl. gen. forms. *vastes : reafa (?)* WW. 81<sup>7</sup>; *reafra*  
*wanung* Wulfst. 186<sup>18</sup>.

pl. dat. *in blacum reafum* Exod. 212.

2. Spolium, rapina, exuviae: booty, plunder.

sg. instr. *butan hy þy reafe rædan motan* Guð. 103.

nom. acc. pl. *exuviae, spolie : reaf i. vestes mortu-*  
*orum, uel pelles ferarum, uel reaf-lac* WW. 233<sup>44</sup>; *exuuias:*  
*reaf* WW. 396<sup>11</sup>; *excubias (for exubias) : ~* WW. 525<sup>1</sup>.

acc. *oft weordlic reaf on huse men her gedælað* Ps. 67<sup>13</sup>;  
*se þe beorna reaf manige meted, þær hit mannum losað*  
Ps. 118<sup>162</sup>.

Compounds.

*gað-reaf* n. *vestitus bellicus, arma.*

acc. *ac he bord ongean hefeð hygesnottor, haligne scyld,*  
*gæstlic guð-reaf* Jul. 387.

*headu-reaf* n. *vestis bellica* : battle garment.

pl. acc. *Sume þær bidon heado-reaf heoldon* B. 401.

*here-rēaf* praeda, spolia : booty, plunder.

sg. gen. *healdon here-reafes* Exod. 583.

sg. acc. *rum wæs to nimanne lond-buendum on ðam*  
*laðestan, hyra ealdfeondum heolfrig here-reaf* Jud. 317.

nom. acc. pl. spolia, uel manubie, uel prede : *here*  
*reaf* WW. 143<sup>8</sup>; spolia ~ VHy. 5<sup>14</sup>; ~ Bd. Gl. 76; dividere  
spolia : *to dælan here-reaf* VPs. 67<sup>18</sup>; spolia multa : *here*  
*reaf micel* VPs. 118<sup>162</sup>; manubias : *here-reaf* OE. Gl. 1<sup>1925</sup>.

*wæl-rēaf* spolia : booty taken from the slain.

sg. nom. manubrium : *wæl-reaf* Corp. 1279; manubium-  
manuvium : *uuaelreab-uuelreab* Ep. 64<sup>2</sup>, Er. 1<sup>277</sup>.

sg. acc. *Higelac . . . wæl-reaf werede* B. 1205; and  
*ponne þæt wælreaf wyrtum biteldeð fægre gefrætwed* Ph. 273;  
*ic læt me on laste lic eorðan dæl wælreaf wunigean weormum*  
*to hroðre* Ap. 93.

*rēaf-lāc* n. rapina : pillage, plunder.

sg. nom. preda : *reaflac* WW. 143<sup>4</sup>.

sg. dat.! s. under rēaf WW. 233<sup>45</sup>; to *reaf-lace*  
Ps. 61<sup>10</sup>.

sg. acc. in rapinam : on *reaflac* WW. 421<sup>29</sup>.

**Etymology.** *Reaf* is derived from the sg. pret. stem  
of the str. verb. *rēfan*, ON. *rjúfa* ‘to break, to tear to  
pieces’. Cognate to OE. *reaf* are OHG. *roub*, ON. *val-rauf*  
‘spoils taken from the slain’, ODu. *roof*, OSax. *nod-rōf*  
‘rapine’, OFrs. *rāf* ‘robbery, booty’ from a Germ. \**rauba*.  
Cf. Goth. *biraubōn beraubēn* (subst. not recorded), and the  
verbs ON. *raufa*, OE. *rēfian*, OSax. *rōbon*, OHG. *roubōn*  
which are denominative formations from the subst. Radi-

cally related are: Lit. *rapeti* 'kümmern, to trouble', *rupas* 'rough'. Poln. *rupić* 'to bite', Lat. *rumpo* 'to tear, to break to pieces', OI. *riipyati* to the rt. \**rup* — Schwundstufe to Idg. \**reup* — (Hochstufe) 'to break, to tear to pieces' (Fick. I 526). The verb OE. *rēafian* further appears in ME. as *reven* pp. *reft*, NE. *reave* pp. *reft* usually with the prefix *be-*. For the relation of It. *roba*, Fr. *robe* 'dress, garment' to OE. *rēaf*, OHG. *roub* s. Kluge, Etym. Wb. p. 311.

### Searu.

Forms. *searu*, *seoru* n. (wa). (S. Sievers 103, Anm. 1, for eo 150<sup>8</sup>.)

References. 1. lorica; armatura, arma : wargear, armour, equipment, arms.

sg. nom. *searo huit solaþ* Reim. 67; *garas stodon sæ-manna searo*, *samol ætgædere* B. 329.

sg. acc. *beran beorht searo* Exod. 219.

pl. dat. commentis : *searuum uel ordoncum* Er. 278; id. : *seorwum* Corp. 545; yripeon : *here-searum* Ep. Er. 1100; yryseon : ~ Corp. 2175; *Guðbyrne scan heard hond-locen, hring-iren scir, song in searwum* B. 323; *gebide ge on beorge byrnum werede, secgas on searwum* B. 2530; *secg on searwum* B. 249, 2700; *he on searwum bad* B. 2568; (arms) *gescah ða on searwum sige-eadig bil* B. 1557; *ond þa sið-frome searwum gearwe wigend wæron* B. 1813.

2. machina: machine, engine of war.

sg. nom. ballista, catapulta, uel machina belli, : *searu* WW. 192<sup>8</sup>; ballista : *stæflidere*, *oððe searu*, i. machina belli WW. 357<sup>21</sup>.

sg. acc. machinam : *searwe* Bd. Gl. 73.

3. *machinatio, dolus, insidiae: ambuscade, deception, waylaying, battle.*

For references s. Grein, Sprachschatz II, p. 434 and Bosworth Toller.

4. *ars, artificium, accuratio, diligentia: cunning in a good sense, skill, art.*

for references s. Grein and B. T. as above.

**Compounds.** 1. For numerous compounds with *searo* as first member of the compound cf. Grein, Sprachschatz II, 435—436, and B. T. Dic., those given here being confined to those compounds directly connected with war-equipment.

*searo-hæbbend* armaturam habens, armatus.

nom. pl. *searu-hæbbende* An. 1528.

gen. pl. *in hēdum a leng searo-hæbbendra sar prōwian*, An. 1468; *siex hun[dred]a searo-hæbbendra* Phar. 6; *hwæt syndon ge searo-hæbbendra* B. 237.

*searo-net* n. lorica affabre facta, s. net.

*searo-pil* n. s. pil.

2. *Searo* as second member of the compound.

*beadu-searo* n. apparatus bellicus.

acc. pl. *purh þa (brimū) hie heora beado-searo wagon* Exod. 572.

*fyrd-searu* n. the same as *beadu-searo*.

acc. sg. *guð-gewædu, fyrd-searo fuslic* B. 2618.

acc. pl. *fyrd-searu fuslicu* B. 232.

*guð-searo* armatura bellica.

acc. *guð-searo geatolic* B. 215.

nom. pl. *byrnān hringdon, guðsearo gumena* B. 328; *guðsearo gullon* An. 127.

**Etymology.** A general Germ. term. Cognates to OE. *searu* are: OSax. OHG. *saro*, Goth. *sarwa* n. pl.

‘Rüstung’. Cf. MHG. *sarwat*, *sarewat*, and ON. *sprve* ‘a necklace from a string of pearls or stones (also armour)’. The Germ. form is \**sarwo-*, probably to be connected with Idg. \**sero-* ‘to string, to put in a row’ (s. Fick, Vgl. Wb. I, 562). Related are Lat. *serere*, Gr. εἰζεῖν ‘to fasten together, to make fast’, to which OIr. *sreth* ‘a row’, and the unrecorded Skt. \**sarat* ‘thread’. OPr. *sarwis*, Lit. Pol. *searwai* ‘armour’ are Goth. loan words.

### Wæpen.

Forms. *wæpen*, *wēpen* n. (a).

nom. pl. *wæpen*, *wēpeno*, *wēpno* (s. Sievers Gramm. 244<sup>2</sup>).

The word occurs so frequently that only a certain member of references have been selected for each case.

References. sg. nom. and acc. *wæpen hafnade heard be hiltum Higelaces ðegn* B. 1573; *nolde ic sweord beran, wæpen to wyrme* B. 2519; *peah þæt wæpen duge* B. 1660; *he to sæcce bær wæpen wundum heard* B. 2687; *wæpen up ahof* By. 131; *þa hwile þe he wæpen mæge habban and healdan* By. 235; *ac me sceal wæpen niman* By. 252; *no ic eow sweord ongean mid gebolgne hond oðberan þence, worulde wæpen* Guð. 275; *þis bid beorna gehwam wið æglæce un oferswiced wæpen æt wigge* El. 1188; *ne wolde he oðer wæpen nemne ane gyrdé him on honda habban* Bd. 3, 18<sup>208</sup>; *gegrip wepen* VPs. 34<sup>2</sup>; ~ ib. 45<sup>10</sup>; ~ ib. 57<sup>5</sup>.

sg. gen. *sum wæpnes ecge* Gen. 1830; *þæs wæpnes* B. 1467; *nemihte he gehealdan heardne mece, wæpnes wealdan* By. 168; *þurh wæpnes spor!* Jul. 623; *wæpnes ecgge* Sal. 165; *mucro : swerdes ord, uel opres wæpnes* WW. 549<sup>85</sup>.

sg. dat. *on his wæpne* Sal. 161; *mid nænige wæpne* Ep. Al. 157<sup>482</sup>.

instr. *mid ðy man fullan wæpne acwealde* Bd. 2, 9, 122<sup>25</sup>;  
*þy wæpne* B. 1664; *Wulf Wonreding wæpne geræhte* B. 2965;  
*mid his wæpne* By. 228.

nom. acc. pl. *butan hie him ealle hiera wæpeno ageafen*  
Or. 4, 13, 210<sup>21</sup>; *þæt hi him wæpno worhton* Bd. 1, 12, 46<sup>7</sup>;  
*hu hi him wæpen wyrcean* Bd. 1, 12, 46<sup>9</sup>; *þæt he moste*  
*wæpen wegan* Bd. 2, 13, 138<sup>3</sup>; *arma : wepn* Cant. Ps. 34<sup>2</sup>;  
*wæpn* Bl. Hom. 167<sup>1</sup>; *wæpen* Ridls. 4<sup>58</sup>; *wæpen wælgifru*  
Wand. 100; *for þon eal heora wapenu þera minra þegna . . .*  
*ic hie mid yldenum þelum bewyrcean* Ep. Al. 145<sup>150</sup>.

pl. gen. *armorum : wæpna* V. Hy. 6<sup>19</sup>; *seo wæpna laf*  
Gen. 2005; *þa se halga heht his heorð werod wæpna onfon*  
Gen. 2040; *gesealde wæpna geweald* Exod. 20; *hægsteald*  
*modige wæpna wælslithes* Exod. 328; *wæter wepna ful* Exod.  
450; *wæpna lafe* Dan. 74; *wæpna wyrpum* Cri. 565; *for his*  
*won-hydum wæpna ne-recced* B. 434; *wicga ond wæpna*  
B. 1045; *wæpna smid* B. 1452; *þæt (wæs) wæpna cyst* B. 1559;  
*wæpna ecgum* An. 71; *wæpna wundum* Gud. 255; *wæpna*  
*ecggum* Sal. 259; ~ Ep. Al. 147<sup>216</sup>; *swelce eac heora wæpena*  
*noht lytel byrðen wæs* Ep. Al. 145<sup>149</sup>.

pl. dat. *mid wæpnum* Homl. Ass. XV, p. 171<sup>35</sup>; ~ Bd.  
1, 7, 36<sup>11</sup>; ~ Bd. 2, 9, 122<sup>28</sup>; *to ond mid wæpnum* Homl.  
Ass. IX, 175, 374; *mid wæpnum* Or. 3, 3, 102<sup>21</sup>; ~ Bl.  
Hom. 203<sup>17,39</sup>, 212<sup>2</sup>, 225<sup>33</sup>; *wið sceafan wæpnum* Cri. 775;  
~ An. 1291; ~ Ep. Al. 148<sup>287</sup>, 143<sup>83</sup>, 147<sup>211, 214</sup>, 144<sup>139</sup>.

pl. instr. *wælfyll weres wæpnum gespedeð* Gen. 1527;  
*ond þe wæpnum læt rancstræte forð rume wyrkan* Gen. 2111;  
*ponne deað nimeð wiga wælgifre wæpnum geþryfed* Ph. 486;  
*nis þæt sell-guma wæpnum geweorðad* B. 250; *wæs se iren-*  
*þreat wæpnum gewurþad* B. 331; *wigum ond wæpnum* B. 2395;  
*wigan mid wæpnum* By. 126; *mid gæsta wæpnum* Gud. 60;

~ Ap. 69; *wæpnum to wigge* El. 48; *scearpum wæpnum* Ridls. 4<sup>53</sup>; ~ Ridls. 21<sup>17</sup>.

Compounds. 1. *wæpen* as second member of the compound.

*beadu-wæpen* n. arma bellica: a battle weapon.

pl. acc. *swift ic eom on fepe, beado wæpen bere* Ridls. 16<sup>3</sup>.

pl. instr. *brunum beado-wæpnum* Ridls. 18<sup>8</sup>.

*camp-wæpen* n. arma bellica: a battle weapon.

pl. instr. *oft ic gæstberend cwelle compwæpnum* Ridls. 21<sup>9</sup>.

*here-wæpen* n. arma: weapon.

pl. instr. *heald me here-wæpnum* Ps. 34<sup>3</sup>.

*heoru-wæpen* n. weapon, sword.

pl. instr. *fuhton pearle heardum heoru-wæpnum* Jud. 263.

*hilde-wæpen* n. weapon.

pl. instr. *ne-hyrde ic cymlicor ceol gegyrwan hilde-wæpnum ond heado-wædum* B. 39.

*sige-wæpen* n. ensis Victoriosus: victorious weapon or sword.

pl. instr. *ac he sige-wæpnum forsworen hæfde* B. 804.

2. *wæpen* as first member of the compound.

*wæpen-berend* m. armatus: an armed man.

sg. nom. *se stronga woepenberend gehealdað* Lind. Lk. 11<sup>21</sup> (other readings Corp. *se stranga gewæpened*, H. *se strange ge-wæpned*, Rush.<sup>2</sup> *ðe stronga wependberend*).

*wæpen-bora* m. a warrior: gladium portantes.

sg. nom. armiger: *wæpnbora* Aelfc. Gr. 317<sup>19</sup>; 27<sup>17</sup>;

~ ib. WW. 332<sup>25</sup>; armiger: *wæpenbora* WW. 142<sup>9</sup>; bellicosus, pugnandi cupidus: *wigbære, wæpenbora* WW. 193<sup>17</sup>.

pl. nom. pugiles, i. gladiatores: *wæpenboren, cempan* OE. Gl. I, 751.

*wæpengecynd* n. veretrum: *wæpengecynd* WW. 160<sup>5</sup>.

*wēpen-getæc* or *-tac* n. a vote of consent expressed by touching weapons. Used in northern England while in the south *hundred* was used. Of Scan. origin, cf. Icel. *vāpna-tak*.

sg. dat. *ælc mon mid heora gewytnyssa bigcge and sylle ælc þeora ceapa, þe he bicgcge oððe sylle aþer oððe burge oððe wæpengetace* L. Edg. IV, Ges. Lieberm. p. 210 [6]; and *þær man sylle on wæpentake . . .* L. Eth. III, Ges. Lieberm. p. 228 [1, 2].

*wēpen-geþræc* (?) n. battle.

*ofsend woepen giðræcc*: effunde frameam Rtl. 168<sup>5</sup>. Quoted from B. T.

*wēpen-gewrixl* n. hostile encounter: pugna.

sg. nom. *þæt wæpen gewrixl weorðe gemæne þegene and þraele* Wulfst. 162<sup>7</sup>.

sg. gen. *gumena gemotes, wæpengewrixles* Aedelst. 51.

*wæpen-hete* m. violence, war.

sg. acc. *æðele sceoldon ðurh wæpenhete weorc þrowian* Ap. 80.

*wæpen-hus* n. armoury.

sg. nom. *armamentarium* : *wæpenhus* WW. 348<sup>13</sup>; id.: *wæpnahus* WW. 141<sup>40</sup>.

*wæpen-leas* adj. without weapons.

e virgine: *fram wæpenleasre* WW. 230<sup>1</sup>.

*wæpen-lic* adj. male.

calamus: *þæt wæpenlice lim* WW. 368<sup>26</sup>. preputia: *þa wæpenlican limo* WW. 470<sup>23</sup>, 471<sup>29</sup>.

*wæpen-mann* m. a male, a man.

sg. nom. vir: *wer, oððe wæpmann* WW. 310<sup>15</sup>; hic mas: *þes wæpmann* Aelfc. Gr. 50<sup>15</sup>.

omne masculinum: *eghwelc he, woepen-mon* Lind. Lk. II<sup>23</sup> (other readings *ælc wæpned* Corp., *ælc wæpnyd* H., *eghwelc wepenmon* Rush.<sup>2</sup>).

pl. gen. *neh six hundred wæpmanna* Prs. Exod. XVII<sup>18</sup>;  
*on wæpmonna wysan* Homl. Skt. I, 2<sup>60</sup>.

*wæpen-stræl* m. s. *stræl*.

*wæpen-pracu* f. armorum impetus, pugna : battle.

sg. acc. *Heht þa on uhtan . . . wigend wreccan and wæpenþræce* El. 106.

sg. instr. *mid wæpenþræce* Gen. 2290.

*wæpen-wifestre* f. hermafroditus.

sg. nom. hermafroditus : *wæpen-wifestre*, uel *scritta uel bæddel* WW. 161<sup>11</sup>.

*wæpen-wiga* m. bellator armatus : warrior.

sg. nom. *ic wæs wæpenwiga* Ridls. 15<sup>1</sup>.

derived are:

*wæpned* (armatus) masculus, vir. S. Grein, Sprach-schatz I. 648 and B. T. Dic.

*wæpned-bearn* n. a male child.

sg. dat. *fore wepned-bearne* Bd. 1, 27, 76<sup>a</sup>.

*wæpned-cynn* n. male race.

sg. nom. masculinum: *wæpned cyn* WW. 444<sup>7</sup>.

sg. gen. *on gehwilcne wæpned cynnes* Gen. 2312, 2319;  
*þe his hina wæs wæpned cynnes* Gen. 2372; *fordon anra gehwilc ut alædde wæpnedcynnes wigan æghwilcne* Exod. 188;  
*ic þa wiht geseah wæpnedcynnes geogudmyrwe grædig* Ridls. 39<sup>1</sup>.

*wæpned-had* m. male sex.

sg. gen. *sua hwæt swa si wæpned hades* Prs. Num. I<sup>1</sup>;  
*ond me þæt on læne gelid þet gesibbra ærfeweard forþcymed wæpned-hades* Chart. Th. 483<sup>17</sup>.

*wæpned-hand* f. the male side of descent.

gen. pl. *swa wif handa swa wæpned handa swaðer ic wylle* Chart. Th. 491<sup>32</sup>.

*wæpned-healf* f. the male side or line.

sg. acc. *on þa wæpned-healfe* Chart. Th. 491<sup>16</sup>.

*wæpned-mann* m. man.

sg. nom. *mares : wæpnedman* WW. 449<sup>20</sup>; *ond ælc wæpnedmon* Or. 4, 10, 196<sup>21</sup>; *ælc wæpned-man ætyd beforan drihtne* Prs. Exod. XXIII<sup>17</sup>.

sg. dat. *þu scealt wæpned-men wesan on gewealde* Gen. 919; *wiggryre wifes be wæpned-men* B. 1284.

nom. acc. pl. *wæpned-men* Ep. Al. 158<sup>506</sup>.

pl. gen. *swa hit mon on þara wæpned-monna gebærum on gitan mehte* Or. 4, 10, 194<sup>9</sup>.

pl. dat. *{mid wif-mannum and wæpned-mannum* Bl. Homl. 79<sup>19</sup>.

*wæpnung* f. (ð) armour, used collectively for weapons. armatura: *wæpnunge* OE. Gl. 1<sup>785</sup>; *mid ormætere* ~ Hom. Ass. 74<sup>44</sup>; *mid his ge-* ~ Homl. Skt. I, 3<sup>251</sup>; *mid ormettre* ~ Homl. Skt. I, 18<sup>21</sup>.

Meaning. arma : weapons, everything belonging to the war-equipment of a warrior.

Etymology. To OE. *wæpen*, ME. *wēpen*, NE. *weapon*, correspond: Goth. *wēpn*, OFrs. *wēpen*, OSax. *wāpan*, Du. *wapen*, ON. *vāpn*, Dan. *vaaben*, Swed. *väpen* all from a Germ. form \**wēpna-* (*wēbna-*) from Idg.\* *wēbno-* beside OHG. *wāfan*, *wāffan*, NHG. *wäfen*, NHG. *waffe* from Germ.\* *wēfna* — from Idg. *wēpno* —. The Germ. stem according to Kaufmann (PBB. XII, 527) is *wēf*: *wēb*, the Cons. of the stem showing West-Germ. Cons. lengthening before n. The West-Germ. gemm. of t is found in the upper German dialects, the p of OE. *wæpen*, ON. *vāpn*, M. Frank. *wäpen* etc. being traced back to a common Germ. assimilation of t n > pp, n being retained, however, in the cases with the accent on the stem vowel, and pp after the long sonant being simplified to p. Similar is the case of ff < f n,

which is simplified after the long sonant in the same manner as p. Cf. Swiss. *wäffv*, Swab. *wäffv* (Kluge, Beitr. IX, p. 159). Kaufmann and Kluge admit the possibility of relationship with Gr. ὄπλον, supposing the double Idg. root (Kluge, Etym. Wb. 411) *wop:wēb*. Whether this is to be connected with Skt. root *vap* 'to sow, to strew' is uncertain.

---

## II. Weapons of Attack.

### I. The Spear.

#### Aesc.

Forms. *aesc* m. (i).

References. 1. Spear with shaft made of ash wood, sg. nom. *aesc acwehite* By. 310.

sg. acc. *Byrhtnoð . . . wānd wacne aesc* By. 43.

gen. pl. *þe ðe aescā tir æt guðe forgeaf* Gen. 2108; *eorlas fornoman aasca prype* Wand. 99.

dat. pl. *beornas comon, wigendra þreat . . . aescum dealle* An. 1097; *swa ic . . . weold under wolcnum ond hig wigge beleac manigum mægþa geond þyne middan-geard aescum ond ecgum* B. 1772; and *eorlas aescum dealle (ofer wætres byht wægn to lande)* Ridls. 23<sup>11</sup>.

2. Ash tree (the original meaning).

*fraxinus : aesc* WW. 23<sup>12</sup>.

3. a ship.

*dromo : aesc* WW. 287<sup>13</sup>; id.: ~ uel *barð* WW, 181<sup>14</sup>.

4. The Runic letter æ. *F (aesc) biþ oferheah . . .* Run. 81.

Compounds. 1. with *aesc* as first member of the compound.

*æsc-berend* m. spear bearer, warrior.

pl. nom. *nalas late wærон eorre æsc berend to þane or lege* An. 47; *eorre æsc-berend* An. 1076; *weras cwanedon, ealde æscberend* An. 1537.

pl. gen. *he þær wigena fand æscberendra* XVIII.  
Gen. 2041.

*æsc-here* m. the spear array, army.

sg. nom. *se æsc-here* By. 69.

*æsc-holt* n. spear.

sg. acc. *æscholt asceoc* By. 230.

pl. nom. *garas stodon, . . . æsc-holt ufan græg* B. 330.

*æsc-plega* m. spear play, battle.

sg. dat. *æt ðam æsc-plegan* Jud. 217.

*æsc-rōf* adj. spear-renowned, warlike.

sg. nom. *goldwine gumena . . . æsc-rof, unslaw* El. 202.

pl. nom. *eorlas æsc-rofe* El. 275; ~ Jud. 337.

*æsc-stede* m. battle-place.

sg. nom. *hwylc æscstede inne in ræcede mid werum wunige* Môd. 17.

*æsc-tir* m. glory in war.

sg. nom. *Sigor eft ahwearf of nordmonna niðgeteone æscfir wera* Gen. 2069.

*æsc-þracu* f. spear violence, battle.

sg. dat. *æt æsc-þræce* Gen. 2153.

*æsc-wiga* m. warrior.

pl. nom. *wærон æsc-wigan* El. 259.

2. with *æsc* as second element of compound.

*daroð-æsc* (?) m. s. daroð.

**Etymology.** A term for spear common to the Germ. dialects. Refer to P. B. B. XXVI, p. 295, Kluge, Etym. Wb. p. 99, Murray New English Dic.

### AEt-gār.

Forms. 1. *ætgār, ategār* m (a).

2. *ætgærū, ætgero*, st. m. [?] (u) Sievers § 273, Anm. 4.

3. *æt-gāre, ætgare* (*æt-gāre, -gāre* Sweet. Stud. Dic.) n.

References. 1. *ætgār, ategār*.

sg. nom. falarica i. theca gladii, teli genus, uel aste grandis (MS. R. hasta), uel lancea magna: *ætgar* WW. 235<sup>15</sup>; falarica : *fyrdwērod, feohitgegyrdan, ætgar*, uel genus teli WW. 399<sup>81</sup>.

nom. acc. pl. ansatas : *atēgaras* OE. Gl. II, 502; ansatas (hastas) : *spreotas*, ~ WW. 343<sup>85</sup>.

gen. pl. falarica : *atēgara* OE. Gl. I, 5023; phalarica (gl. i. hasta): ~ Hpt. Gl. 425<sup>14</sup>.

dat. pl. falarica, i. genus teli : *atēgarum* OE. Gl. I, 786; anscuta (for ansata) : *tītegarum* (?) misreading for *atēgarum* (?) cf. Leo's Glossar, p. 400<sup>9</sup> and 555<sup>59</sup>.

2. *ætgærū, ætgero*.

sg. nom. framea : *ætgærū* WW. 23<sup>15</sup>; framea : ~, *ætgaru* Ep. Er. 440; ~ Corp. 922; falarica : *ætgero* Corp. 839; falarica : *ægtero* [for *ætgero*] WW. 21<sup>22</sup>.

3. *ætgāre, ætgare*.

sg. nom. falarica : *ætgare* OE. Gl. 8<sup>312</sup>; framea : *sweord, oððe* ~ WW. 404<sup>16</sup>; (sg. nom. ?) ansatae : *ætgāre* WW. 6<sup>8</sup>, Corp. 167.

Meaning. falarica, ansata, framea : spear, lance. Here framea is used with the meaning 'spear' except above framea, *sweord, oððe ætgare* : where it is equivalent to either sword or spear. Falarica has also the meaning of 'spear' cf. falarica : *spere* WW. 142<sup>11</sup>, ~ *wigspere* WW. 143<sup>14</sup> etc. Ansata also has the meaning of 'spear, lance', cf. ansatas : *speru* WW. 516<sup>2</sup>.

San Marte, Waffenkunde p. 151, attempts to prove that OHG. *azgēr* has the meaning of 'sword', referring it to the sharp short Asiatic sword. He cites the passage from Wigalois 10671: "*Starchin sper von angeran man fuorte mit den fürsten dan wol zwein zech fuoder ode mēr. Gabilot und ategēr truogen die sariande*". "The last named weapons" says San Marte "stand here in contrast to the strong spears of the princes, neither *gabilot* nor *atiger* being knightly weapons: it is striking, however, that the squires should be provided with two light spears." By referring to *gar*, however, it will be seen that there are two classes, the heavy and the light (cf. WW. 235<sup>15</sup> — falarica i. theca gladii, teli genus, uel aste grandis, uel lancea magna), so that here the *ategēr* may be presumed to be the heavy lance, the *gabilot* the lighter one.

**Etymology.** The Compound *ætgār* appears in all the Germ. dialects, Goth. excepted, cognate forms being: OHG. *azigēr*, *azgēr*; OFris. *etger*; ON. *atgeirr*; MHG. *atigēr*; and in OFr. as loan word from the Norse *agier* or *algeir* (cf. Rol., Bartsch, Chres., p. 37 l. 34 for the unusual form *atgiers*).

Grimm (Gramm. II, 717) regards the word as compounded of the prep. and prefix Idg. *ad-*, Lat. *ad-* 'to', Norse, Goth., OSax. *at-*, OHG. *az-* 'to, by'. NE. *at-*, OE. *æt-*, + *gar*. *æt* is here used in *ætgār* only as an intensive. Cf. also Lt. compound *ad-duco* etc.

### Daroð.

**Forms.** *daroð*, *-eð*, *-að*, *deareþ*, *deoreþ* m. (a). (For "jüngere Vokalwechsel" s. Sievers A.-S. Gramm. § 129, for explanation of forms such as *dareðum*, *dareða*. For *deareð* with u uml. cf. Sievers A.-S. Gramm. § 103, Anm. 2).

References. sg. nom. *daroð sceal on handa* Gn.  
(C.) 21.

sg. acc. *forlet þa drenga sum daroð of handa* By. 149;  
(he) *daroð acwehte* By. 255.

pl. nom. *daroðas wæron weo þære wihte and se wudu  
searwum fæste gebunden* Ridls. 57<sup>4</sup>.

pl. gen. part of a loom — *þurh daroða gedrep* An. 1444,  
remains of an army — *dreorig daroða laf* Aædelst. 54.

pl. dat. *dareðum lacan* B. 2848.

Compounds. 1. With *daroð* as first member of compound.

*daroð-æsc* (?) m. spear ash, spear.

pl. nom. *flugon daroð æsc, hildenædran* El. 140.

*daroð-hæbbende* m. warrior, javelin bearing.

sg. nom. *þa reordode rices hyrde wið þære fæmnan  
fæder frecne mode daraðhæbbende* Jul. 68.

*daroð-lacende* javelin-brandishing, warrior.

pl. nom. *and of burgsalum beornþreat monig farað fold  
wegum folca þryfum, eoredcystum ofestum gefysde dareðla-  
cende* Pan. 53; *feðan-trymedon eoredcestum, þæt on ælfylce  
deareð lacende* El. 37.

pl. gen. *hwæt þær eallra wæs . . . dareð lacendra* [reading  
of Zupitza *lacende*] *deadra gefeallan* El. 651.

*daroð-sceaft* m. spear-shaft, spear.

pl. dat. *under deoreðsceaftum* Gen. 1984.

Meaning. A light throwing spear or javelin —  
from the references apparently synonymous to the lighter  
sort of *gār*.

Etymology. Cognates to OE. *daroð* are found in  
all the Germanic branches except the Goth. — OHG. *tart*  
'lance', MHG. *dard*, MLat. *dardus* (Germanic loan word);  
ON. *darraðr* m. 'spear bearer' [*dorr* m. 'spear']; Swed. *dart*

'a dagger'. From MLat. *dardus* come OFr., Prov. *dart*; It., Span. *dardo*, and from the OFr. form is taken ME. *dart*, appearing in Chancer, while the OE. form has been lost (cf. the verb 'to *dart*'). The word appears also in Slav. Hung. as *darda* 'a throwing spear, an arrow' a Germanic loan word, probably from the OSax. (s. Pauls. Grdr. p. 361). It appears in Russ. as *drot* < \**dürotū*; in Rouman. as *dardă* from MLat. *dardus*. It is related to the OE. verb *dērian* 'to injure, destroy'.

The attempt of Sarrazin PBB. XI, p. 173 to classify *daroð* as a Norse loan word is refuted by Sievers at p. 356 of the same Vol.

### Francia.

Form. *franca* m. (an).

References. Sg. nom. *þa stod his franca* Homl. Skt. I 3<sup>266</sup>.

sg. dat. *mid his francan* By. 77.

sg. acc. *he let his francan wadan þurh ðæs hysses hals* By. 140.

nom. acc. pl. *francan wæron hlude* Gen. 1982; *ond twegen francan* Chart. Th. 516<sup>19</sup> (a later copy of this will p. 518 reads *frangen*).

Meaning. A spear, lance, or javelin, corresponding to the *gār*.

Etymology. Müllenhoff (Z. f. d. A. VII 19ff.) states that the name of the battle axe of the Franks, the *franca*, is derived from the name of the people, and furthermore that not only this weapon, but the *franca* of the Anglo-Saxons, and the Norse *frakka* (loan word), *frakki* are of like origin.

Grimm (G. d. d. Spr. 512 ff.) makes a similar statement, connecting the name of the people with an adjective derived from the root of the Goth. adj. *freis*, NHG. *frei* meaning 'a free born man'. Grimm's supposition, however, that framea is a corruption of Germ. *franca* arising from a misunderstanding on the part of the Romans of the German word is hardly tenable.

Kluge, Etym. Wb. p. 122, on the other hand, derives the name of the people from a Germ. \**franko* meaning 'a spear', from whence OE. *franca*. This is, however, not generally accepted, and it is possible to say with a fair degree of certainty that the name of the people has given the name to the weapon. Concerning the origin of this name, however, there is still considerable controversy. Cf. Grimm (G. d. d. Spr. 513—517) and Fick (Vgl. Wb. I 484).

The Norse word *frakka* f. found only once in the Rígsmaðl 32 is probably an OE. loan word, while the masc. *frakki* 'a kind of weapon' found in the compounds *hraefrakki* 'a corpse fluke, the blade of a sword' (Gisla Saga 7), and *akkeris fluke* 'an anchor fluke' in the Forn-søgur 996, points to early borrowing direct from the WGerm., both borrowings, however, occurring at a period before nk was assimilated to kk, which development was already completed in the Viking Age (cf. Noreen aisl. Gramm. § 207<sup>3</sup>).

### Gād.

Forms. *gād*, *gaad* f. (ð). (Grein, Sprachschatz Bd. I, p. 366, gives the form as *gadu* f., mod. E. *goad*, however, speaks for ā.)

References. sg. nom. *stiga* : *gaad* WW. 49<sup>1</sup>; ~ Corp. 1937; *stimulus* : *ga[d]* WW 105<sup>5</sup>; *stimulus* : *gad* WW. 313<sup>38</sup>; *cuspis* : ~ WW. 275<sup>34</sup>, 369<sup>14</sup>.

sg. acc. *hafað guð-mæcga gierde lange, gyldene gade*  
Sal. 91.

- Meaning. 1. mucro : a point of an instrument.  
2. cuspis : a spear or arrow head.  
3. stimulus, stiga : sting, prick, goad.

Compound.

*gad-isen* n. stimulus : goad.

aculeus : *sticel*, uel *gadisene*, WW. 105<sup>6</sup>; cum stimulo : *mid gadisene* WW. 90<sup>19</sup>.

Etymology. OE. *gād*, ME. *gōd*, NE. *goad* identical with Langobard. *gaida* ‘spear’, from Germ. \**gaidō*, Idg. \**ghai-tā*, is related to OE. *gār*, and is derived from the same root \**ghi* or \**ghai*. S. *gār*.

Radically related are: OHG. *gart* ‘rod, staff, twig’, Goth. *gazds* (s. Pauls Grdr. p. 324), ON. *gaddr* ‘a goad’ from a Germ. base \**gazda-* probably identical with Lat. *hasta* from Idg. \**ghazdhā*. The NE. *goad* ‘an instrument with a sharp point for driving cattle’, is not identical with ME., NE. *gad*, which is a loan word from ON. *gaddr*. According to Uhlenbeck (PBB. XIX. p. 519 ff.) Mod. Eng. *yard* in *yard stick* < OE. *gerd (gyrd)* corresponding to OHG. *gerta, garte* ‘rod, twig’, MHG., NHG. *gerte* is to be separated from Germ. \**gazda*. Cf., however, Kluge, Etym. Wb. p. 142, who sets the Germ. base for *gerd* as \**gazdjō*.

### Gafeluc.

Forms. *gafeluc* nom. pl., *gavelucas* m. (a).

References. sg. dat. Jaculo (i. sagitta) : *fla, zafe* . . . *wiuer* OE. Gl. 1<sup>1103</sup> reading of MS. R. *flan* or *flane*, *gaveluce*, of Hpt. Gl. 432<sup>4</sup> *fla(ne)*, *vi(d)bere*, *gaveluca*.

nom. acc. pl. *hastilia* : *gafelucas* WW. 143<sup>6</sup>; *catapultas*:

~, *sagittas* Hpt. Gl. 405<sup>14</sup>; *catapultas* : *arewan*, ~ OE. Gl. 1<sup>4288</sup>.

pl. dat. *hi scuton pa mid gafelucum* Hom. Skt. II, 32<sup>116</sup>

Meaning. *hastilia*: a light spear, a dart, a javelin, a hunting spear. This kind of dart was carried in a quiver, and the skill in throwing it was known in MHG. as the *Swanc*. It was not a knightly weapon, and was used chiefly for hunting.

Etymology. *Gafeluc* is a very rarely recorded late OE. word of Celtic origin, most likely taken from Cymr. *gaflach* meaning 'a spear'.

The form *gauelot* occurring in a late ME. glossar missile: *an<sup>ee</sup> a shafte* and *a shetel* and *a gauelot* WW. 596<sup>23</sup>, shows not the OE. but the Fr. form, which was in Norm. Fr. of the 12<sup>th</sup> century *gavelot*, Central Fr. *javelot*, but had no influence whatever upon the OE. form. Thurneysen (s. Keltoromanisches p. 63) traces the related French *javelot*, *gavelot*, *glavelot*, *gavrelot*; It. *giavelotto* to a \**gavl-el-ot*, derived from a vulg. Lt. form such as \**gabal-ellus*, the Celtic origin of which is probably Celt. \**gabalu* 'forked branch, a fork' (Stokes II. Bd., Ficks, Idg. Wb. p. 105), derivatives of which are Ir. *gabul*, *gobul* f.; NIr. *gabhal*; Gael. *gobhall*; Cymr. *gafl*; Bret. *gavl*, *gaol* all fem. The Ir. pl. of *gabhal* is *gabhlá* once glossed with *sleagha* pl. 'a throwing spear' (s. Oclery, Rev. Celt. IV, 428). Finally says Thurneysen the Eng. form *gaflac*, *gafeloc* could correspond to the Celt. adj. \**gabalacos*; Bret. \**gavloc* 'forked'. Cf. NIr. *gabhlach*; Gael. *gobhlach*; Cymr. *gaflog* 'forked'. To *gafeluc* are related the NE. words *gaff* 'a light fishing spear', OFr. *gaffe*, from Ir. *gaf*, *gafa* 'a hook', and *gable* 'the peak of a house top', Low Lt. *gabulum* 'a gable'. The *gaveluc* itself has remained in NE. in dialect but not in

the literary language; cf. the *gavelack* of the north of England recorded in 'Tour to the Caves' 1781 (E. D. S. 1, 5, 6, 23, p. 6) with the meaning of 'iron crow'. Again in a gloss. of the Provincialisms of East Yorkshire in 1788 (see above p. 28) occurs the form *gearlac* 'an iron crow for raising stones', and from the West Riding of Yorkshire *gavelock* 'a strong iron bar used as a lever' (see above p. 88) from a list of ancient words communicated by Robert Willan in 1811 to Vol. XVII of the Archaeologia.

Related to *gaveluc* and from the same root are the German *Giebel* 'gable', and *Gabel* 'fork'. Related to the former is Gr. *κεφαλή*, Got. *gibla*, OHG. *gibil* 'giebel' and *gēbal* 'Kopf' with Ablaut to ON. *gafl* 'gable', which are derived from a ground form \*Idg. *g'hebilo-* 'gable, head' (see Fick I, 415), which Franck (Etym. Woordenboek p. 290) connects with a possible Idg. root \**g'hebh-* vertex, top. In Ablaut to *gēbal* etc. is OHG. *gabala* 'fork', Celt. *gabalu* (Ir. *gabul*), NHG. *gabel*. Some connect it with OI. *gábhastis* (s. Uhlenbeck, ai. Wb. p. 77) from the Idg. root \**ghabh* 'fassen, to seize'?

For the relation in meaning of head, gable, fork it may be conjectured that the primitive meaning of 'vertex, top' gave rise to the sense of 'gable', a gable being originally formed by two pieces of timber crossed at the top, which later developed the meaning of 'forked, a fork' (see Murray NED. under *gable*).

### Gār.

Forms. *gar* pl. nom. *gāras* m. (a).

References. sg. nom. *fleag giellende gar on grome peode* Wid. 128; *gar golde fah* Gn. (C.) 22; *gar on sceafte* Gn. (Ex.) 203; *þest-ðe gar nymed* B. 1846; *sumne sceall gar*

*agetan Wy, 16; forðon sceall gar wesan monig morgen-ceald mundum bewunden B. 3021; gar oft þurhwod fæges feorh hus By. 296.*

sg. gen. *gylpplegan gares* Exod. 240; *oððe gares flift* B. 1765; *ðurh gares gripe* An. 187; *mid gares orde* Gen. 1522; *lætað gares ord, eark attre gemæl in gedufan in fæges ferð* An. 1330.

sg. dat. *spiculo* (gl. pectato): *gare, vifele* Hpt. Gl. 432<sup>18</sup>.

sg. instr. *hie on gebyrd hruron gare wunde* B. 1075; *ond his mæg ofscet . . . blodigan gare* B. 2440; *mid gare* By. 138; *gæston godes cempan gare and lige* Jul. 17.

sg. acc. *jaculum*: *gar* WW. 81<sup>41</sup>; *ongan þa forð beran gar to guþe* By. 13; *þa hwile þe he wæpen mæge habban and healdan . . . gar and god swurd* By. 237; *oft he gar forlet* By. 321; *sende ða se særinc superne gar* By. 134; *gegríp gar and scyld* Ps. XXXIV<sup>2</sup>.

nom. acc. pl. *hi willað eow to gafole garas syllan* By. 46; *hi togædere garas beron* By. 67; *hi leton þa of folman feolhearde speru gegrundene garas . . . fleogan* By. 109; (*hie*) *garas sendon in heardra gemang* Jud. 224; *garas hixton* El. 23, 125; *garas hrysedon* An. 127; *garas stodon* B. 328; *garas trymedon* Exod. 158; *gripon unfægre under sceat werum scearpe garas* Gen. 2064; *hetend heoru grimme . . . garas ofer geolo rand . . . forð onsendan* El. 118; *siþpan hy togædre garas hlændon* Jul. 63; *þæt þe þurhgangan garas on ðeostrum* Ps. XC<sup>6</sup>; *eft gewurdon on gescot feohta scearpe garas* Ps. LIV<sup>21</sup>. *spicula i. sagittae*: *garas* OE. Gl. I 2098, Hpt. Gl. 405<sup>16</sup>; *spicula i. sagittae*: ~ Hpt. Gl. 455<sup>37</sup>; *hy gyllende garas sændan* M. C. 14.

pl. gen. *spicularum*: *ga . . .* OE. Gl. I <sup>4481</sup>, *gara* Hpt. Gl. 510<sup>32</sup>, MS. R. *gara*; *jaculorum*: *scotsper[a]*, ~ Hpt. Gl. 405<sup>18</sup>; *gara ordum* An. 32; *an gara laf* Gen. 2019.

pl. dat. *ulcea* : *garan* (late WS.) WW. 332<sup>10</sup>; *eodon* him *þa togenes garum gehyrsted* An. 45; *modige maguþegnas . . . woldon . . . garum ageten* An. 1143; *þær læg secg monig garum ageted* Aedelst. 18.

Compounds. 1. with *gar* as second member of the compound.

*æt-gar* s. *ætgār*.

*ban-gar, bon-gar* m. deadly spear. (Cf. *bana*, *bona* 'murderer'.)

*bon-gar bugeð* B. 2031.

*frum-gar* m. chief, general.

sg. nom. *and se frumgar* Gen. 1183.

sg. dat. *on ðam frum-gare* B. 2856; *to þam frumgare* Jul. 685.

nom. acc. pl. *þæt þa frumgaras be feore dæde* Dan. 101; *þa gesammedon side herigeas folces frumgaras* An. 1068.

pl. dat. *mid frumgarum* Gen. 2116; *of ðam' frumgarum* Gen. 2614.

*frum-gara* m. leader.

sg. nom. *se frumgara* Gen. 1169.

sg. dat. *gif du ðam frumgaran bryde wyrnest* Gen. 2659.

nom. acc. pl. *frumgaran þry* Gen. 1334; *and þa frumgaran . . . wæron* Gen. 1708.

dat. pl. *þa he his frumgaran wishydig wer wordum sægde* Gen. 2052.

*Hyge-gar* m. wile, device.

sg. acc. . . *hyggar leteð, scurum sceoteþ* Mod. 34.

*nabo-gar* m. auger.

rotnum : *nabogar* Corp. 1754; *terrebellus* — *terebellus*: *nabfogar* — *naboger* Ep. <sup>1010</sup>, Er. <sup>2002</sup>; *terebellus* : *nëbugaar* Leid. Gl. 196.

*tite-gar* s. ætgār.

*wæl-gar* m. slaughter spear.

sg. nom. *wælgar* slited Reim. 61.

2. with *gar* as first member of compound.

*gar-beam* m. javelin-shaft.

sg. gen. . . . *garbeames feng* Exod. 246.

*gar-berend* m. warrior.

nom. pl. *grame gar-berend . . . feohtan* By. 262.

gen. pl. *hæfde cista gehwicl . . . garberendra* Exod. 231.

*gar-cene* adj. brave, warlike.

sg. nom. *Offa wæs . . . gar-cene man* B. 1958.

*gar-clife* f. agrimony.

agrimoni : *garclife* WW. 296<sup>14</sup>.

*gär-cwealm* m. slaughter.

sg. nom. *se ðe eall geman gar-cwealm gumena* B. 2043.

*Gär-Dēne* pl. Danes s. Beowulf — for the numerous names of persons formed with *gar* s. Sweet OET. p. 586 ff. This formation with *gar* is frequent also in Norse cf. *Geira-hod* 'name of a Walkyre', *geir-brú* 'the spear-bridge' etc.

*gar-faru* f. warlike expedition.

sg. dat. *pufas wundon ofer garfare* Exod. 343.

pl. acc. *deofla strælas . . . gromra gar-fare* Cri. 781,

meaning here 'flight of weapons (spears)'.

*gar-hēap* m. warlike troop.

sg. dat. *in þam garheape* Exod. 321.

*gar-holt* n. javelin-shaft, javelin.

sg. acc. *þat ic þe wel-herige . . . gar-holt bere* B. 1834.

*gär-lēac* n. garlic.

al(l)ium : *garlēc* — *garlec* Ep. <sup>16</sup>, Er. <sup>113</sup>; al(l)ium : *gaarleec* Corp. 113; *garleac* Lchdm. II <sup>724</sup>.

*gar-mitting* f. battle.

sg. gen. *ðæt hi beado - weorca beteran wurdon on camp - stede cumbolgehnastes, gar - mittinge, gumena gemotes Aðelst. 50.*

*gār-nīþ* m. war.

sg. acc. *garnīþ werum, wig towīþre wicfreoda healdan*  
Gn. (Ex.) 128.

*gār-rās* m. battle.

sg. acc. *ðisne garrās* By. 32.

*gar-sēcg* m. ocean. (Cf. Grimm, Hpt. Z. I 578).

S. Grein, Sprachschatz I, 370 and B.T.

*gār-torn* m. rage of battle.

sg. acc. *gartorn geotað gifrum deofle* Sal. 145.

*gār-getrum* n. band of warriors, shower of missiles.

sg. acc. *þonne gargetrum ofer scild - hreadan sceotend sendað, flacor flangeweore* Cri. 674.

*gar-pracu* f. battle.

sg. dat. *æt garpræce* El. 1185.

*gār-priste, prist* adj. brave.

sg. nom. *se aðeling . . . guð-heard, garprist* El. 204.

*gār-wiga* m. warrior.

sg. dat. *geongum garwigan* B. 2674; *þegne gesalde, geongum gar-wigan, gold-fahne helm* B. 2811.

*gār-wigend* m.

pl. acc. *þe he usic gar-wigend gode tealde* B. 2641.

*gār-gewinn* n.

sg. gen. *þegnas on ða tid þearle gelyste gargewinnes*  
Jud. 308.

sg. acc. *grim gargewinn* An. 958.

*gār-wudu* m. spear-shaft, spear.

sg. acc. *þonne hie to guðe garwudu rærdon* Exod. 325.

Meaning. 1. A heavy spear for throwing in contrast to the lighter *darōþ* or javelin. The use of the compound

*gar-beam* points to a heavy weapon (Exod. 246), while *gares flīht* (El. 117, B. 1766) bears evidence that it was used for throwing, cf. also *gyllende garas* M. C. 14. From the Gaungan-Hrolf Saga the inference may be drawn that, like the *framea* of Tacitus, the *gār* or *æt-gār* was used in Scandinavia not only for throwing but for thrusting. (See Gaungan Hrolf's Saga, cap. 18.) “*Sōti hafði atgeirr at wega med, ok gerði ymist, hann hjō eðr lugði*” (hewed struck or thrust), and also “*Sotí hjō til Hrolfs . . . ok søkk atgeriun i jorð hina allt upp at hóndum honum*” proving that the heavy *gar* or *atgar* was grasped with both hands when giving a blow, with which compare By. (138) *he mid gare stang wlancne wicing . . .*

2. Beside this heavy weapon there must have been a lighter *gar*, inasmuch as the word is frequently employed to translate M.-Lat. *spicula* a very light kind of throwing spear or dart (“*Spiculae sunt sagittae vel lanceae brevis ab spicarum specie nuncupatae*” Isidorus Origines 18, 8<sup>2</sup>). This *spicula* corresponds to Lt. *cuspis*, and made up in sharpness what it lacked in weight (cf. Nonius Lt. *gaesum* = *telum tenerum*).

**Etymology.** The word *gar* with its cognate forms is found in all the Germanic dialects cf. OHG. *gēr*, *kēr*; MHG. *gēr*; ON. *geirr*; OSax. *gēr* meaning ‘spear’, all pointing to a Germ. \**gaiza-*.

Schrader (Real. Lex. under Spiess) suggests, however, Celtic borrowing from OGall. \**gaiso-n* (s. Stokes in Vol. II of Ficks Idg. Wb. p. 104); cf. Gall. *gaiso-n*, *gaiso-s*, Ir. *gae*, *gai*, *ghai* Cymr. *gwaew*, Corn. *gew* meaning ‘a spear’, which passed over into Lat. as *gaesum* as early as the time of Virgil (Aeneas lib. VIII, p. 662), and into Gr. as γαῖος (vgl. Kluge, Etym. Wb. p. 141), and the article entitled

Gaesetae in Ersch u. Grubers Encyclopädie I. Sec., Bd. 52 p. 160). According to Schrader this word was borrowed very early by the Germans appearing in Gothic as second element in compound proper names such as *Chario-gaisus*, *Lanio-gaisus*, which Grimm (Gramm. 2, 46 No. 511) connects with a verb Goth. *geisan* : *gais* appearing only in the compound Goth. *us-geisnan* 'schlagen, stoßen', which Uhlenbeck (Goth. Wb. p. 161) connects with *us-gaisjan* 'to terrify', related to Lit. *šeidžiu* 'verwunde', which, however, is related not to OE. *gar* but to *gäst*, NE. *ghost*. Although the Germ. forms may be of Celtic origin, nevertheless there is a strong probability that Germ. \**gaiza-* and Celtic *gaiso-n* are radically related, being descended from a common \**ghaiso-*, corresponding to which is Skt. *heśas* 'a shot', (s. Uhlenbeck, Ai. Wb. p. 362; Fick, Idg. Wb. I 433), Gr. *χαῖος* 'a shepherd's staff'. *Hēśas* is perhaps to be connected with aorist stem *hēs*: *hinōti* from the OI. root *hi-* 'to drive, set in motion, hurl'. Cf. also OI. *hetis* f. 'shot, weapon', and Langobard. *gaida* f. 'a spear'.

*Gār* has no connection with Goth. *gairu* spear 2. Cor. 12<sup>7</sup>, as that would have given an ON. form *gārr* not *geirr*, in ON. every Germ. ai becoming ā before a Germ. r (see Kahles Altisl. Elementarbuch § 93).

Skeat (Etym. Dic.) derives the modern English verb to *gore* 'to pierce or stab deeply' from OE. *gār*. Murray (NE. Dic.) regards this as extremely doubtful, although the coincidence in form and meaning is striking, citing the early ME. form *gorre* with short o (several times recorded), as proof against it (s. Alex. 3645 *pare was many of Perses gorred*; Coverdale Esek. 23 *gorre*), inasmuch as ME. ö in a closed syllable could not give NE. *gōre*. As direct derivative of OE. *gar* Murray (NE. Dic.) gives ME.

*gäre* (northern form) 'a spear', NE. *gare* 'a light spear', now obsolete. Closely connected is NE. *gore* 'a triangular piece of cloth' from OE. *gara*; MDu. *ghere*; OHG. *gero*; MHG. *gehre*; ON. *geire*; NHG. *gehren*\* all with reference to shape of spear head. Cf. Fr. *gyron*.

### Mægen-wudu.

The wood of strength, mighty spear i. e. kenning for spear occurring in B. l. 236. Cf. *gleo-beam* 'joy wood' used for the harp.

### Pil.

Forms. *pil* nom. pl. *pilas* m. (a). *pilu* (?) WW. 126<sup>31</sup>.

Meaning. 1. *pil* has in Anglo-Saxon the meaning of 'a stick with a point, a spike, a stake, prickle'.

pl. nom. and acc. *pilas* Lchdm. I, 304<sup>1</sup> (= prickles).

pl. dat. *mid iscnum pilum* Homl. Sk. I 5<sup>388</sup>; acutissimis sudibus : *mid scearpum pilum* Bd. 1, 2; *on þam pilum* Homl. Sk. I 5<sup>389</sup> (= spikes).

Compounds.

*hilde-pil* m. a dart, bolt, javelin.

nom. pl. *hu me of hrife fleogat hyldepilas* Ridls. 18<sup>6</sup>.

dat. pl. *and þurh hest hrino hildepilum lað gewinnum* Ridls. 16<sup>28</sup>.

*orpan c-pil* m. cunning point.

sg. nom. *me þurh hrycg wrecen hongap under an orþonc-pil* Ridls. 22<sup>12</sup>.

*searo-pil* m. pointed instrument.

pl. gen. *min heafod is homere geþuren, searo-pila wund* Ridls. 91<sup>1</sup>.

\* Gehren (Grimms Wb.) = Die Heraldik bezeichnet einen Schild, der in Dreiecke geteilt ist, welche in der Mitte zusammenstoßen, als 'gegeret' (frz. *gironné*, span. *gironado*).

*wæl-pil* m. a death arrow.

pl. dat. *awrecen wælpilum* Güð. 1127.

*dægmæls-pilu* f. (?) (according to Pogatscher a mistake for *dægmæls pil* m.) gnomon : *dægmæls pilu* WW. 126<sup>81</sup> the style of a dial, horlogii gnomon.

Etymology. A Latin loan word (s. Pogatscher, § 143, 284), from *pilum* 'a spear', which has gone over from the Lat. o dec. to the OE. a dec.

Cognates are ON. *pila*, Du. *pijl*, OHG., MHG. *pfil*, NHG. *Pfeil* 'arrow', which in German has completely supplanted the old Germanic word (Goth. *arhwazna*) for the same. Schrader (Real. Lex., p. 787) suggests that *pilum*, from Idg. \*(s)peudo-m (cf. *heoru* and (s)ceran), may be identical with Germ. \**speuto-* from which OHG. *spioz*, NHG. *Spieß* 'spear', in this case Idg. eu = Lat. i (cf. Lat. *liber* with Gr. ἐλεύθερος s. Brug. Grdr. I<sup>2</sup>, 1, 107).

NE. *pile* has the meaning of 'a large stake driven into the earth to support foundations' etc., the meaning of javelin having been lost.

### Sceaft.

Forms. *sceaft*, *scept*, *sceft* m. (a).

References and Meanings. 1. the shaft of a spear  
Lat. *contus*. nom. sg. *contus spereleas sceft* WW.  
143<sup>7</sup>; *hasta*, *quiris* : *sceaft* Aelfc. Gl. 318<sup>8</sup> = *asta*  
(*quiris*) : *sceaft* WW. 142<sup>19</sup>; ~ ib. 332<sup>86</sup>; *his sceft ætstod*  
*ætforan him* Skt. Homl. I 12<sup>53</sup>; *se sceft tobærst* By. 136.

dat. sg. *on sceafte* Gn. (Ex.) 203.

(an ordinary rod =)

acc. sg. *and dippað ysopan sceft on þam blode* Prs.  
Exod. 12<sup>22</sup>.

2. A spear.

nom. sg. cuspis : *sceaft* WW. 143<sup>18</sup>; huius cupidis,  
haec cuspis : *þes sceft* Aelfc. Gr. 56<sup>4</sup>; *sceaft reafere* Gn.  
Ex. 130.

nom. and acc. pl. *and hig bæron lange sceafas* Hom.  
Ass. 18<sup>222</sup>.

gen. pl. *hlyn wearð on wicum scylda and sceafra* Gen.  
2062.

dat. pl. *gudcyste onþrang deawig sceafum* Exod. 344.

### 3. Arrowshaft.

nom. sg. *sceft nytte heold* B. 3118.

### Compounds.

*here-sceaft* m. spear or battle shaft.

gen. pl. *here-sceafta heap* B. 335.

*wæl-sceaft* m. spear or deadly shaft.

acc. pl. *lætað hilde-bord her onbidian, wudu wælsceaft  
as* B. 398.

### Flurnamen.

*at Sceaftesberi* G. B. 1026 (A. D. 958) now *Shaftesbury*  
in Dorset; *of ðam paðe sceaftrihte on alr . . .* 1331 (A. D.  
739); *innan sceaftes hangran* 629 (A. D. 909).

**Etymology.** Of the three forms *sceaft*, *sceaft*, *sceft*,  
*sceaft* is the oldest. It occurs in the Ep. Er. glosses where  
frequently -pt is found for -ft (s. Sievers, § 193<sup>1</sup>) and OE.  
æ from WGerm. a has not yet become ea under influence of  
preceding palatal consonants sc (Sievers, A.-S. Gramm., § 75,  
Bülbring, AE. Elementarbuch, § 152). *Sceft* (Aelfc. Gloss.)  
shows the later WS. palatal Umlaut (s. Bülbring, § 314)  
where every ea of whatever origin is umlauted by preceding  
j or sc to e.

The cognate forms are: OHG. *schaft*; OSax. *skäft* 'a  
spear'; MHG. *schaft* 'shaft of a lance'; ON. *skäft* 'shaft';

Dan. *skaf*; Swed. *skaf* ‘a handle’; NHG. *schaft*; NE. *shaft* either ‘the spear shaft or the spear itself’.

Skeat derives *sceaf* from either 1. the Idg. rt. \**skap* ‘to support’ or with Kluge (Et. Wb. 331) 2. from the pp. of the verb ‘to shave, to trim’, Idg. \**skabho* ‘to hack’ answering with rt. variation of b and p, (cf. Uhlenbeck, Goth. Wb., p. 60, under *ga-skapjan*) to \**skapo* ‘to cut, to dig’, with the original meaning of ‘something cut, trimmed, smoothed’.

Cf. OHG. *scaben*, Goth. *skaban*, OE. *sceafan*, *scafan*, NE. to *shave*.

Closely related are Gr. σκῆπτρον ‘staff’, Dor. σκᾶπτον ‘staff (sceptre)’, Lat. *scapus* ‘shaft, stem’, Alban. *škop* ‘stick, staff’, MDu. *schacht* ‘long shaft’, OSlav. *skoba* ‘clasp, buckle’, Lit. *skaptas* ‘a curved knife-like sword, all of which Prellwitz (Et. Gr. Wb., p. 288) refers to the rt. \**skap* or *skabh* ‘to prop, to make firm’ (s. Fick, Vgl. Wb. I, 142); hence ‘support’, then ‘prop, staff, pole’. Cf., however, Kluge ‘something smoothed, shaved = pole, shaft’.

### Sceaf-lō (?).

Form. nom. sg. (?) pl. *scept-loan* prob. m. (an).

References. nom. acc. pl. *hastilia telorum* : *scept-loan* Ep. 489, Er. <sup>1005</sup>; ~ Corp. 1005.

pl. dat. *amentis* : *scept-loum* Ep. <sup>106</sup>, Er. <sup>156</sup>; ~ Corp. 156.

Meaning. The strap attached to the shaft of a missile probably to draw it back when thrown (B. T.).

Cf. Isid. Origin. XVIII c. 7, who describes the amentum as follows: — “Hasta est contus cum ferro. Lancea est hasta, amentum habens in medio; dicta autem lancea, quia aequa lance i. e. aequali amento ponderata vibratur. Amentum vinculum est jaculorum hastilium,

quod mediis hastis aptatur. Cuspis, hostile amentatum, a cespite dicta quod est virgultum."

The Etymology is not clear; cf. *lōh-sceaft* 'a bolt, bar'.

*Gaderode me kigelas and stupan sceafas and lōh-sceaftas* Shrн. 163<sup>6</sup>, and *Carceria sunt in cacumine arboris trocliae, quasi flicteria, per quas funes trahuntur: mæst lon* WW. 199<sup>30</sup>.

*Sceaft-riht(e)* in a straight line.

of *ðæm paðe sceafrihte on alr . . .* G. B. 1331 (A. D. 739).

*sceaft-tōg* (?) the strap attached to the shaft of a missile B. T.

ammentum : *scep-tog* WW. 5<sup>26</sup>; amentum (ammentum) : *scep-tog* Corp. 145.

Etymology. Not clear.

Is *tog-* perhaps to be connected with the pp. *togen* from the OE. verb *teon* 'to draw, pull' with the idea of something (a strap) by which the spear when thrown may be drawn back?

### Spere.

Forms. nom. sg. *spere*, pl. *speru*, *speoru*, *speren*, *spæra* n. (i).

### References.

sg. nom. lancea, falarica : *spere* WW. 142<sup>11</sup>; ~ ib. 332<sup>28</sup>; ~ ib. Aelfc. Gl. 317<sup>20</sup>; id. (talarica, for falarica) : ~ WW. 549<sup>31</sup>; hasta : *getridwet spere* WW. 143<sup>6</sup>; amentum : *wegures, gewiðspere* WW. 143<sup>18</sup>; falarica : *spere* WW. 512<sup>18</sup>; hasta : ~ WW. 273<sup>3</sup>; ~ ib. 417<sup>28</sup>; *pæt spere sprengde* By. 137; *ut lytel spere, gif her inne sie* M. C. 7, 19; *swa pæt pæt spere him eode þurh ut* Hom. Skt. I 12<sup>55</sup>.

sg. dat. *ecg on sweorde and ord spere* Gn. (Ex.) 204.

sg. instr. *ða hi ricene mid spere of minre sidan swat ut gutun* Cri. 1448; *mid ðy spere* Bd. 2, 13, 138<sub>8</sub>; *ne mid*

*spere gewundigan* Ep. Al. 157<sup>481</sup>; *lancea : mid spere* Corp. Jh. XIX<sup>84</sup> (other readings *mid spere* Lind., Rush.<sup>3</sup>).

sg. acc. *þæt se sylfa Herodes þa hys spere genam* Hom. Ass. XVI<sup>119</sup>; *nam him spere on hand* Bd. 2, 13, 138<sup>5</sup>.

*and ic an mine kine-louerd . . . a gold wreken spere* Chart. Th. 556<sup>23</sup>.

nom. acc. pl. *contos : speoru* WW. 14<sup>23</sup>, Corp. 528; id.: *spelu oððe spreotas* WW. 365<sup>7</sup>; ~ ib. 375<sup>14</sup>; *ansatas : speru* WW. 347<sup>4</sup>; ~ ib. 516<sup>9</sup>; *catapultas : speru, boltas* WW. 372<sup>25</sup>; ~ ib. 508<sup>14</sup>; *and ic an mine kinelouerd . . . to speren* Chart. Th. 573<sup>7</sup>; *þre speren* Chart. Th. 505<sup>23</sup>; *and þam cinge . . . feower spæra* Chart. Th. 500<sup>1</sup>; *hi leton þa of folman feolhearde speru* By. 108; *wið ða speru* Past. 245<sup>10</sup>; *habbað leoht speru* Sal. 120; *ðæt him ne magon to cuman ða speru þære soðfæstnesse* Past. 245<sup>9</sup>.

pl. gen. *sparorum : spera* WW. 532<sup>10</sup>.

pl. dat. *hig wæron myd sperum gesticode* Homl. Ass. XVI<sup>164</sup>; *myd sperum* id. 290; *mid sperum tosticad* Or. 3, 9, 128<sup>14</sup>; *mid hyra sperum* Mart. 206<sup>5</sup>; *he wære mid sperum ofsticod* Mart. 222<sup>7</sup>; *mid longsceaftum sperum* Ep. Al. 151<sup>307</sup>, 153<sup>362</sup>.

Compounds. 1. with *spere* as second member of the compound.

*ator-spere* n. poisoned spear.

pl. dat. *eglum attor sperum* Ridls. 18<sup>9</sup>.

*bar-spere* n. a boar spear, hunting spear, ven(ab)ulum: *borsper* WW. 539<sup>14</sup>; *venabulum : barspere*, uel *huntigspere* WW. 142<sup>12</sup>; *venabulum : barspere* WW. 311<sup>5</sup>; *venabulis : barsperum* OE. Gl. I<sup>737</sup>, Hpt. Gl. 423<sup>29</sup>.

*eofor-spere* n. boar spear.

*venabilis : eofursperum* OE. Gl. 7<sup>56</sup>.

*huntig-spere* s. bār-spere.

*pul (= pōl)-spēr* n. reed.

harudinem Mt. Kembl. Lind. 11<sup>7</sup>.

*scot-spēre* n. javelin.

pl. gen. *jaculatorum* : *scot-sper[a]*, *gara* Hpt. Gl. 405<sup>53</sup>.

*wæl-spēre* n. spear.

*oft he gar forlet, wælspere windan* By. 322.

(Cf. *wæl-spera* Laym. 28577.)

gen. pl. *syx smiðas sætan, wælspera worhton* MC. 26.

*wig-spēre* n. war spear.

*falarica uel fala* : *wigspere* WW. 143<sup>14</sup>.

2. with *spēre* as first element.

*spēre-brōga* m. spear-terror : cuspidum, terror.

acc. *dægtidum oft spæte sperebrogan* Ridls. 18<sup>4</sup>.

*spēre-healf* f. the male side.

sg. acc. *on þa spēre healfe* Chart. Th. 491<sup>20</sup>.

*spēre-leas* adj. without a spear head.

*contus* : *spereleas sceaf* WW. 143<sup>7</sup>.

*spēre-nið* m. battle.

sg. dat. *æt þam sperniðe* Gen. 2059.

*spēre-wyrt* f. Campanule — a flower.

*nap silvatica* : *spere-wyrt uel wilde næp* WW. 135<sup>12</sup>.

For proper names cf. *Sper-dena*. Cf. also Rel.

Antiq. 269 where for characteristics of different counties  
“shild and sper” is given for *Hervordschir*.

Meaning. ansata, contus, hasta, lancea, falarica :  
a spear for hunting or war — used both for hurling and  
thrusting (s. Part. I under spear).

Etymology. A general Germ. term is the word *spēre*  
being found in the majority of the Germ. dialects, but as  
in the case of most of the weapon names, it is not recorded  
in Goth. Originally a cons. stem belonging to the -iz class  
it has passed over in OE. into the i dec. with short stem

vowel (cf. Sievers, A.-S. Gramm., § 262, 263<sup>4</sup>, 288). *u*-Umlaut fails in the plural owing to the adoption of the unumlauted sg. form *spere* in the plural (s. Sievers, A.-S. Gramm., § 104). Corresponding forms in other Germ. dialects are: OHG. *sper*; OFrs. *sper*, *spiri*; MLG. *sper*; Du. *speer*; ON. *spjör*; Dan. *spaer*; NHG. *speer* all meaning 'spear'; Lat. *sparum*, *sparus* 'a peasant weapon'. ME. *spēre* with open e giving NE. *spear*.

It is derived from a Germ. \**spar-iż* 'spear', which Skeat (Etym. Dic.) connects with an Idg. root \**spar* 'to quiver' (cf. Fick, Idg. Wb. I, p. 149 \**spher* — 'tremble, quiver, struggle') (?). For the W. European common form Fick (Wb. I, 572) gives *spero* — m. n. 'a weapon, spear' (?), which stands in Ablaut to Lat. *sparus*. S. Grimm, Gramm. 2<sup>57</sup> No. 575, for a lost Goth. strong verb \**spairan* : *spar* : *spērum* : *spaurans* = 'quaerere, investigare' — "hasta = vestigium in corpore relinquens vulnerans". This \**spar* would be then the form from which Germ. \**spar-iż* is taken, the verb, however, is only a conjecture.

Schrader (Real. Lexicon, p. 785), suggests a connection between OHG. *spere-boum*, MHG. *sperboum*, NHG. *Speirling* (*Sperberbaum*) deriving *spere-boum* from the Idg. \**spero-* (Lat. *sorbus*) which he thinks may have been originally a tree name, which later developed the meaning of 'weapon, spear', the latter taking its name from the wood of which the shaft was made cf. OSax. *æsc*; OHG. *aska*; Gr. δόρυ etc.

Closely allied to this and adopted by Schrader is the attempt of Lidén PBB. XV, 518 ff. to connect Lat. *sorbu-s* with OHG. *swērt*, Dn. *swaert*, OSax, OFrs., *swērd*, OE. *sweord* etc., explaining it as one of the weapon-names, which has its origin in an ancient tree name or term applied to wood. This is accepted neither by Kluge nor Osthoff

(s. Osthoff, Etym. Parerga I, 92 ff.), and the author himself afterwards recalled the explanation.

### Spreot.

Form. *spreot* m. (a).

References. nom. sg. *palus* : *spreot* OE. Gl. 30<sup>1</sup>; *contus* : ~ WW. 139<sup>28</sup>.

nóm. and acc. pl. *contos* : *spreotas* WW. 533<sup>28</sup>; *contos* : *speru oððe spreotas* WW. 365<sup>7</sup>, 375<sup>14</sup>; *trudes uel amites* : *spreotas* WW. 143<sup>8</sup>; *trudes* : ~ WW. 166<sup>15</sup>; ~ ib. 183<sup>4</sup>; ~ ib. 289<sup>20</sup>; *ansatas* (*hastas* is omitted) : ~ *atgaras* WW. 343<sup>35</sup>.

dat. pl. *contis* : *spreotum* WW. 14<sup>22</sup>; *spreotum* Ep. 211<sup>1</sup>; *spreutum* Er. 52<sup>27</sup>; *spreotum* Corp. 52<sup>27</sup>.

### Compounds.

*eofor-spreot* m. boar spear.

*venabula* : *eoborspreot* WW. 52<sup>38</sup>; *venabula(um)* : *eoborspreot* Ep. Er. 105<sup>2</sup>; Corp. 208<sup>9</sup> *eoborspreot*.

Meaning. 1. *Contus* : pole, spear.

2. *Trudes* : pole, sprit belonging to a ship.

Flurnamen. *on spreot emre* G. B. 938 (A. D. 956).

Etymology. Derived from the pres. stem of a st. verb of the second Ablaut class, Germ. *sprutan*, which appears in OE. as *sprutan* (s. Sievers 385, Anm. 1) with Schwundstufe in present, instead of the regular *spreotan*. The corresponding forms in other Germ. dialects are: Du. *spriet*, *sprit*, in compound *Bugsprriet* (part of a ship), Dan. *sprød*, Swed. *sprot* also 'part of a ship', MHG. *sprēt* 'a pole or tree', also 'a spar', Grimm connects this word with OHG. *spioz*, ON. *spjot* 'a spear' from Germ. \**speuta-* as does Kluge (Etym. Wb. 371). Cognates in other languages outside the Germanic are uncertain.

OE. *spreot* gives NE. *sprit* usually found in the compound *bow-sprit* ‘a spar set diagonally to extend a fore-and-aft sail’.

The development in meaning seems to have been ‘a sprout, a branch of a tree’ later ‘a pole’, and in OE. the name of the pole used for the spear shaft was employed occasionally to designate the whole spear.

### Piox (?).

Form. sg. nom.? pl. dat. *pioxum*.

Reference. ferratis venabulis : *isernum barsperum*, *pioxum* Hpt. Gl. 423<sup>68</sup>.

Meaning. a hunting spear.

Etymology. *piox* or *peox* corresponds to OHG. *dēhsala* ‘a short handled axe, hatchet’, MHG. *dēhsel*, NHG. *deichsel* ‘a hatchet’, ON. *pexla* ‘an adze’ from a Germ. root \**pēhs* to Idg. \**teks* (cf. Fick, Wb. I, 441). Related forms are OSlav. *tesati* ‘to hew’, Lit. *taseyti* ‘to hew with an axe’, Skr. *tāksati* ‘hewn, planned’, *takṣā* ‘carpenter’, OCSlav. *tesla* ‘axe’, Gr. *τέκτων* ‘carpenter’, Lat. *texō* ‘I weave, build, etc.’ (s. Uhlenbeck, Ai. Wb., p. 107). In the sense of spear Anglo-Saxon only, but in form and with the general meaning of ‘a sharp cutting instrument’ related to the above mentioned words. For further Etym. cf. Kluge, Wb. ‘under *Deichsel*’ p. 74.

### Wæl-steng.

Form. *wæl-steng* m. (i).

Reference. sg. dat. *feower scoldon on þæm wæl-stenge. weorcum geferian to þæm gold-sele Grendles heafod* B. 1638.

Meaning. shaft of spear, spear.

**Etymology.** From Germ. \**stang-is* formed on the pret. stem of the strong verb \**stingan*: *stang* ‘to prick, to sting’.

Cognates are : OHG. *stanga*, NHG. *Stange*, Du. *stang*, ON. *stong*, Swed. *stång* (cf. Goth. *us-stiggan* ‘ausstechen’). The provincial NE. *stang* ‘a pole, a stake’ shows Scandinavian influence from the inflected forms of ON. *stong*, gen. *stangar* (cf. ME. *stange* Sir Gawain and the Green Knight V, 1614), the form from OE. *steng* being lost, while NE. *sting* stands in Ablaut to *stang*.

All to Idg. \**stengh* : *stangh* ‘to prick’ (Fick I, 569), a weakened form of which is probably \**steig-* (Fick I, 144) to which is related OI. *téjati* ‘is sharp’; Russ. *stegáti*, *stegnúti* ‘to stitch, to whip’; Lat. *in-stigare* ‘to spur on, incite’; Goth. *stiks*; OHG. *stich* ‘point’ (s. Uhlenbeck, Ai. Wb., p. 116).

From the original meaning of ‘thrusting, sticking, pricking’ has developed the idea of ‘a pole thrust or stuck into the ground’, then ‘the pole itself’.

### Wigār.

**Form.** *wigār* m. (*wiggār* B. T.).

**Reference.** *lancea* : *wigar* WW. 143<sup>12</sup>.

Directly following this gloss is the following: *amen-tum* : *wegures*, *gewidspere* WW. 143<sup>13</sup>, which is either a corruption of *wigares* (*wig-garas*) or a form borrowed directly from the Norman French *wigres* of the Chanson de Roland l. 2075. According to Baist (Var. über Rol.) this *wigre*, which is found only in the Chanson de Roland, occurring everywhere else as *givre*, *guivre* (s. *wifel*), is in turn borrowed possibly from A.-S. *wigār*, but with more probability from ON. *vígr*.

For the Meaning and Etymology of *wigar* cf. *gar*. It may also have the meaning arrow, but that of spear is the more probable.

## 2. The Sword and its Attachments.

### Bil.

Forms. *bil*, *bill* n. (ja).

References. 1. falcastrum, marra : a scythe, an iron mattock or hoe.

sg. nom. falcastrum : *bill* WW. 141<sup>28</sup>; id : *sipe uel bill* WW. 106<sup>21</sup>; *vidubium i. marra* : *bill* WW. 361<sup>28</sup>; *marra* : ~ WW. 447<sup>32</sup>.

sg. acc. *chalibem* : ~ WW. 376<sup>14</sup>.

2. ensis : sword.

sg. nom. *bil eal ðurh-wod* B. 1567; *þe hine bill rude Boet.* 8<sup>34</sup>; *bill ær gescod eald-hlaforde* B. 2777; *brogden byrne and bill gecost* El. 257.

sg. gen. *æfter billes bite* B. 2060; *billis ecgum* B. 2485; *nu sceall billes ecg, hond and heard sweord ymb hord wigan* B. 2508; *mid billes ecge* An. 51.

sg. acc. *he frætwe geheold, bill ond byrnan* B. 2621; *geseah ða on searivum sige-eadig bil* B. 1557; *Byrhtnoð bræd bill of scede* By. 162; *(he) bill forscrifed, meces mærðo* Sat. 162; *stopon stidhidige, bræcon bordhreðan, bil indufan* (or pl.?) El. 122.

instr. *mid þy bille* Gen. 2931; *Hredles eafora hior-dryncum swealt, bille gebeaten* B. 2359; *ic eom anhaga iserne wund, bille gebennad* Ridls. 6<sup>2</sup>.

pl. gen. *hie judea blæd for bræcon billa ecgum* Dan. 709; *swylcra searo-niða, billa brogan* B. 583; *billi selest* B. 1144.

pl. dat. *Israhela cynn billum abreotan on hyra broðorgyld*  
Exod. 199; *billum ond byrnum* B. 40; *mid billum* By. 114;  
*on beadu-wange billum foregrunden* An 413; *mid meca ecgum*  
*billum ofbeatan* Boet. 9<sup>30</sup>.

The proper name *Cynebil(l)* Bd. 3, 23, p. 234.

Compounds. 1. with *bill* as second member of the compound.

*guð-bill* n. *gladius bellicus* : war-sword.

sg. nom. *guð-bill geswac nacod æt niðe* B. 2584.

pl. gen. *guð-billa nan gretan nolde* B. 803; *hæfde him*  
*on handa hilde frofre, guð billa gripe* Wald. 2<sup>18</sup>.

*hilde-bill* n. battle-blade, sword.

sg. nom. *pæt hilde-bil forbarn* B. 1666.

instr. *ic aglæcan orde geræhte, hilde-bille* B. 557; *mægen-ræs forgeaf hilde-bille* B. 1520; *mægen-strengo sloh hilde-bille*  
B. 2679.

*wig-bill* n. battle-blade, sword.

sg. nom. *wig-bil ongan wanian* B. 1607.

*stan-bill* n. stone-working implement, an axe.

*mastellus* : *stanbill* WW. 447<sup>33</sup>.

*twi-bill* n. bipennis : a two-edged axe.

sg. nom. bipennis : *twybill* WW. 143<sup>30</sup>; id. : *twibill*  
WW. 361<sup>6</sup>; bipennis : *twybile [-bil, MS. W.]* Aelfr. Gr. 56<sup>9</sup>.

sg. acc. *he nam sum twibil and mid ðan þry men to*  
*deaðe of sloh* Prs. Gudl. 12.

nom. pl. bipennes, secures : *æcsa, twibilles (-as?)* Hpt.  
Gl. 459<sup>2</sup>; bipennae : *twibile* Cant. Ps. 73<sup>6</sup>; id. VPs. 73<sup>6</sup>.

*twi-bille* adj. (?). According to B. T. 'the double  
gloss bipennis : *twibile uel stanæx* WW. 141<sup>27</sup> seems to  
render the double character of the Latin word as adj. and  
noun — the noun being rendered by *twybill* in the glosses

given above under *twi-bill*<sup>3</sup>, cf. also *bipennis*, *securis* : *twi-lafte æx*, uel *twibille* WW. 194<sup>36</sup>.

In two ME. Gl. of the 15<sup>th</sup> cent. the word occurs : *bisacuta*, *an<sup>ce</sup>* : *a twybyl* WW. 568<sup>21</sup>; *hic bipennis* : *A<sup>e</sup> twy-byle* WW. 654<sup>2</sup>, and it has remained in dialect to the present day with the meaning of 'mattock, axe', being an implement resembling a pick axe, but having, instead of points, flat terminations, one of which is horizontal, the other perpendicular (s. Halliwell's Dic. II, p. 897).

*wudu-bill* n. *falcis* : *scythe*, *sickle*. *falces*, *falcis* (*falx*, *falcis*) : *wudubil*, *syði*, *riftr* Ep. 430, *uuidubil* Er. <sup>834</sup><sup>3</sup>; *falcastrum* : *wudubil*, *siðe*, *riftras* Corp. 836; *falcastrum* i. *ferramentum curuum a similitudine falcis vocatum* : *wudu-bil*, uel *foddur* WW. 235<sup>5</sup>.

2. *bil(l)* as first member of compound.

*bill-geslieht* n. sword-clash, battle.

sg. gen. *gylpan nedorfte beorn blandenfeax billgeslihtes* Aedelst. 45.

*bill-hete* m. sword-hate, warfare.

sg. dat. *þy læs ic lungre scyle ablended in burgum æfter bill-hete* An. 78.

*bill-swæþ* n. sword-track.

pl. nom. *þraca wæs on ore... bilswaðu blodige, beadu mægnes ræs* Exod. 329.

Meaning. In prose *bill* has usually the meaning of 'scythe' or 'sickle' cf. *falcastrum* : *siðe* WW. 334<sup>5</sup>, 400<sup>12</sup>, 477<sup>22</sup>, also *falcis* : *wudubil(l)*, *siðe*, *riftras* WW. 21<sup>19</sup>. Marra refers probably to an iron mattock or axe similar to a pickaxe for rooting out weeds etc. *Twibill* : *bipennis* refers undoubtedly to an axe, and only in poetry is *bill* found in the sense of 'sword'. In ME. *bill* referred to a kind of pike or halberd, with a two-edged blade, carried by the

English infantry. Later it became the usual weapon of watchmen, cf. the term *billman*, and Shakespere 'Much Ado About Nothing' III, 3, 44. '*Have a care that your bills be not stoln*'. These were used by the Constables of the watch until the 18<sup>th</sup> century.

The term *bill* is still applied in certain parts of England to a *bill-hook*, and is also used poetically for sword.

**Etymology.** *Bill* with the meaning 'axe' is found in many of the German dialects: OE. *bil(l)*, ME. *bil*, *bille*, NE. *bill*, Du. *bijl*, OHG., MHG. *bill*, *bil* n., NHG. *bille* f. (influenced by f. *Beil*), Dan. *biil*, Swed. *bila*.

Two derivations are given for *bil*, the one pointing to a Celtic, the other to a Germanic origin. According to Kluge-Lutz (Etym. Wb., p. 18) and Skeat (Etym. Dic.) *bil* belongs perhaps to Germ. \**bilja*, Sct. *bhilyo*, Idg. \**bhilyo-* for Idg. *bhidlyo-* from the Idg. root *bheid-* 'spalten, split' (Fick, Vgl. Wb. I, 88). Here belongs also Skt. *bhidati* 'spaltet, schlitzt' to OI. *bhid-* 'spalten' (s. Uhlenbeck, Ai. Wb., p. 201), radically related to Lat. *findere* 'spalten', Goth. *beitan* (in ON. used also for a cutting weapon, for example '*Iarn-bitr*' = a sword).

Compare, however, Uhlenbeck (PBB. 26<sup>568</sup>), who derives OE. *bile* 'bill of a bird' and OE. *bil(l)* 'sword' not from Idg. \**bhidlyo-*, but from the Celt. rt. \**bei-*, *bi-* 'schlagen to strike', here belong perhaps also OCSl. *bija*, OSl. *biti* 'schlagen' (s. Stokes II, 164), Ir. *biail* 'Beil' f. gen. *bila*, Cymr. *buyell* f., OCorn. *bahell*, NBret. *bouchal*, *bouhal*, and cf. OHG. *bihal*, *bial*, NHG. *Beil* f., OE. *bill* 'which' according to Grimm, is closely related to *bill*, according to Murray (N. E. D.), is from an entirely different rt., while Kluge separates OHG. *bihal* entirely from Ir. *biail*, though grant-

ing as probable the radical relationship of OHG. *beil* and *bille*.

**Brand.**

Forms. *brand*, *brond* m. (a).

References. 1. *titio*, *torris* : fire brand.

sg. nom. *titio* : *brond* WW. 50<sup>41</sup>; *titio uel torris* : *brand* WW. 127<sup>8</sup>; *torris* : ~ WW. 266<sup>87</sup>; *and nan brand nolde byrnan* Hom. Skt. II 26<sup>89</sup>.

pl. acc. *bæron brandas on bryne blacan fyres* Dan. 246.

pl. dat. *se wæs ægwanan ymmboren mid brondum* Jul. 581.

2. incendium, flamma, ignis : fire, a burning flame

sg. nom. *brond þeod heoredreorges hus* Ph. 216; *brond bið ontyhte* Cri. 812; *þa sceall brond fretan* B. 3014.

sg. gen. *þa ær brondes wylm* Ph. 283.

sg. acc. *brand and brade ligas* Gen. 325.

sg. instr. *Denia leode bronde forbærnan* B. 2126; *lige, . . . bæle ond bronde* B. 2322.

nom. acc. pl. *brondas lacað on þam deopen dæge* Dom. 58; *seo hyre bearn gesihð brondas þeccan* Wy. 47.

pl. gen. *bronda beorhtost* Sch. 65. (The sun).

3. ensis : a sword.

sg. nom. *þæt hine syðpan no brond ne beado-mecas bitan ne-meahton* B. 1454.

sg. gen. *ic gean Eadmunde minon breðer . . . anes brandes* Chart. Th. 559<sup>24</sup>.

**Compounds.**

*brand-hät* adj. ardent (love, hate).

sg. nom. *brandhata nið weollon gewitte* An. 768; *born in breostum, brondhat lufu* Gūð. 937.

*brand-hord* m. ardens thesaurus : a treasure exciting ardent desire.

sg. nom. *brondhord geblownen breostum inforgrownen*  
Reim. 46.

*brand-isen* n. a tripod, firedog, grate.

sg. nom. andena, uel tripes : *brandisen* WW. 127<sup>9</sup>;  
an[dena] : *brandisen* WW. 329<sup>81</sup>.

*brand-rad* f. rida, -e m. firedog, grate.

sg. nom. andeda : *brand-rod* WW. 5<sup>88</sup>; andena : *brand red* WW. 349<sup>83</sup>; ardeda : *brand-rida* WW. 266<sup>26</sup>.

**Meaning.** Connected with *brinnan, bærnan* ‘to burn’, hence original meaning of ‘fire-brand, a bright flame’, from which the secondary meaning ‘sword’ is derived from its shining appearance.

**Etymology.** To OE. *brand*, ME. *brand*, NE. *brand* cognates are: ON. *brandr* ‘a fire-brand, a sword-blade’, OHG. *brant*, MHG. *brant* ‘a brand, a sword’, Du. *brand* ‘burning fuel’, ODu. *brand* ‘a sword’, Dan., Swed. *brand* ‘a fire-brand, fire’. From OHG. is borrowed the It. *brando*, Port. *bran*, OFr. *bran* ‘sword-blade’. Related is also the It. verb *brandir*, Span. *blandir*, Fr. *brandir* from which, most likely, NE. *brandish* ‘to swing a sword’, then ‘to swing or shake anything’ (cf. Skeat C. Etym. Dic.).

The word *brand* is in Ablaut to *brennen* from the root \**brēn-*, Idg. *bhren*, which in the other Idg. languages is not found with the meaning ‘to burn’.

In NE. *brand* has the meaning of ‘fire brand’, in poetical language ‘sword’, and is also found in the compounds *brand-* or *brant-fox*, a kind of Swedish fox, Swed. *brandräf*, *brand-goose*, *brand-gås*, *brent-goose*. At first the name was probably given owing to redness or brownness of color. Compare also the word red-start (red-tail) sometimes called the *branttail*.

Ečg.

Forms. *ečg* nom. pl. *ečga*, -e f. (jō).

References. 1. edge of sword, sword.

sg. nom. *ecg grymetode* Exod. 408; *seo ecg geswac* B. 1524; *seo ecg fracod* B. 1575; *þæt þec adl oððe ecg eafoðes getwæfed* B. 1763; *sio ecg gewac* B. 2577; *hyne ecg fornām* B. 2772; *ecg (sceal) on sweorde* Gn. (Ex.) 204; *ecg wæs iren* B. 2778, 1458; *us sceal ord and ecg ær geseman* By. 60; *meces ecg* Wy. 48; *sweordes ecg* B. 1106; id. An. 1132; *billes ecg* B. 2508; *seaxes ecg* Ridls. 27<sup>6</sup>; *þonne scearp cymeð* *sceo wið oþrum, ecg wið ecge* Ridls. 4<sup>42</sup>.

acc. sg. *wið ord ond wið ecge* B. 1549; *nales wordum log meces ecge* B. 1812; *sealde þa his swæs folc sweorde under ecge* Ps. 77<sup>62</sup>.

sg. instr. *mid swurdes ecge* Hom. Skt. II 25<sup>503</sup>, id. I, 18<sup>408</sup>; *he hyne sylfne gewræc ana mid ecge* B. 2876; *þæt me wraðra sum wæpnes ecge* Gen. 1830; *mid sweordes ecge* Gen. 2857; *mid billes ecge* An. 51.

instr. or acc. *fordon nænig man scile oft orðances ut abredan wæpnes ecgge* Sal. 165; *on swurdes ecge* Corp. Lk. XXI<sup>24</sup> (other readings H. *on sweordes egge*).

pl. nom. *hine irennā ecgu fornāmon* B. 2828; *þæs wæron mid eotenum ecge cuðe* B. 1145; *þæt him irennā ecge mihton helpan æt hilde* B. 2683; *ecge wæron scearpe* Ridls. 34<sup>4</sup>.

pl. gen. *mid gryrum ecga* B. 483; *ecga gehwylcre* B. 805; *æt ecga gelacum* B. 1168; *me ecga dolg eacen weorðað* Ridls. 6<sup>18</sup>; *ecga þryðum* An. 1184.

pl. dat. (*he*) *wolde slean eaferan sinne, ... ecgum reodan* Exod. 412; *ecgum oflegde willgesiððas* Gen. 2002; *ic heafde becearf ... Grenedes modor eacnum ecgum* B. 2140; *æscum*

*ond ecgum* B. 1772; *sweord swate fah . . . ecgum dyhtig andweard scireð* B. 1287, 1558; *ecgum unslaw* B. 2564; *ecgum werig* Ridls. 6<sup>3</sup>; *ecgum gecoste* Jud. 231; *ecgum dīltig* Gen. 1993; *billa [billes, meces, sweorda, swordes, wæpna, meca, wæpna] ecgum* Dan. 709, B. 2485, 2614, 2939, 2961, Aedelst. 4, 68, An. 71, Boet. 9<sup>29</sup>, Sal. 259.

Compounds. 1. with *ecg* as first member of the compound.

*ecg-bana* m. gladio cadens : a sword-killer, murderer.  
sg. nom. *ne-wæs ecg-bona* B. 2506.

sg. dat. *Cain wearð to ecg-banan angan breþer* B. 1262  
*ecg-heard* adj. hard of edge.

*lætað wæpnes spor, iren ecgheard eadorgeard sceoran*  
An. 1181.

*ecg-hete* m. hostility.

sg. nom. *se ecg-hete (?) . . . wæcnan scolde* B. 84; *yldoððe ecghefe fægum from weardum feorh oðringeð* Seef. 70.  
sg. acc. *ne gesaca ohwær ecg-hete eoweð* B. 1738.

*ecg-plega* m. sword-battle.

sg. acc. *hie ðam caldorþegnum cyðan eodon atolne ecg-plegan* Jud. 246.

*ecg-pracu* f. battle : gladiorum impetus.

sg. acc. *he ne-pearf atole ecg-præce* B. 596.

*ecg-wæl* n. slaughter.

sg. dat. *on ecgwale* Gen. 2089.

2. with *ecg* as second member of compound.

*brān-ecg* adj. brown-edged (sword).

sg. acc. *ond hyre seax[e] geteah, brad < ond > brun-ecg* B. 1546.

*heard-ecg* adj. hard of edge, sharp.

nōm. acc. sg. *þa wæs heard-ecg togen, sweord ofer setlum*  
B. 1288; *Ond þu Unferð læt ealde lafe, wrætic wæg-sweord*

*wid-cudne man heardecg habban* B. 1490; *heardecg cwacaþ*  
El. 757.

pl. nom. *mec knossiað homera lafe heardecg heoroscearp*  
Ridls. 6<sup>8</sup>.

*stip-ecg* adj. strong-edged.

sg. nom. *þeah mec heard bite stiðecg style* Ridls. 93<sup>18</sup>.

*stiel-ecg* adj. steel-edged (with iron edge).

sg. nom. *hit (wunden-mæl) on eorðan læg, strø ond styl-*  
*ecg* B. 1533.

*twi-ecg* adj. two-edged, as subst. axe.

as subst. instr. *hi mid twyecgum teoledon georne*  
Prs. 73<sup>6</sup>.

as adj. *he wæg mid hine twiecge handseaxx geættred* Bd.  
2, 9, p. 898; *sweord twiecge : gladii ancipites* Ps. Surt. 149<sup>6</sup>.

Meaning. edge, edge of sword, and used poetically  
for the sword itself.

Etymology. A Germ. word. Cognate forms are:  
OHG. *ekka* 'point, sword-blade', MHG. *ecke* 'point, edge,  
sword-blade', NHG. *Ecke* 'corner, edge', OSax. *eggja* 'blade,  
sword', ON. *egg* 'point', Swed. *agg*, Dan. *eg*, Du. *egge*, ME.  
*egge*, NE. *edge*, Goth. \**agja* is not preserved. The Germ.  
root \**ag*, Idg. \**āk* 'sharp' appears in other than Germ.  
languages also with the meaning of 'sharpness, something  
pointed'. Cf. Lat. *acies*, Gr. ἄκης 'point', Lat. *acus* 'needle',  
OI. *ášri-s* 'side, edge, blade, corner', *ástrā* 'thorn', Armen.  
*aseln* 'needle', Lit. *asetrūs* 'sharp', all from the same Idg.  
root (s. Fick, Vgl. Wb. I, 349, and Osthoff, Etym. Parerga,  
p. 192).

### Fetel.

Forms. *fetel, fetels* m. (a).

References.

sg. dat. *pæt is ærest minnum hlaforde mines swyrdes*

*mid fetele Chart. Th. 516<sup>27</sup>; and four pund silveres on þam fetelse Chart. Th. 505<sup>31</sup>.*

sg. acc. *ic geān into þære stowe . . . þone gyldenan fetels* Chart. Th. 558<sup>18</sup>.

acc. pl. *heora ælces sweord-fetelsas he het forceorfan* Hom. Skt. I 23<sup>178</sup>.

pl. dat. *sweordum and fetelum* Boet. 25<sup>10</sup>.

derived — *fetelsian* ‘to belt, adorned with a belt’.  
*fetelsade* pp. *tueye suerde fetelsade* Chart. Th. 505<sup>32</sup>.

Compound.

*fetel-hilt* n. *capulus balteo instructus*: a belted hilt.  
s. *hilt*.

Meaning. *cingulum, balteus*: a girdle, a sword-belt.

Etymology. N.- and WGerm. Cognates being MHG. *vezzel*, OHG. *fezzil* ‘strap for fastening the sword’, then also ‘strap, fetter’, ON. *fetell* ‘band, chain, sword-belt’ from the Germ. root \**fat* probably with the meaning ‘to hold together’. A masc. nom. instr. formed from a verb with the suffix (i)la Germ. \**futila-* (s. Kluge, Stammbildungslehre, § 90). Related to NHG. *fass*, OHG. *vaz* (from Idg. \**podo-*), Eng. *vat*, and the verb *fassen* ‘to hold’.

According to Kluge (Etym. Wb. p. 110) not to be connected with the Germ. word for fetter, MHG. *veezer*, OHG. *fēzzera*, OE. *fēter*, NE. *fetter*. Cf. further Kluge, PBB. 6<sup>110</sup>.

### Heoru.

Forms. *heoru, heoro, hioro* m. (u).

For the Kent. form *hioro* s. Bülbring, Altengl. Lautlehre, § 141.

### References.

sg. nom. *ponne heoru bunden, sweord sivate fah swin ofer helme ecgum dyhtig and weard scireð* B. 1285.

sg. acc. *drugon wæpna gewin wide geond vorþan, ahogodon and ahyrdon heoro sliþendne* Gn. (Ex.) 202.

Compounds. *Heoru* is very frequent in compound, being perhaps sometimes confused with *here*, but is only rarely recorded as simplex, and does not occur in prose.

*heoru-blac* adj. pale from sword blows.

*gomela Scylfing hreas (heoro)-blac* B. 2488.

*heoru-cumbol* n. signum bellicum : war banner.

acc. *hebban heorucumbul and þæt halige treo him beforean ferian on feonda gemang* El. 107.

*heoru-dolg* n. sword wound, deadly wound.

inst. pl. *wat ic Matheus purh mænra hand hrinan heorudolgum* An. 942.

*heoru-dræor* m. sword blood, gore.

instr. *þær wæs on blode brim weallende, atol yða geswing eal gemenged, haton heolfre, heoro-dreore weol* B. 849; *heall (bestymed) heoru-dreore* B. 487.

*heoru-dreorig* adj. 1. blood-stained, gory.

sg. nom. *husa selest heoro-dreorig stod* B. 935; *deaðræs forfeng hæleð heorodreorig* An. 996 (perhaps uninflected acc. pl.).

sg. acc. *hyne þa mid handa heoro-dreorigne þeodne mærne þegn ungemete till, wine-dryghten his wætere gelafede* B. 2720; *on þone hafelan heoro-dreorigne* B. 1780.

pl. nom. *heoru dreorige hyrdas lagan* An. 1083; *oft him feorran to laman, . . . heoru-dreorige cwomon* El. 1214.

2. weary unto death.

sg. gen. *brond þeod heoredreorges hus* Ph. 217.

*heoru-drync* m. the sword drink, blood.

pl. dat. *Hredles eafora hioro-dryncum swealt* B. 2358.

*heoru-fæðm* m. deadly embrace.

pl. dat. *wolde heorufæðmum [huru — MS.] hilde gesceadan yrre and egesfull* Exod. 504.

*heoru-gifre* adj. very fierce, eager to bring destruction.

sg. nom. *ponne bryne costað hat heorugifre* Cri. 1060; *widmære blæst . . . hat heorogifre* Cri. 977 (the flames of the burning of the world); (Grendel's mother) *heoro-gifre grim ond grædig* B. 1498; *lead wide sprong hat heorogifre* Jul. 586.

sg. acc. *pone lig towearp heorogiferne* Jul. 567.

*heoru-grædig* adj. bloodthirsty.

pl. nom. *pæt hie ne murndan æfter mandreame hæleþ heoro-grædige* An. 38.

pl. gen. *purh hearmwide heoru-grædigra* An. 79.

*heoru-grimm* adj. very fierce, cruel.

sg. nom. *wæs seo adl pearl hat and heorogrim* Guð. 952; *ece fir, . . . hat and heorogrim* Cri. 1524; *freca Scyldinga, hreoh ond heoro-grim* B. 1564; *se hearda forst, hrim heorogrimma* Ridls. 41<sup>55</sup>; *hild heorugrimme* B. 1847.

sg. gen. *in hæft heorogrimmes* Az. 27.

sg. acc. *morporean . . . heard and heorogrim* Cri. 1613.

pl. nom. *hetend heorugrimme hilde-nædran forð on sendan* El. 119; id. An. 31.

pl. gen. *on hæft heoru-grimra* Dan. 307.

*heoru-höciht* adj. with sword-like barbs.

inst. pl. *mid eofer-spreotum heoro-hocyhtum* B. 1438.

*heoru-scearp* adj. sharp like a sword, very sharp.

nom. pl. *homera lafe heardecg heoroscearp* Ridls. 6<sup>8</sup>.

*heoru-sceorp* n. s. *sceorp.*

*heoru-serče* f. s. *serče.*

*heoru-swealwe* f. the falcon.

sg. nom. *seo heoro-swealwe wynsum weorþeð* Wy. 86.

*heoru-sweng* m. sword-stroke.

sg. acc. *syfðan he æfter deaðe drepe þrawade, heoro-sweng heardne* B. 1590.

pl. instr. *heardum heoruswengum scel þin hra dælan* An. 952.

*heoru-wæpen* n. a weapon, a sword.

pl. instr. *fuhton þearle heardum heoru-wæpnum* Jud. 263.

*heoru-weallende* adj. boiling fiercely.

*lig-egesan wæg hatne for horde, hioro-weallende middelnichtum* B. 2781.

*heoru-wearh* m. bloodthirsty wolf (?).

sg. nom. (*Grendel*) *heoro-wearh hetelic* B. 1267.

*heoru-word* n. a fierce word.

pl. gen. *yrre ne læt þe æfre gewealdan heah in hrepre, heoro-worda grund wylme bismitan* Fæd. lär. 84.

*heoru-wulf* m. sword-wolf, warrior.

pl. nom. *hare heora-wulfað hilde gretton* Exod. 181.

Meaning. A poetical word for sword in both OE. and ON.

Etymology. *heoru* is found in Goth. and Icel. or ON. though wanting in WGerm. Compare Goth. *hairus* m. 'a sword', ON. *hjörr*, OSax. *hēru* (in compound), identical with OI. *çáruṣ* m. f. 'shot, spear, arrow', Idg. *kérus* f. 'Geschoß' (s. Fick, Vgl. Wb. I, 43). The original meaning of this word is probably 'Rohr, Rohrstab' cf. OI. *çarás* 'Rohr, Pfeil' also *çáryas* m. 'arrow', *çáryā* f. 'reed, arrow' (Uhlenbeck, Ai., Wb. 304). According to Fick it is to be connected with OI. *çrnáti* 'zerbricht' (s. Uhlenbeck 315), to which belongs Gr. *κεραυνός* 'Donnerkeil, Blitz', as explained by Luft in Kuhn's Zeitschr. 36<sup>145</sup>. Noreen, Aisl. Gramm., § 256, connects *hjörr* with *skera* 'to cut', which derivation would connect it with OE. *sceran*, NE. *shear*, NHG. *scheren*.

### Hæft.

Forms. *hæft, hæfte* n. (a).

References. 1. Capulus manubrium : hilt, handle.

sg. nom. manubrium : *hæft* Aelfc. Gl. 318<sup>8</sup>; id. WW. 332<sup>38</sup>; id.: *hæft and helfe* WW. 142<sup>21</sup>; *nim ðæt seax ðe ðæt hæfte sie fealo hryðeres horn* Lchdm. II, 272<sup>11</sup>.

sg. dat. *fuhton þearle heardum heoru-wæpnum, hæfte guldon hyra fyrnigeflitu* Jud. 263; *mec on fyrd wigeð cræfte on hæfte* Ridls. 73<sup>22</sup>.

ME. Glosses. manubrium : *an hafte* WW. 594<sup>44</sup>; id.: *aē heft* WW. 663<sup>36</sup>; id.: *a heft* WW. 735<sup>17</sup>.

#### Compound.

*hæft-mece* m. ensis capulo preditus : sword with hilt

sg. dat. *wæs þæm hæft-mece Hrunting nama* B. 1457.

2. *hæft* m. captivus s. B. T. and Grein, Sprachschatz II, p. 19.

3. *hæft* m. vinculum : bond fetter s. B. T. and Grein II, p. 20.

Etymology. Cognates to OE. *hæft*, ME. *heft*, *haft*, NE. *haft* 'a handle' are: OHG. *hefti*, MHG. *hefte* 'handle, heft', NHG. *heft*, ON. *hepti*, Du. *heft* 'handle'. Related to these is Goth. *hafst* 'bound', Lat. *captus* 'captured' from *hafjan* 'heben, to raise', *capio* 'to take, to grasp' from the Idg. rt. \**kap-* with the original meaning of 'bending, making crooked', from which have developed the meanings 'to raise, to seize, to grasp' (s. Fick, Vgl. Wb. 387). Connected with OE. *hebban* 'to lift' (s. Skeat, C. Etym. Dic.) with the idea of 'grasping, something to grasp', then 'hilt, handle'.

#### Hilt.

Forms. *hilt* pl. *hiltas*, *hilt* m. n. (i), *helt* n. (Cons. s. stem), *hilte* f. (jōn).

(For *helt* s. Sievers, A.-S. Gramm., § 288, Anm. 1, for *hilt* § 267, Anm. 1, also Kluge, Stammbildungslehre, § 84 b).

References.

*hilt* m. n. hilt, handle.

sg. nom. *þa wæs gyldenhilt gamelum rince . . . on hand gyfen* B. 1677.

sg. dat. *and þæs swurdes mid þam sylfrenan hylte ðe Wulfric worhte* Chart. Th. 588<sup>11</sup>.

sg. acc. *ic þæt hilt þanan feondum ætferede* B. 1668; *Hroðgar mædelode, hylt sceawode, ealde lafe* B. 1687.

pl. nom. acc. *ofer ða byrgenna blicað ða hieltas* Sal. 223; *þa hilt (somod) since fage* B. 1614.

pl. dat. *heard be hiltum* B. 1574: *ac se ord bigde upp to þam hiltum* Hom. Skt. I 12<sup>266</sup>.

*helt* m. n. s. hilt.

sg. nom. capulus : *helt* Corp. 359.

sg. acc. capulum : ~ Corp. 414; id. WW. 11<sup>44</sup>.

*hilte* f. s. *hilt*.

sg. nom. capulus : *hilte* WW. 142<sup>35</sup>.

sg. acc. capulum : *hiltan* Aelfc. Gl. 318<sup>1</sup>; id.: *hiltan[n?]* WW. 549<sup>34</sup>; capulo tenens : *oþ þa hiltan* OE. Gl. 1<sup>4945</sup>, Hpt. Gl. 519<sup>16</sup>.

pl. nom. *swa þæt þa hiltan eodon in to þam innōðe* Judic. 3<sup>22</sup>.

capulum : *hilte* WW. 142<sup>15</sup> is, moreover, Acc. to *hilt* f. (ð) if capulum is not a copyist's mistake for capulus.

Compounds. 1. with *hilt* as second member of the compound.

*fetel-hilt* capulus balteo instructus : a hilt with belt attached.

sg. acc. *he gefeng þa fetel-hilt, hringmæl gebrægd* B. 1563.

*fealo-hilte* adj. capulo flavo (aureo) instructus, the tawny hilt, having a yellow or golden handle.

sg. nom. *feoll þa to foldan fealohilte swurd* By. 166.  
*wreoden-hilt* = *wriþen* adj. torto capulo instructus :  
with twisted hilt.

*þæt sweord . . . wreoden-hilt and wyrmfah* B. 1698;  
s. Part I under *sweord*.

*gehiltu* n. pl. capulus : hilt.

pl. dat. *sweord be gehiltum* Gen. 2905. Cf. OHG.  
*ga-hilezi*.

2. *hilte* as first member of the compound.

*hilte-cumbor* n. an ensign with hilt.

sg. acc. *forgeaf þa Beowulfe bearn Healfdenes . . .*  
*hroden hilt[e]-cumbor* B. 1022.

derived:

*hiltung*.

sg. acc. *macheram i. gladium : mece, hiltinge* OE. Gl.  
1<sup>758</sup>; id.: *hiltine* (probably for *hiltinc*) Hpt. Gl. 424<sup>so</sup> hence  
Hall's supposition *hiltine* 'a sword'.

*hiltian*.

*hilted* pp. capulo instructus : provided with a hilt.

sg. acc. *þæt oft wæpen abæd his mondryhtne, madm*  
*in healle, goldhilted sweord* Ridls. 56<sup>14</sup>.

Meaning. capulus : hilt, handle.

Etymology. To OE. *hilt, helt* n. m. belong MDu.  
*helt, hilt* m., ON. *hjalt* n. 'sword-hilt'; to OE. *hilte* f. be-  
long OSax. *hilita*, MLG. *hilte*, MDu. *helte, hilte*, OHG. *helza*,  
MHG. *helze*, f.

OE. *hilt, helt* m. n. are derived from Germ. \**helt-is*,  
-az a neuter s-stem, while *hilte* f. is from Germ. \**hilt-jon*  
the origin of which is not clear.

Compare the Romance words: It. *elsa, also* (from  
OHG. *helza* showing early borrowing), OFr. *heli* m., *helte* f.,  
MFr. *heut, heu, heute* are probably later borrowings from

ON. *hjalt* n., OE. *hilt* f. Compare also the derived verb *enhel din* (*Chanson de Roland*) ‘to adorn with a hilt’.

The masc. form *hilt* remained in ME., cf. Laym. 1559, dat. *hilt*, Gawain 1594 *hult*. In early NE. arose a very favorite expression “*by these hilts*” Henry IV — 2, IV, 230 and later in Byron ‘Don Juan’ XI, 57, in general, however, the meaning has remained unchanged to the present day.

### Isern.

Form. *isern* n. (a).

References. ferrum, gladius.

sg. nom. *sweord sceal on bearme, drihtlic isern* Gn.

C. 26; *oft mec isern scod sare on sidan* Ridls. 72<sup>14</sup>; *sippan, mec isern innanweardne brun bernade* Ridls. 93<sup>15</sup>.

sg. gen. *isernes dæl* Ridls. 59<sup>9</sup>.

sg. dat. *on wædle wrace and on iserne* Ps. 106<sup>9</sup>; id.: Ep. Al. 166<sup>735</sup>; *buton ænigre are seawunge ætgædere mid iserne and lige fornumene wæron* Bd. 1, 15, 52<sup>22</sup>; and *ealle pe he mihte mid isene (iserne) and fyres lyge he fornam* Bd. 3, 17, 204<sub>14</sub>.

sg. instr. *ic eom anhaga iserne wund, bille gebennad* Ridls. 6<sup>1</sup>.

sg. acc. *swa se læce hyd his isern (= knife)* Past. 185<sup>25</sup>.

Compounds.

*isern-byrne* f. s. *byrne*.

*isern-here* m. *exercitus loricatus* : armed host.

pl. dat. *æfter oðrum isernhergum* Exod. 348.

*isern-scar* f. iron shower, shower of missiles.

sg. gen. *þone pe oft gebad isern-scure* B. 3116.

*isern* adj. ferreus : of iron. S. B. T. and Greins Sprach-schatz II, p. 147.

### Isen.

Form. *isen* n. (a).

References. ferrum.

sg. nom. *þa wæs se ofen onhæted, isen eall ðurhgleded*  
Dan. 244.

*isen* adj. ferreus. S. B. T. and Grein u. *isern*.

### Iren.

Form. *iren* n. (a).

References. ferreum, gladius.

sg. nom. *ðæt þæt swurd þurh-wod wrætilicne wyrm,*  
*dryhtlic iren* B. 892; *æghwylc gecwæð þæt him heardra nan*  
*hrinan wolde iren ær-god* B. 989; *þæt-ðe gar nymed...*  
*Hreples eaferan, adl opðe iren ealdor ðinne* B. 1848; *guð*  
*bill geswac nacod æt niðe, iren ær-god* B. 2586.

sg. gen. *licgað me ymbutan heardes irenes hate geslægene*  
*grindlas greate* Gen. 383.

sg. acc. *meaht ðu . . . mece gecnawan, dyre iren* B.  
2050; *lætað wæpnes spor, iren ecgheard eadorgeard sceoran*  
An. 1181; *hio abiteð iren mid ome* Sal. 300; *(he) heft his*  
*sweord niman, leoflic iren* B. 1809.

sg. instr. *he wære mid irne eall ymbfangen* Sat. 518.

pl. gen. *þone syn-scaðan ȝenig ofer eorþan irennas cyst,*  
*guð-billa nan gretan nolde* B. 802; *þæt him irennas ecge*  
*mihton helpan æt hilde* B. 2683; *hine irennas ecga fornamon*  
B. 2828; *sealde his hyrsted sweord, irennas cyst ombiht-þegne*  
B. 673, 1697; *sio æt hilde gebad ofer borda gebræc bite irennas*  
B. 2259.

Compounds.

*iren-bend* m. an iron fetter.

nom. pl. *licgað me ymbe iren-bendas* Gen. 371.

pl. instr. *wæs þæt beorhte bold tobrocen swiðe eal inne-weard iren-bendum fæst* B. 998.

*iren-byrne* f. s. byrne.

*iren-þrēat* m. a mailed band.

sg. nom. *wæs se iren-þreat wæpnum gewurþad* B. 330.

*hring iren* s. hring.

*iren* adj. ferreus.

sg. nom. *ecg wæs iren* B. 1459, 2778.

pl. instr. (*draca*) of *blacere liðran irenum aplum* Sal. 28; *monig atol deor irenum hornum* Sal. 469.

*iren-heard* adj. hard as iron.

sg. nom. *eofer iren-heard* B. 1112.

Meaning. Ferrum, gladius: iron, sword. Originally the material of which the sword blade was made, it became finally a term applied to the entire sword, and was so used in the OE. poetry. Cf. *æsc* 'spear'.

Etymology. The Germ. word for iron is either one of the usual borrowings from the Celtic or a borrowing of meaning only, which has extended to all of the Germ. dialects. It appears in three different forms (s. Pauls Grdr., 325) cf. Goth. *eisarn*, OSax., OHG. *isarn*, *isan* (Goth. \**eisan*), MHG. *isern*, *isen*, NHG. *Eisen*, ON. *isarn*, *járn*, *jarn* (Goth. *eizan*), Dan., Swed. *jern*, Du. *yser*, *ijzer* (MHG. *isern*, *isen*), OE. *isern*, *isen*, *iren*. According to Stokes (Fick, Vgl. Wb. II, 25) the OE. forms are probably borrowed from Gall. *eisarno* < Urcelt. \**eisarno*, *eiserno*, OIr. *iarn*. Thurneysen (Kelto-Rom. p. 36) sets, however, an *isarno* for the Celt. ground form (cf. Johnson, Bezz. Beitr. 18, 17 ff., Much, Z. f. d. Altertum 42, 164 ff., and Schrader, Real Lex. u. *eisen*). Much endeavors to bring the word into relationship with OI. *iširás* 'frisch, blühend, kräftig' to *is-* f. 'Er-

quickung, Kraft' with the original meaning of 'the strong'  
cf. Dor. *ἱαρός* 'heilige, kräftig'.

In ME. two forms are extant *īren* Chaucer (C. T. 502),  
and *ȝeen* (*isen*) Ayenbete of Inwyt 139<sup>81</sup>, the former of  
which has given NE. *iron*. On the other hand compare the German *Eisen*, which has preserved the second  
form.

### Laf.

Form. *laf* f. (ð).

References. 1. reliquiae, residuum, relictus : remnant,  
remains, legacy.

sg. nom. *pæt is Hreðlan laf, Welandes geweorc* (lorica)  
B. 454; *standeð me her on eaxelum Aelfheres laf* Wald. 2<sup>18</sup>.

sg. gen. *bið him yrfeaward ealdre lafe* Ph. 376; *se wæs*  
*ordfruma earmre lafe* Dan. 152.

sg. dat. *pæs hēriges ham eft ne com ealles ungrundes*  
*ænig to lafe* Exod. 508; *he ys ana to lafe* Prs. Gen. XLII<sup>88</sup>;  
*pæt þær ne wearð furðon an to lafe on eallum Egyp̄ta lande*  
Prs. Exod. X<sup>19</sup>; *to lafe* An. 1081.

sg. acc. or pl. *geond Israela earme lafe* Dan. 80; *agaef*  
*him þa his leoda lafe* Dan. 453; *þonne min hlaford wile lafe*  
*picgan þara he of life het wæl-cræfte awrecan* Ridls. 91<sup>10</sup>;  
*bana lafe ascan* Ph. 575.

nom. pl. *on him gladiað gomelra lafe heard ond hring,*  
*mæl* B. 2036.

2. gladius : sword.

sg. nom. *ne his mæge[ne]s laf gewac æt wige* B. 2628;  
*gomel swyrd geteah, pæt wæs Eanmundes laf* B. 2611; *nu eom*  
*wrafra laf, fyres and feole* Ridls. 71<sup>9</sup>.

sg. acc. *þa he þone cniht genam . . . , folccuð geteaag ealde*  
*lafe (ecg grymetode)* Exod. 408; *þær genehost brægd eorl*

*Beowulfes ealde lafe* B. 795; *ond þu Unferð læt ealde lafe,*  
*wrætlic wæg-sweord wid-cuðne man heard-ecg habban* B.  
1488; *sweord ær gebræd god guð-cyning gomele lafe* B. 2563;  
*Hroðgar maðelode, hylt sceawode, ealde lafe* B. 1688; *het*  
*ða eorla hleo in gefetian Hreðles lafe, golde gegyrede* B. 2191.

pl. nom. *hine irenna ecga fornamon, hearde heaðo-*  
*scearde homera lafe* B. 2829; *mec hnossiað homera lafe heard*  
*ecg heoroscearp* Ridls. 6<sup>7</sup>; *pæt him fela laf[e] frecne ne-*  
*meahton scur-heard sceþðan* B. 1032.

pl. instr. *heowon heaðo-linda hamora lafum eaforan ead*  
*weardes Aeðelst. 6.*

For compounds with *laf* s. Grein, Sprachschatz, p. 152.

Etymology. Cognates to OE. *laf* are: OHG. *leiba*,  
*leipa* f., Goth. *laiba* f. 'Überbleibsel, remnant, remainder',  
OFrs. *läwe*, OSax. *leba*, ON. *leif*. Formed on the pret.  
stem of the verb which appears in Goth. as *leiban* in *bi-*  
*leiban*, OHG. *bi-liban*, OE. *be-lifan*, from a Germ. form  
such as \**laibō*. To an Idg. rt. \**leip-* 'to smear, to adhere,  
to stick' (Fick, Vgl. Wb. 121), which Wood (Jour. of Germ.  
Phil. I, 453 [1897]) supposes had the original meaning 'to  
flow'. Cf. OI. *limpáti* 'smeared', Gr. λιπαρής 'anhaltend,  
beharrlich' (Uhlenbeck, Ai. Wb. 262), and OSlav. *lipnati*.  
Lit. *lipti* 'to remain stuck, to adhere'.

### Lēoma.

Form. *lēoma* m. (an).

References. 1. *lumen, splendor : gleam, light.* For  
examples s. B. T. Dic. and Grein, Sprachschatz II, p. 178.

2. *gladius : sword-blade, sword, a poetical term.*

sg. nom. *lixte se leoma* B. 1570.

Compounds. *lēoma* as second member of the com-  
pound.

*beadu-leoma* m. ensis : sword.

sg. nom. *þæt se beado-leoma bitan nolde* B. 1523.

*hilde-leoma* m. gladius : sword.

sg. acc. *ponne him Hun Lafing hilde-leoman, billa selest, on bearme dyde* B. 1143.

pl. nom. *wide sprungon hilde-leoman* (flames from the dragon's mouth) B. 2583.

*sweord-leoma* m. ensium corruscatio : the gleam of swords.

sg. nom. *swurd-leoma stod swylce eal Finns-buruh fyrenu wære* Finn. 35.

Meaning. A kenning for sword chiefly found in Beowulf. The original meaning was that of 'light-beam, a shining light'.

Etymology. *leoma* stands in Ablaut to Goth. *lauh-muni* (*lauhmōni*) f. 'lightning, flame' written either áu or aú (s. under *lauhatjan* Uhlenbeck, Goth. Wb. 89). Cognates to OE. *leoma* are: ON. *ljóme* and OSax. *liomo* 'beam, light' to which is related Lat. *lamen*, all belonging to an Idg. rt. \**leuk-* 'to shine', to which is related Skt. *lókati* 'erblickt', *locanam* 'Auge, eye'.

### Mēce.

Form. *mēče, mēche* m. (ja).

References.

sg. nom. *framea i. tela : mece* OE. Gl. 1<sup>891</sup>; *mucro* : ~ WW. 33<sup>20</sup>; id. Corp. 1341; *machera* (gl. *gladius* [*mu-erone*]) : ~ Hpt. Gl. 470<sup>4</sup>; *machera* : ~ VPs. 57<sup>5</sup>; *hrafe seofþ ðan wæs æfter mund-gripe mece gefinged* B. 1938.

sg. gen. *bill forscrifeð, meces mærðo* Sal. 163; *sumum meces ecg on meodu bence yrrum ealowasan ealdor offringed* Wy. 48; *nales wordum log meces ecge* B. 1812; *he on mer-*

*genne meces ecgum getan wolde* B. 2939; *meces ecgum* B. 2614; *oððe gripe meces* B. 1765.

sg. dat. *romphea versatili* i. gladio, i. mobili vel volubili : *eƿwiltum, mid awendenlicum mece* OE. Gl. 1<sup>1151</sup>; *romphæā* (gl. gladio) *versatili* (gl. vel volubili. mobili. anticipiti. utrāque parte acutus): *marg. eƿwiltum oþþe mid awendenlicum mece* Hpt. Gl. 433<sup>27</sup>; *machera* i. mucrone : *mece* OE. Gl. 1<sup>2739</sup>; *mucrone* : ~ WW. 440<sup>28</sup>; *sloh ða wundenlocc þone feondsceaðan fagum mece* Jud. 104.

sg. acc. *frameam* : *meche* Cant. Ps. 16<sup>13</sup>; *macheram* i. *gladium* : *mece, hiltinge* OE. Gl. 1<sup>758</sup>; *macheram* : *mece* OE. Gl. 18<sup>40</sup>; id. WW. 440<sup>27</sup>; *meahtr ðu, min wine, mece geasnawan þone þin fæder to gefeohtē bær* B. 2047; *þonne he gewyrceð to wera hilde helm . . . scirne mece oððe scyldes rond* Crä. 65; *ne mihte he gehealdan heardne mece* By. 167; *þa hwile þe he wæpen mæge habban, and healdan, heardne mece, gar, and god swurd* By. 236; *mægð scearpne mece . . . of sceadœ abræd* Jud. 78; *let se hearda Higelaces þegn brad(n)e mece, eald siveord eotensc, entiscne helm . . . brecan ofer bord-weal* B. 2978.

sg. instr. *mid mece* Exod. 413; *ne murn ðu for ði mece* Wald. 1<sup>24</sup>; *mid ði mece* Wald. 2<sup>6</sup>; *alde mece* Exod. 494.

pl. gen. *meca gehwane* B. 2685; *mid meca ecgum* Boet. 9<sup>29</sup>; *hreman nedorfte meca gemanan* Aeðelst. 40.

pl. dat. *mecum gemetað* Wald. 2<sup>24</sup>; *on mergenne tecum wunde be yrð-lafe uppe lægon* B. 565; *mecum mylenscearpum* Aeðelst. 24.

Compounds. With *mece* as second member of the compound.

*beadu-mece* m. battle-sword.

pl. nom. *þæt hine syðpan no brond ne beado-mecas bitan ne-meahton* B. 1454.

*hæft-mēče* m. ensis capulo praeditus : sword with hilt.

sg. dat. *wæs þæm hæft-mece Hrunting nama* B. 1457.

*hilde-mēče* m. battle sword.

pl. nom. *ond Hear[dr]ede hilde-meceas under bord-hreodan to bonan wurdon* B. 2202.

*sige-mēče* m. victorious sword.

acc. *swaped sige-mēce mid þære swiðran hond* Cri. 1531.

Meaning. a long two-edged sword.

Etymology. Although traceable in most of the Germ. dialects, the origin of the word is not clear, the contested point being that of borrowing — namely whether the Germ. form is to be regarded as a loan word from Finnish *miekka*, or the Slav. and Finn. words as loan words from the Germ.

Bremer (PBB. XI, 4 ff.) regards Goth. *mēkeis* recorded only in the Acc. form *mēki* (Eph. VI), as a possible loan word from the Finn., giving as reasons the skillfulness of the Finns at that time in the making of weapons; the fact that in Idg. no related word has as yet been found; the appearance of the word *mīči* as Finn. loan word in Slavic; and finally the various wanderings, which the word appears to have made as loan word in the various Germ. dialects. He cites here as example for the latter OE. *mēče*, which according to the laws of sound change must be derived from *\*mōki* rather than from *\*māki*, which would have given *māče*, and when compared to Goth. *mēkeis*, ON. *mākir*, OSax., *māki* can only be explained as Stammabstufung *ē:ō*, or as Goth. loan word borrowed before the emigration to England. Uhlenbeck explains the *ē* of OE. *mēče*, however, as an Anglian or Kent. form for WS. *ā*, which does away with the theory of Goth. borrowing for the OE.

Furthermore it is by no means certain, as Bremer states, that the Slav. *mīči* is a Finn. loan word, on the contrary it is much more probable that both *miekka* and *mīči* are very early Germ. loan words in Finn. and Slav. Of this opinion is Miklosich (D. W. Ak. XVI, 112<sup>b</sup>, 1867), who treats OSlav. *mīči* as Germ. in origin; Kluge follows Mik. (Pauls Grund.<sup>2</sup> I, 361), as does Uhlenbeck (Goth. Wb.) giving Finn. *miekka* and OSlav. *mīči* as Germ. loan words. Schrader (Sprachvgl. u. Urgesch. 324) speaks against a Finn. origin for the word, and Thomsen (Got. Sproklasses Indflyd. på den finske 43, 134) gives *miekka* as loan word from Goth. *mēkeis*, which together with *niekla*, *neula*, *nål* (Goth. *neþla*) shows very old borrowing, all later Goth. loan words with ē, ON., OHG. a, appearing in Finn. as aa (ä). Hirt (PBB. 23<sup>341</sup>) derives OSlav. *mīči* from the Goth., Goth. ē becoming ī in Slav. Cf. further Liv. *mök*, Lap. *miekke*, and Krim Goth. *mycha*, all meaning 'sword, knife'.

The root is uncertain, s. Fick, Vgl. Wb. I, 511. Graßmann, K. Z. XII, 166.

-Mæl.

Form. *mæl* n. (a).

References. 1. measure, time, point of time, occasion.

2. mark, token, ornament.

See B. T. and Grein, Sprachschatz II, p. 221.

3. sword (-*mæl* in compound, and only used poetically).

*brogden-*, *broden-mæl* n. inlaid sword.

sg. nom. *sweord ær gemealt*, *forbarn broden-mæl* B. 1616; *pæt hildebil forbarn, brogden-mæl* B. 1667; *heardecy cwacab, beofab brogden-mæl* El. 758.

*græg-mæl* adj. grey-colored.

sg. nom. *sweord Biowulfes gomol ond græg-mæl* B. 2682.

*hring-mæl* adj. adorned with rings.

sg. acc. *he gefeng þa fetel-hilt, hring-mæl gebrægd* B.

1564.

*scēaden-mæl* adj. with divided (branching) ornaments or patterns.

sg. nom. *pæt hit sceaden-mæl scyran moste* B. 1939.

*wunden-mæl* adj. a sword with twisted ornaments, damascened.

sg. nom. *wærp ða wunden-mæl wrættum gebunden yrre oretta* B. 1531.

— *mæled* adj.

*hring-mæled* adj. adorned with rings.

pl. acc. *handum brugdon hæleð of sceðum hringmæled sweord, ecgum dihtig* Gen. 1992.

*scir-mæled* adj. with bright ornaments.

pl. acc. *mundum brugdon scealcas of sceadum scirmæled swyrd* Jud. 230.

**Etymology.** Identical with OHG., MHG. *mäl* ‘Zeitpunkt’, Goth. *mel* ‘time’, which is connected with the Idg. root \**mē* ‘to measure’, Lat. *mētri* (s. Kluge, Etym. Wb., p. 257). The above words are a poetic kenning for ‘sword’, -*mæl* being understood first as ‘mark, token, ornament’, then as ‘sword with such ornaments’. The words are used as substantives or adjectives.

### Ord.

**Form.** *ord* m. (a).

**References.** 1. cuspis, mucro : point of sword or other weapon, also used for the entire sword.

sg. nom. mucro : *swurdes ord oððe oðres wæpnes* Aelfc. Gl. 318<sup>34</sup>; mucro : *swerdes ord, vel oþres wæpnes* WW. 549<sup>35</sup>;

mucro : *swurd oððe* ~ Aelfc. Gr. 35<sup>2</sup>; mucro : *swurdes* ~ WW. 142<sup>16</sup>; mucro : *ælces wæpnes* ~ WW. 142<sup>36</sup>; *þy læs se attres ord in gebuge under banlocan* Cri. 768; *oð-pæt wordes ord breosthord þurhbræc* B. 2791; *him æt heortan stod ætterne ord* By. 146; *ord in gewod* By. 157; *me sceal wæpen niman, ord and iren* By. 253; *ecg sceal on sweorde and ord spere* Gn. (Ex.) 204; *seaxes ord* Ridls. 61<sup>12</sup>; *and ord somod þingum geþydan* Ridls. 61<sup>18</sup>; *se ord bigde upp to þam hiltum* Hom. Skt. I, 12<sup>226</sup>.

sg. acc. *lætað gares ord . . . in gedufan in fæges ferð* An. 1330; *þurh attres ord* Jul. 471.

sg. dat. instr. *mid gares orde* Gen. 1522; *ic aglæcan orde geræhte* B. 556; *hwa þær mid orde ærost mihte on fægean men feorh gewinnan* By. 124; *he mid orde anne geræhte flotan on þam folce* By. 226; *of sidan seaxes orde* Ridls. 77<sup>6</sup>.

pl. gen. *hafað tungena gehwylc XX orda, hafað orda gehwylc engles snytro* Sal. 231—232.

pl. acc. *wið ord ond wið ecge* B. 1549; *hi willað eow to gafole garas syllan, ættrynne ord and ealde swurd* By. 47; *bord ord onfeng* By. 110; *æt garpræce berað bord and ord* El. 1186; *Hit is mycel nēd-pearf ðæt . . . mid irenum piſlum and ordum hie man slea* Bl. Hom. 189<sup>30</sup>; *gara ordum* An. 32; *to þam orlege ordum and bordum* An. 1205, El. 235; *under tungla getrumum twigena ordum* Sal. 142; *bitrum ordum* Ridls. 18<sup>8</sup>; *ordum ic steppe in grene græs* Ridls. 16<sup>5</sup>.

2. initium: source, beginning.

sg. nom. *þa word acwæð ord moncynnes* Gen. 1111; *oð þæt wuldortorht dæges þriddan up ofer deep wæter ord aræmde* Gen. 2876.

For further references cf. B. T. and Grein, Sprach-schatz II, p. 356.

3. acies, frons exercitus : van, front.

sg. gen. *hæfde wigsigor Elimitarna ordes wisa, weold wælstowe* Gen. 2004.

sg. dat. *symle ic him on feðan beforan wolde, ana on orde* B. 2498.

sg. acc. *sippian hy forwæcon Wicinga cynn and Ingeldes ord forbigan* Wid. 48.

For further references cf. B. T. and Grein.

4. nobilissimus, princeps : chief, prince.

sg. nom. *wile up heonan eard gestigan æbelinga ord mid þas engla gedryht* Cri. 515; *hi þær Pantan stream mid prasse bestodon, Eastseaxena ord and se æschere* By. 69.

For further references cf. as above.

Compounds. *ord* as first member of the compound.

*ord<sup>1</sup>*.

*ord-bona* m. murderer.

sg. acc. *ordbanan Abeles* (Cain) Gen. 1097.

*ord-stapu* f. ingressus cuspidum : prick, wound.

pl. nom. *gif me ordstæpe egle wæron* Ridls. 72<sup>17</sup>.

*ord<sup>4</sup>*.

*ord-fruma* m. princeps : chief.

sg. nom. *wæs min fæder folcum gecyfed, æpele ordfruma Ecgþeon haten* B. 263; *se wæs ordfruma earmre lafe* Dan. 152.

[For further references, and for  
*ord-fruma* auctor, creator : originator, creator s. Grein,  
Sprachschatz II, 357.]

*ord-wiga* m. summus vel praefectus militum : chief.

sg. voc. *Aetlan ordwyga!* Wald. 1<sup>6</sup>.

Names.

Cf. names of persons *Ordlaf*, *Ordgar*, *Ordnōð*, *Ordulf*, *Ordhelm*, etc.

S. *orrīc esden* and *ored* for *ordrēd*, *ordric* G. B. 496 (AD. 858).

**Etymology.** Cognate to OSax., OFrs. *ord*, OHG., MHG. *ort*, ON. *oddr* 'a point, corner'. The Goth. form must have been \**ueds*, not recorded. Further etym. is not clear. Cf. Grimm, D. Wb. under *ort*.

### Sēāð.

**Forms.** *sceāð*, *scēāð*, *scēð* f. (jō).

For the various forms s. Bülbring, Lautlehre §§ 167, 293 and 315.

### References.

sg. nom. *vagina* : *sceāð* Aelfc. Gl. 318<sup>8</sup> [MS. F. *sced*, J. *sceað*]; *vagina* : *sceað* WW. 142<sup>20</sup>; item 332<sup>37</sup>; *clasendis* : *sweordes* ~ WW. 140<sup>35</sup>.

sg. dat. *mægð scearpne mece . . . of sceāðe abrēd* Jud. 78; *sweord of sceāðe atugon* Ps. Th. 36<sup>14</sup>; *of sceāðe* Cant. Ps. 36<sup>14</sup>; *þa Byrhtnoð brēd bill of sceāðe* By. 162.

pl. dat. *handum brugdon hæled of sceāðum hringmæled* *sweord* Gen. 1992; *mundum brugdon scealcas of sceāðum scirmæled suyrd* Jud. 230.

**Meaning.** *vagina*, *clasendis* : the sword scabbard, sheath.

**Etymology.** Cognate forms to OE. *sceāð*, *scēāð*, ME. *schethe* (Wycl. John XVIII 2), NE. *sheath* are: OHG. *sceida*, MHG., NHG. *scheide* 'sheath', OSax. *scedja*, *scēdja*, ON. *skeider* (pl.) 'sheath', Dan. *skede*, Swed. *skida* 'husk, pod', Du. *scheede*. All from a Germ. type \**skaiðo-*, \**skaiðjō*, cf. Goth. *skaidan* 'to separate', from an Idg. rt. with *t*. In Idg. \**skhait-* is found together with \**skhaid-* 'spalten, trennen, split, separate'. Here in all probability

the media of the end syllable has developed from the corresponding tenuis under conditions as yet not completely explained (cf. Brugm. Grdr. I<sup>3</sup>, p. 630).

From \*skhaid-, \*skhid- are derived Lat. *scindo*, Gr. σχίζω 'spalte', Lit. *skėdžiu* 'scheide', OI. *chinád-mi*. From \*skhait-: Goth. *skaidan*, OE. *scéadan*, OHG. *skeidan* accented on the end syllable, while OE. *scēþ* is derived from a form with accent on the vowel of the stem — both forms appearing in OSax. side by side *scēþja* and *scēðja*. From the derivation it is evident that the meaning is 'a separating wall' i. e. that which separates and protects the body of the warrior from the sword.

### Scenn (?).

A single reference from Beowulf 1694 in the dat. plur. *swa wæs on þem scennum sciran goldes þurh run-stafas rihte gemearcod*.

The nom. sg. is probably *scenn* or *scenne*.

Neither Etymology nor Meaning is clear, but *scenn* in the passage above quoted refers most likely to a plate of metal on the handle of a sword.

### Seax.

Forms. *seax*, *sex*, *sæx* n. (a). (S. Sievers Gramm. § 108<sup>3</sup>).

References. 1. culter : knife.

sg. nom. culter : *saex* WW. 16<sup>31</sup> = Corp. 625.; id.: *seax* *oððe scyrseax* WW. 366<sup>30</sup>; cultellus : *sex* Aelfc. Gl. 315<sup>16</sup> = WW. 548<sup>7</sup>; id.: *seax* WW. 273<sup>3</sup>; id.: *sex* Benet. c. LV, p. 93<sup>9</sup>; id.: *seax* R. Ben. c. LV, p. 92<sup>8</sup>.

sg. dat. *ne he his beard mid seaxe ne scear* Mart. 100<sup>8</sup>.

sg. instr. *se þe hæleþa bearn secgas searoþoncle seaxe delfað Ridls.* 41<sup>97</sup>.

sg. acc. *he gelæhte þa his sex* Hom. Skt. II, 31<sup>69</sup>; and *hyt his seax and hwæt* Past. 187<sup>5</sup>; *geteah þeah his seax* Bl. Hom. 215<sup>6</sup>.

2. *machaera* : sword.

sg. nom. *þa nyste he færinga hwær þæt seax* com Bl. Hom. 223<sup>17</sup>; *sæt smið, sloh seax lytel iserna wund swiðe* M. C. 21.

sg. gen. *swylce hit seaxes ecg scearp þurhwode* Cri. 1141; *heard mec sippað snæð seaxes ecg sindrum begrunden* Ridls. 27<sup>6</sup>; *hu mec seaxes ord and seo swipre hond . . . þingum geþydan* Ridls. 61<sup>12</sup>; *sippað he me of sidan seaxes orde hyd arypeð* Ridls. 77<sup>6</sup>.

sg. instr. (*heo*) *hyre seax[e] geteah* B. 1545.

sg. acc. *nim þonne þæt seax, ado on wætan* M. C. 48.

Compounds. *seax* as second member of the compound.

*blod-seax* n. lancet.

sg. nom. *flebotoma* : *blodsæx* Corp. 896; *fletoma* : *blodseax* WW. 400<sup>11</sup>; *flebotomus* : *blodsex* WW. 117<sup>38</sup>.

sg. dat. *flebotomo* : *blodseaxe* WW. 400<sup>10</sup>; id. : *blodseax* (nom. form) WW. 494<sup>11</sup>.

sg. acc. *flebotomum* : *blodsex* WW. 240<sup>17</sup>; id. : *blod-seax*, *oððe ædder-seax*: Graece namque fleps vena, to-mum vero incisio nominatur WW. 410<sup>10</sup>; *fledomum* (*phlebotomum*) : *blodsæx* Leid. Gl. 110, Glogger 54, 7, p. 78; Corp. 896.

*hand-seax* n. dagger.

sg. nom. *sica* : *litel swurd oððe handsex* WW. 332<sup>35</sup>

= Aelfc. Gl. 318<sup>2</sup>; sica : *lotel (swerd, uel han)d sex* WW.  
549<sup>37</sup>.

sg. acc. *hæfde he and wæg mid hine twiecke handseax geættred* Bd. 2, 9, p. 122; *aerest his kyne-hlaforde an hand-secs* Chart. Th. 501<sup>3</sup>; *and Wulfstane an hand-secs on prim pundan* Chart. Th. 502<sup>16</sup>; *and he gean his cyne-hlaforde an handsex, and þæræ lecge is hundeahtati mancussa goldæs* Chart. Th. 527<sup>8</sup>.

pl. acc. *hæfdon handseax on heora handum* Bd. 5, 13, p. 440.

. *hype(hup)-seax* n. hip-knife, short sword.

sg. nom. *pugio, vel clunabulum : lytel sweord, vel hypotheses* WW. 143<sup>2</sup>.

sg. acc. *ponne he gewyrceð to wera hilde helm offe hupseax* Crä. 64.

*læce-seax* n. surgical knife.

sg. acc. *hyt ponne his læce-seax under his clædum* Past. 187<sup>35</sup>.

*nægel-seax* n. nail-knife.

*novaculum : næglsex* WW. 142<sup>33</sup>; *novacula : næglsex* WW. 336<sup>38</sup>.

*mete-seax* n. knife, dagger.

pl. dat. *and hie ne mid heora metseacsum ofsticedon inne on heora gemoterne* Or. 5, 12, 244, 18.

*scear-sex* n. a rasor.

*rasorium : scearsex* WW. 142<sup>32</sup>; *novacula : scærsaex* VPs. 51<sup>4</sup>; *machera acuta : scyrseax scearp* Bl. Gl. 56<sup>5</sup>.

*þeoh-seax* n. — thigh knife, a short sword carried on the thigh.

*semispantium (for semispatha) : þeoh-saex* Corp. 1832; *senspatium : þeohseax* WW. 532<sup>6</sup>; cf. also Ps. Th. 44<sup>4</sup> *gyrd þin sveord ofer þin þeoh*.

*wæl-seax* slaughter sword, war knife, dagger.

sg. inst. *þa-gen sylf cyning wællseax[e] gebræd* B. 2703.

Flurnamen.

*Seax* in Flurnamen has the meaning of Lat. *saxum* not Germ. *knife*.

Cf. *ærrest on seaxea seað of seaxe seaðe on þone holan æsc* G. B. 596 (A. D. 901); *þonon on seaxa brōc* G. B. 1003 (A. D. 957). See Middendorff p. 116.

Meaning. 1. machaera : a short one-edged sword.

2. culter, cultellus : a knife.

Etymology. The term *seax* is Germ. with the meaning 'sword' or 'knife'. Cognates are: OHG., MHG. *sahs* 'a short knifelike sword'; in NHG. it appears in the compound *Messer* < OHG. *maz-*, *mezzi-sahs*, OFrs. *sax*, ON. *sax*, 'a short sword', in Swed., Dan. *sax*, which in the sg. refers to 'a large carving knife', in the pl. to 'scissors'. Radically related to Lat. *saxum* 'a stone, a sharp edged cliff' from Idg. \**saksa-* m. 'Schärfe (Stein), Eisenspitze eines Geschosses, Schneide des Pfeils' etc. (Fick, Vgl. Wb. I, 560), to the rt. \**sek* : *sok* 'to cut'. Found also in Lat. *secare, securis, sica*, etc.

Related are also the following words in Slav. (cf. Kuhns Z. 16<sup>207</sup>, Hpt. Z. 6<sup>490</sup>): — Lith. *sýkis* 'blow', OSlav. *sěsti* 'to strike', *sěkyra* 'axe', *sěcivo* (Mikl. 974), Serv. *sjékiva* 'axe', NSlav. *sekera* 'axe', cf. Lat. *sica*. See Solmsen Kuhns Z. 34<sup>1</sup>f, Brugmann Grundr.<sup>2</sup> I, p. 504.

For relationship to OCSlav. *kosa* 'sickle' (rt. *kes-*), OI. *gas-* 'to cut' cf. J. Schmidt (K. Z. XXV, p. 127).

### Sečg.

Form. *sečg* f. (jō).

References.

sg. acc. *ac wit on niht sculon secge ofersittan* B. 684.

pl. instr. *secgum ofslegene him on swaðe feollon æðelinga*  
*bearn* Gen. 2001.

Meaning. *ensis* : sword.

Compounds.

*sečg-plega* m. battle.

dat. *æt þam secgplegan* An. 1353.

Etymology. *Sečg* is derived from the same root as OE. *sage*, *sagu*, Engl. *saw*, OHG. *sēga*, *saga*, MHG. *sēge*, *sage*, NHG. *Säge*, Du. *zaag*, ON. *sög*, Swed. *såg* ‘a saw’ from Germ. \**sagō* f. (ð), while *sečg* is from \**sagjō* f. (jō) with i-Umlaut. Both belong to the Germ. base *sag-* with accent on the end syllable, from the stem accented form of which, *sáh-*, is derived OE. *seax*, OHG. *sahs* both forms belonging to the Idg. root \**sek-* : *sok-* ‘to cut’.

In the NE. the f. form with the meaning sword has disappeared, the masc. only being retained meaning ‘rushes, sedge (sword-like grass)’.

### Sweord.

Forms. *sweord*, *swurd*, *swyrd*, *swerd*, *swurð*, *sword*  
n. (a).

gen. pl. *sweorda* once *swordana* (Rush. MS.).

nom. acc. pl. *sweord*, *swiord* (Cant. Ps.), *swurd*, *swyrd*,  
once *suordas* (Lind.), once *sworde* (Rush), and *suerde* Chart.  
Th. 505<sup>20</sup>, 512<sup>19</sup> etc.

References.

sg. nom. gladius : *sweord* VPs. 36<sup>15</sup>, 43<sup>7</sup>, 58<sup>8</sup>;  
VHy. 7<sup>51</sup>, 7<sup>83</sup>; gladius, machaera, spata, framea: *swurd*  
(MS. F. *swyrd*) Aelfc. Gl. 317<sup>18</sup>; id. uel pugio : *sweord*  
WW. 142<sup>7</sup>; mucro : *swurd oððe ord* Aelfc. Gr. 35<sup>1</sup>; sica :  
*litel swurd oððe hand-sex* [MS. W. *hondsex*, MS. F. *swyrd*]

Aelfc. Gl. 318<sup>3</sup>; sica : *litel sveord* WW 142<sup>14</sup>; ensis : *sward* Aelfc. Gr. 55<sup>10</sup>; *hiltleas sveord* WW. 142<sup>34</sup>; machera : *anecge sveord* WW. 142<sup>37</sup>; pugio, uel clunabulum : *lytel sveord uel hype-sex* WW. 143<sup>1</sup>; framea : *sweord oððe ætgare* WW. 404<sup>15</sup>; gladius : *sweord* Cant. Ps. 43<sup>7</sup>, Cant. Hy. 6<sup>42</sup>; machera : *sweord* Cant. Hy. 56<sup>5</sup>; *min swyrd sceal pinne þone fægran lichaman eall to styccean forcyrfan* Homl. Ass. XV<sup>107</sup>; gladius : *sweord* Cant. Ps. 36<sup>15</sup>; ~ ib. 58<sup>8</sup>; ~ ib. VPs. 36<sup>15</sup>, Cant. Hy. 4<sup>9</sup>; *ac þæt swurd ne mihte* Homl. Sk. I, 12<sup>212</sup>; *þæt swurd læg þar* Homl. Sk. I, 19<sup>105</sup>; *þæt scearpe swurd* Homl. Sk. I, 19<sup>185</sup>; *þæt swurd þurh-wod wræflicne wyrm* B. 890; *sweord swate fah* B. 1286; *sweord wæs swatig* B. 1569; *þæt sveord ongan . . . wanian* B. 1605; *sweord ær ge-mealt* B. 1615; *hwam þæt sveord geworht wære* B. 1696; *penden pis sveord polað* B. 2499; *nu sceall . . . heard sveord ymb hord wigan* B. 2509; *urum sceal sveord ond helm . . . bam gemæne* B. 2659; *ðæt sveord gedeaf fah ond fæted* B. 2700; *þa wæs on healle heard-ecg togen, sveord ofer setlum* B. 1289; *feoll þa to foldan fealohilte swurd* By. 166; *is him on welerum wrað sveord ond scearp* Ps. 58<sup>7</sup>.

sg. gen. gladii : *sveordes* VPs. 62<sup>11</sup>; gladii ejus : *sweordes his* VPs. 88<sup>44</sup>; *mid swurdes eege* Homl. Skt. II, 25<sup>415</sup>; id. 25<sup>503</sup>; id. Prs. Exod. 27<sup>13</sup>; id. Homl. Skt. I, 18<sup>408</sup>; mucro : *swurdes ord* WW. 142<sup>16</sup>; mucro : *sverdes ord*, uel *opres wæpnes* WW. 549<sup>35</sup>; gladii : *swurdes Corp.* Gosp. Lk. XXI<sup>24</sup> (other readings Camb. MS. *sweordes*, Lind. *suordes*, Rush. pl. *swordana*); *on sveordes had* B. 2193; *mid sveordes ecge* Gen. 2857; *sweordes ecg* B. 1106; id. An. 1132; *fultum þu him afyrdest fagan sveordes* Ps. 88<sup>36</sup>; *sweordes swengum* B. 2386; *under sveordes hand* Ps. 62<sup>8</sup>; *ond ic gean into þære stove for uncer begra saule . . . and þæs swurdes mid þam sylfrenan hylte* Chart. Th. 558<sup>10</sup>; *ond ic gean minon*

*feder . . . þes seolferhiltan swurdes þe Ulfscytel ahite Chart.*  
Th. 559<sup>14</sup>; *ond ic geān Eadmunde . . . þes swurdes mid þam*  
*pyttedan hiltan Chart. Th. 559<sup>15</sup>; ond mines swyrdes mid*  
*fetele Chart. Th. 516<sup>16</sup>; and he geān Aelfrið . . . anæs*  
*swurdaes Chart. Th. 527<sup>17</sup>.*

sg. dat. *mucrone : sweorde* WW. 440<sup>18</sup>; *gladio : ~*  
Cant. Ps. 43<sup>4</sup>; id. 44<sup>4</sup>; id. 143<sup>10</sup>; *mid his godcunde sweorde*  
Mart. 50<sup>7</sup>; *in gladio : in sweorde* VPs. 77<sup>62</sup>; id. 77<sup>64</sup>; id. 43<sup>4</sup>,  
*de gladio : of sweorde* VPs. 143<sup>10</sup>; *gladio meo : sweorde*  
*minum* VHy. 5<sup>15</sup>; *stricta mac(ha)era : getogone sueorde*  
Corp. 1927; *mid his swurde* Homl. Skt. II, 25<sup>281</sup>; *mid ato-*  
*genum swurde* Homl. Skt. II 25<sup>583</sup>; *mid swurde* Prs. Exod.  
22<sup>23</sup>; *he ne slog mid his sweorde* Past. 199<sup>5</sup>; *mid ðæm*  
*sweorde* Past. 199<sup>6</sup>; *mid heardum ~* Homl. Skt. I, 2<sup>868</sup>; *mid*  
*cwealm-bærum swurde* Homl. Skt. I, 7<sup>244</sup>; *hi sceoldan þa*  
*under-hingan nacodum ~* Homl. Skt. I, 5<sup>28</sup>; *mid ~* Homl.  
Skt. I, 9<sup>126</sup>; *mid þam ~* Homl. Skt. I, 12<sup>222—225</sup>; *mid*  
*heofonlicum ~* Homl. Skt. 18<sup>406</sup>; *from ðæm arleasan*  
*sweorde* VPs. 16<sup>18</sup>; *a framea : from ~* VPs. 21<sup>21</sup>; *mid*  
~ Bl. Homl. 47<sup>14</sup>; *gebrægd ða his sweorde* Bl. Homl.  
223<sup>7</sup>; *gladio : sweorde* Cant. Ps. 77<sup>62</sup>, <sup>64</sup>; *mid atogenum*  
*swurde* Homl. Ass. XVIII<sup>284</sup>; *of hwiten ~* Homl. Ass. XV<sup>184</sup>;  
*framea : sweorde* Cant. Ps. 9<sup>7</sup>; id. : *sweorde* Cant. Ps. 21<sup>21</sup>;  
*mid his sweorde* Or. 5, 2, 216<sup>24</sup>; *þa heora tungan teoð teonan*  
*gehwylce sweorde efenscearpe* Ps. 63<sup>8</sup>; *sealde þa his swæs*  
*folc sweorde under ecge* Ps. 77<sup>62</sup>; *on guman sweorde* Gn.  
(Ex.) 126; *forsoc he ðam swurde* Wald. 1<sup>28</sup>; *gladio : swurde*  
Gosp. (Corp.) Matt. XXVI<sup>52</sup> (other readings Camb. *sweorde*,  
Lind. *sword*, Rush. *sweorde*); id. : *swurde* Gosp. Corp. Lk.  
22<sup>49</sup> (other readings similar to Matt.).

sg. instr. *mid sweorde* Mart. 58<sup>15</sup>; ib. 218<sup>16</sup>; ib.  
196<sup>14</sup>; ib. 108<sup>8</sup>; ib. 128<sup>17</sup>; ib. 86<sup>10</sup>; ib. 96<sup>22</sup>; ib. 168<sup>18</sup>;

ib. 208<sup>22</sup>,<sup>23</sup>; ib. 222<sup>6</sup>; *mid mine sweorde* Mart. 172<sup>1</sup>; *ab eo ipsius gladio amputavi caput: from him his agnum sweorde ic acearf heafud* VHy. 1<sup>10</sup>; *her lið sweorde ge-heawan* Jud. 289; *ane sweorde merce gemærde . . .* Wid. 41; *mid þys sweorde* Jud. 89; *forþan ic hine sweorde swebban nelle* B. 679; *þonne ic sweorde drep ferhð-genidlan* B. 2880; *sweorde ne meahte on ðam aglæcean ænige þinga wunde gewyrcean* B. 2904; *mid sweorde ofsloh* B. 574; *ic him penode deoran sweorde* B. 561; *leothan sweorde* B. 2492; *mid sweorde* Exod. 419; id. Boet. 9<sup>31</sup>; *fyrene sweorde* Gen. 947; id. 1575; *ac hine se halga wer. gyrde grægan sweorde* Gen. 2865; *ond lifes treo legene sweorde halig healdan* El. 757; *mid his swurde* By. 118; *gyrde hine his swurde* Finn. 13; *mid þy ilcan sweorde* Mart. 116<sup>18</sup>.

sg. acc. *macheram : sveord* WW. 440<sup>16</sup>, 532<sup>5</sup>; *gladium : ~* Cant. Ps. 36<sup>14</sup>, 63<sup>4</sup>, 75<sup>4</sup>, 7<sup>18</sup>, 88<sup>44</sup>, Cant. Hy. 6<sup>25</sup>, 16<sup>8</sup>; id. VPs. 7<sup>18</sup>, 36<sup>14</sup>, 44<sup>4</sup>, 63<sup>4</sup>, 75<sup>4</sup>; VHy. 7<sup>80</sup> *frameam : swurd* VPs. 34<sup>3</sup>; *gladium : ~* Gosp. Corp. Matt. 26<sup>51</sup>, 52 (other readings Camb. *sweord*, Lind. *suord*, Rush. *sweord*); ~ ib. Lk. 22<sup>36</sup> (Rush. *sword*); ~ ib. John 18<sup>10</sup>, 11; id.: *swurde* Corp. Mk. 14<sup>47</sup> (other readings Camb. *sweorde*, H. and R. *sweord*, Lind. *suord*, Rush. *sword*); id.: *swurd* Corp. Matt. 10<sup>34</sup> (Camb. *sweord*, Lind. *suord*, Rush. *sweord*); *ond hæfde fyren sveord in his honda* Mart. 182<sup>15</sup> (in Mart. *sweord* is 5 times recorded); *and gelaehete his agen swurd* Hom. Ass. IX, 304 (in Hom. Ass. *swurd* 8 times recorded); *þa þa he het petrum behydan his swurd* Hom. Skt. II, 162<sup>65</sup> (in Aelfric's Lives of the Saints *swurd* is recorded more than ten times); *and anra gehwylc hæfde sveord ofer his hype* Bl. Hom. 11<sup>18</sup>; *he sylf bar his swurd* Prs. Gen. 22<sup>6</sup>, 10; *þat ic sveord bere* B. 437 (*sweord* in acc. occurs 12 times in B.); *gomel swyrd geteah* B. 2610; *nam on Ongendio iren-byrrnan,*

heard *swyrd hilted* B. 2987; and *ic an mine kynelouerd . . . an swerd* Chart. Th. 556<sup>23</sup>; *þa ic selde mine louerd þæt suerd* Chart. Th. 505<sup>27</sup>; in Gen., Jud., Hö., Sal., Cri., Boet., and Ridls. *sweord* occurs 9 times; *þa hwile þe he mid handum healdan mihte bord and brad swurd* By. 15 (in By. *swurd* is found 3 times).

nom. acc. pl. *gladii : swiord* Cant. Ps. 149<sup>6</sup>; *gladii* *ancipites : sweord twiecge* VPs. 149<sup>6</sup>; *gladii : swurd* Gosp. Cörp. Lk. XXII<sup>38</sup> (other readings Camb. *sweord*, Lind. *suordas*, Rush. *sworde*); *þæt hig heora swurd þa abendon Homl. Ass. XVI<sup>139</sup>; Sigeferð and Eaha hyra sword getugon Finn. 17; *handum brugdon hæled of sceðum hringmæled sweord* Gen. 1992; *þæt we him ða guð-getawa gyldan woldon . . . helmas ond heard sweord* B. 2638; *hi willað eow to gafole garas syllan . . . and ealde swurd* By. 47; *hæfdon swurd nacod* B. 539; *discas lagon ond dyre suyrd* B. 3048; *rum wæs to nimanne londbuendum on ðam laðestan . . . bord ond brad suyrd* Jud. 318; *mundum brugdon scealcas of sceadum scirmæled suyrd* Jud. 230; *þæt is þonne ærest his hlaforde . . . twa swurd* Chart. Th. 596<sup>10</sup>; *þæt is þ ic geann minum hlaforde . . . twa seolforhilted sweord* Chart. Th. 544<sup>4</sup>; and *twa scearpe swurd settan him to-geanes* Homl. Skt. I, 14<sup>87</sup>; *þæt is erst þat ic an mine louerd tueye suerde fetelsade . . .* Chart. Th. 505<sup>20</sup>; *ond seax swurð* Chart. Th. 527<sup>10</sup>; *ond to suerde so ic best habbe* Chart. Th. 512<sup>19</sup>; *ond þam cinge minne hære-geatwa feower sweord* Chart. Th. 499<sup>29</sup>.*

gen. pl. *ðonne sweorda gelac sunu Healfdenes efnan wolde* B. 1040; *besæt ða sin-herge sweorda lafe* B. 2936; *þær wearð Ongendriow ecgum sweorda . . . on bid wrecen* B. 2961; *her Aeðelstan cyning . . . and Edmund æðeling . . . geslogen æt sæcce sweorda ecgum Aeðelst. 4. swordana* Rush. Luk. 21<sup>24</sup>.

dat. pl. *þæt hig wyllað us mid hyra swurdum ofslean*

Prs. Exod. 5<sup>21</sup>; *ond mid sweordum hi wæron ofslægene* Past. 205<sup>18</sup>; *and het ða æt nextan þa hæðenan cwelleras ingan mid swurdum* Homl. Skt. II, 24<sup>62</sup>; *alege hi mid swurdum ðe lufigendra* Homl. Skt. II, 25<sup>378</sup>; *to þam anpræcum swurdum* Homl. Skt. II, 28<sup>73</sup>; *mucronibus : sweordum* WW. 440<sup>14</sup>; *mid urum swurdum* Homl. Ass. IX<sup>148</sup>; *mid sweordum and mid strengþum* Bl. Homl. 149<sup>86</sup>; *oð se mæsta dæl þæs heriges læg gesæged on ðam sigewonge, sweordum geheawan* Jud. 295; *eðelweardas ealdhettende swyrdum aswefede* Jud. 322; *fyllan folctogan fagum sweordum* Jud. 194; *fagum swyrdum ealde æfðoncan* Jud. 264; *fagum swyrdum* Jud. 302; *hæfdon eal-fela eotena cynnes sweordum gesæged* B. 884; *fagum sweordum* B. 586; *fife lagon on ðam campstede . . . sweordum a-swefede* Aæðelst. 30; *heardum sweordum* Wid. 120; *wæpna ecgum, sweordum aswebban* An. 72; *wæran sacerdas heora sweordum abrotene* Ps. 77<sup>64</sup>; *mid here-geatwum hilde-torhtum, sweordum ond fetelum* Boet. 25<sup>10</sup>; *cum gladiis : mid swurdum* Corp. Matt. 26<sup>55</sup> (other readings: Camb. *sweordum*, H. *sweorden*, Lind. *suordum*, Rush.<sup>1</sup> *sweordum*); *cum gladiis : mid swurdon* Corp. Mk. 14<sup>48</sup> (other readings: Camb. *sweordum*, H. *sweorden*, R. *sweordon*, Lind. *suordum*, Rush.<sup>2</sup> *swordum*); *cum gladiis : mid swurdum* Corp. Lk. 22<sup>52</sup> (other readings as in Matt. 26<sup>55</sup> above).

Compounds. 1. with *sweord* as second member of compound.

*að-sweord* f. a sword oath.

gen. *aðswyrde his* Ps. Stev. 104<sup>9</sup>.

pl. nom. *bið abrocene on ba healfe að-sweord eorla*  
B. 2064.

*byrn-sweord* n. fiery sword.

sg. acc. *he his byrnsweord getyhp* Bl. Hom. 109<sup>34</sup>.

*gud-sweord* n. sword.

acc. sg. *het ða in beran . . . guð-sweord geatolic* B.

2154.

*mæðpum-sweord* n. precious sword.

pl. acc. *forgeaf þa Beowulfe bearn Healfdenes . . . mære mæðpum-sweord* B. 1023.

*mäl-swurd* n. ornamented sword.

gen. sg. *ond ic geann Aelfwine . . . þes mal-swurdes*  
*ðe Wider ahte Chart. Th. 560<sup>23</sup>.*

*stæf-sweord* n. s. *stæf-sweord* p. 196.

*wæg-sweord* n. sword with wavy pattern.

acc. sg. *ond þu (h)Unferð lät ealde lase, wrætlic wæg-*  
*sweord* B. 1489.

2. *sweord* as first member of the compound.

*sweord-bealo* n. sword-hurt : malum gladio illatum.

sg. nom. *Fin eft begeat sweord-bealo slidēn* B. 1147.

*sweord-berende.* sword-bearing.

pl. nom. *þe aedelingas sweordberende settan heton* Gen.

1060.

*sweord-bite* m. sword-cut.

acc. *purh sweordbite* Jul. 603.

*sweord-bora* m. sword-bearer, warrior, gladiator.

pugiles : *sweord-boran* WW. 489<sup>26</sup>.

*sweord-fætels* m. s. *fætels.*

*sweord-freca* m. warrior.

sg. dat. *þa he þes wæpnes onläh selran sweord-freca*  
B. 1468.

*sweord-gifu* f. gift of a sword.

sg. nom. *nu sceal sinc-þego ond swyrd-gifu . . . eowrum*  
*cynne lufen alicgean* B. 2884.

*sweord-gripe* m. a sword-stroke.

acc. *þat hi purh sweord-gripe sawle forletan* Jul. 488.

*sweord-hwita* m. sword-polisher.

sg. dat. *and ic geann Aelfnoðe minon swurdhwitan*  
Chart. Th. 561<sup>22</sup>.

*sweord-leoma* m. sword-gleam.

sg. nom. *swurd-leoma stod* Finn. 35.

*sweord-geniðla* m. warrior.

pl. *fyrdhwate . . . on twa healfe tohtan seacþ, sweord-geniðlan* El. 1180.

*sweord-plega* m. battle.

sg. dat. *æt ðam sweord-plegan* Wald. 1<sup>13</sup>.

*sweord-ræs* m. attack of swords, battle.

sg. nom. *sweord-ræs fornam þurh hæðene hand* Ap. 59.

*sweord-slēge* m. sword-blow.

acc. *þurh sweordslege* Jul. 671.

*swyrd-geswing* n. battle.

sg. acc. *þæt him swyrdgeswing swidlic eowdon weras Ebrisce* Jud. 240.

*sweord-wigend* m. sword-fighter, warrior.

pl. gen. *þeah þe Faraon brohte sweordwigendra side hergas* Exod. 260.

*sweord-wund* adj. wounded by the sword.

sg. nom. *swatfag and sweordwund secg* (MS. *sec*) *aſter oðrum* Wald. 1<sup>5</sup>.

*sweord-wyrhta* m. sword-smith.

Flurnamen.

Sweord in 'Flurnamen' is identical with *ecg*, *gara*, *ord*, etc.

. *Sweord-hlinas* now *Swarling* (Kent.) G. B. 321 (A. D. 805); *sweord-lingas* (P. N.) G. B. 811 (A. D. 946); *on sweord-leage* G. B. 451 (A. D. 847); *on sweordes stan* G. B. 55 (A. D. 883); *ninan swyrd-æceras* G. B. 479 (A. D. 1050) cf. *gār-æcer*.

**Meaning.** *gladius, ensis, spata, machera, framea* : the large two-edged iron sword, frequently with ornamental hilt. *Sica=litel swurd* *oððe handsex*.

**Etymology.** *Sweord* is the general Germ. term for sword though failing in Goth., with related forms, but with a different meaning that of ‘boring’, in Slav. The cognates are OHG., MHG. *swërt*, NHG. *Schwert*, OFrs. *sverd*, *swird*, OS. *swërd*, Du. *zwaard*, ON. *sverð*, Swed. *swärd*, Dan. *sverd*. The Slav. has the rt. \**vert-* ‘boring’ in OSlav. *vrüte* ‘Bohrer (gimlet)’, Slav. *svrüdlu* < \**sverd*.

From a Germ. type \**sverda-*, which Heyne, in the ed. of Grimm's Wb. (1898), states is entirely unexplained. Earlier in his Beowulf Gloss. (Paderborn 1863) he connected it with a W. Europ. \**svero-* ‘tönen, schwirren’ (Fick, Vgl. Wb. I, 579), to Skt. *sváratí* ‘tönt, erschallt’, which Uhlenbeck (Ai. Wb. 355) derives from *svár* ‘Licht und Sónne’ to Idg. rt. \**sau-* ‘tönen, leuchten’. Skeat indicates a rt. \**swar* ‘to hurt, wound’ connected with ‘schmerzen’, OHG. *sueran* while Schrader, Real Lex. under Schwert and Speirling makes the attempt to bring it together with Lat. *sorbus* ‘Sperberbaum’ < \**sverdhos* assigning the original meaning to sword of ‘wooden weapon’.<sup>1</sup> In this connection cf. Skt. *sváruṣ* m. ‘a long wooden stick’, derivation also not clear. Heyne rejects all of these explanations, and prefers to offer no theory as to its derivation beyond the Germ. type \**sverda*.

#### Stæf-sweord.

nom. sg. dolones : *stæf-sweord* WW. 143<sup>21</sup>.

A compound of *stæf* and *sweord* ‘a staff-sword, a kind

---

<sup>1</sup> S. Osthoff, Etym. Parerga I, 92 ff., and *spere*, p. 151.

of pike with broad blade attached to a shaft' (s. Part. I, p. 45). This word occurring only in the Glossaries is to be connected with OHG. *stapa-suert*: *framea* (Schmeller, Z. J. 807), where lance is not meant but a kind of *stæf-sweord* (Germ. Stabschwert) s. Graff (VI, 612). Compare furthermore *sica*: *stabeswert* Steinm.-Sievers III, MCIX, 17.

To OE. *stæf*, ME. *staf*, NE. *staff* belong Du. *staf*, ON. *stafr*, Dan. *stab* 'starr', Swed. *staf*, OHG. *stap*, *stab*, NHG. *Stab* 'a staff, a letter of the alphabet', from Germ. \**stabā* the relation to OHG. *stabēn* 'starr sein' allowing it to be traced to Idg. \**sthāb* (*sthāp*) 'to be firm', Skt. *sthāpay* 'to cause to stand' (causal to *sthā* from the root \**sta* 'to stand'), which appears in OSlav. as *štabū*, *stabū* 'stick, staff' (s. Kluge, Etym. Wb., p. 374). Cf. Goth. *stabs* 'a letter', and Lat. *stipes* 'a post', Gall. *stob* 'a post'.

### 3. Bow and Arrow.

#### Arblaste.

Form. *arblaste* (?).

Reference. *mid anan arblaste ofscoten* A.-S. Chron. A. D. 1079 (ed. Earle and Plummer, p. 214).

Meaning. A kind of bow mounted on a wooden rest designed to hurl arrows or other projectiles.

Etymology. A Norm. Fr. loanword in very late OE. It is derived from Lat. *arcuballista*, OFr. *arcbaleste* > *arbaleste*, later in 12<sup>th</sup> century *arbalète*, and was applied to a war-machine for hurling stones and projectiles. As the first mention of this weapon in any OE. work occurs in 1079 after the Norman Conquest, such bows were in all probability unknown in England prior to the coming of the Normans.

In Germany it does not appear to have been known before the 12<sup>th</sup> century, where the name assumed the peculiar form *Armbrust* (f. and n.), which is simply due to an adoption by the people of two German words similar in sound and easily understood, for the unfamiliar foreign word (cf. Eng. *asparagus* and the dialectical *sparrow-grass*). In this form it has been borrowed in most of the Germ. dialects: Fries. *armbrerst*, *ermborst*, Du. *armbost*, *armborst*, ON. *armbrist*, Dan. *armbörst*, Swed. *armbost* (showing metathesis of the *r*). The It. *balestra*, Sp. *ballesta* are derived directly from the Lat., while the word is found in none of the Slav. dialects.

### Boga.

Form. *boga* m. (an).

References. 1. *arcus*: a bow.

sg. nom. *arcus* : *boga* VPs. 36<sup>15</sup>, VS. H. 4<sup>8</sup>, Aelfc. Gl. 318<sup>4</sup> = WW. 333<sup>2</sup>, WW. 142<sup>26</sup>, Aelfc. Gr. 79<sup>10</sup>, ib. 81<sup>1</sup>; *camera*, *arcus*, *fornax* : *bigels*, ~, *incleofu* WW. 198<sup>4</sup>; *balista* : *gelocen boga* WW. 143<sup>22</sup>; *arcus* : *bogae* Cant. Ps. 36<sup>15</sup>, Cant. Hy. 3<sup>4</sup>; *arcus* : *boga[n]* Cant. Ps. 59<sup>6</sup> (the *n* being probably added by a later corrector); *boga sceal stræle* Gn. (Ex.) 154.

sg. gen. *ðæt hie flugen fram onsiene bogan* VPs. 59<sup>6</sup>.

sg. dat. *arcu* : *bogan* Cant. Ps. 43<sup>7</sup>, VPs. 43<sup>7</sup>; *Effremes bearn ærest ongunnan of bogan stræle bitere sendan* Ps. 77<sup>11</sup>.

sg. acc. *þa gebende an scytha sona his bogan* Hom. Skt. I, 18<sup>29</sup>; *nim pinne bogan and gang ut* Prs. Gen. XXVII<sup>3</sup>; *þa genam he his bogan and hine gebende* Bl. Hom. 199<sup>18</sup>; *arcum* : *bogæn* Cant. Ps. 36<sup>14</sup>, 63<sup>4</sup>, 57<sup>8</sup>, 77<sup>9</sup>; 77<sup>57</sup>; *arcuum* : *boga[n?]* OE. Gl. 1<sup>511</sup>; *arcum* : *bogen* Cant. Ps. 6<sup>19</sup>; *swa his bogan bended* Ps. 57<sup>6</sup>, *þa heora tungan teoð teonan gehwylce sweorde efenscearpe and heora swiðne bogan* Ps. 63<sup>8</sup>;

intendit arcum : *[beh]ylt bogan* Bl. Gl. 254<sup>b</sup>; in arcum perversum : *on bogan þweorne* Bl. Gl. 255<sup>a</sup>; tetenderunt arcum, marg. note = tetendit : *tinde bogan* Bl. Gl. 261<sup>b</sup>; arcum : *bogan* VPs. 7<sup>13</sup>, 10<sup>3</sup>, 17<sup>35</sup>, 36<sup>14</sup>, 45<sup>10</sup>, 57<sup>8</sup>, 63<sup>4</sup>, 75<sup>4</sup>, 77<sup>9</sup>; VH. 6<sup>18</sup>. arcum : *bogan* Cant. Ps. 10<sup>3</sup>, 17<sup>35</sup>.

pl. nom. acc. *bogan hangodan on hiora eaxlum* Hom. Ass. 18<sup>221</sup>; *þæt hi him gebeorgen bogan and stræle* Ps. 59<sup>4</sup>; *bogan wæron bysige* By. 110.

pl. gen. arcuum : *bogæn* Cant. Ps. 75<sup>4</sup>.

pl. dat. arcubus : *bogum* Aelfc. Gr. 81<sup>3</sup>.

2. antena, postena : saddle bow.

antena : *boga* Corp. 168; artena : *boga* WW. 106<sup>37</sup>; postena : *boga* Corp. 1607.

3. relating to trees.

ramus : *boga* WW. 138<sup>31</sup>.

4. fornix : an arch.

sg. nom. fornix : *boga* Ep. Er. 453, Corp. 909.

sg. acc. fornicem : *bogan* Ep. Er. 442, Corp. 901, WW. 405, 20.

For further references for 2, 3, and 4 s. B. T.

Compounds. *boga* as second member of the compound.

*brægd-boga* m. arcus incurvatus vel fraudulentus : treacherous bow. From *brægd* 'deceit, trick'. Cf. ON. *bragð*.

sg. dat. *wrohtbora in folc godes forð onsendeð of his brægdbogan biterne stræl* Cri. 765.

*flan-boga* m. arcus sagittis aptus : a bow for shooting arrows.

sg. dat. *sumne Geata leod of flan-bogan feores getwæfde* B. 1433; *se-þe of flan-bogan fyrenum sceoteð* B. 1744.

*horn-boga* m. arcus in duo cornua exiens. Cf. saddle-bow. S. Schulz (Höf. Leben II, 171), who inter-

interprets it literally as horn-bow, made of horn, and Part. I, p. 50.

dat. *hie leton forð fleogan flana scuras, hilde-nædran* of horn-bogan Jud. 222; *syððan hyne Hæðcyn of horn-bogan,* his frea-wine flane geswenete B. 2437.

acc. *þær he horn-bogan hearde gebendes* Ps. 75<sup>3</sup>.

*regn, rēn-boga* m. rainbow.

sg. nom. *Hwi wæs se renboga to wedde gesett* Aelfc. IS. 350; also ib. 362; Aelfc. Gl. 306,2; WW. 175,4.

sg. acc. *God gesette þonne renbogan to wedde* Aelfc. IS. 351.

*scar-boga* m. rainbow.

sg. acc. *þonne ic scurbogan minne iewe* Gen. 1540.

Meaning. S. above.

Etymology. *Boga* 'Bogen, Biegung' is formed like a nom. agentis, from the Schwundstufe of the vb. *bagan* 'to bend'. To OE. *boga*, ME. *bowe*, NE. *bow* correspond OHG. *poko*, *bogo*, MHG. *boge*, NHG. *bogen*, Du. *boog*, OS. *bogo*, OFrs. *boage*, ON. *bogi*, Swed. *båge*, Dan. *bue*, and in Cymr. and Ir. *bwa*, \**bogha* loanwords from the OE. The word is wanting in Goth., but Krim Goth. *boga* 'bow' is recorded. These forms may be traced to an Idg. \**bhugnō-* 'gebogen', from a root \**bheuk-* beside \**bheug-* 'biegen, to bend', cf. Skt. *bhujati*, Lat. *fugio*. In Greek the bow is named not from the form, but from the material *τόξον*, *taxus* 'yew'. — Related is OIr. (*fid-*)*boc* '(tree-)bending'; cf. Falk.-Torp, Et. Ordb. I, 83.

### Bogan-streng.

Form. *bogan-streng* m (i.). S. Sievers § 266.

Reference. anquina: *bogenstreng* WW. 142<sup>37</sup> (r. *bogan-*).

Meaning. bow-string.

**Etymology.** The corresponding Germ. forms from a Germ. base *\*strangi-* are: OHG. *strang*, MHG. *stranc*, *strange*, NHG. *strang*, Du. *strengh*, ON. *strengr*, Dan. *strang*, Swed. *sträng* ‘rope, cord’. The subst. is derived from the adj. *strang* ‘strong, severe, violent’, because of the cords being strongly or tightly twisted. Or from an Idg. rt. *\*strehgo*, *\*strengho-* ‘drehen, to turn’ (s. Fick, Vgl. Wb. I, 571), cf. Lat. *stringere*. Retained in NE. *bow-string*, where, according to a frequent ME. vowel-change, *e* has become *i* before the palatal nasal group *ng*, *ng*. Cf. OE. *sengan* to NE. *singe*, ME. *fringe* from OFr. *frenge*.

### Bolt.

Form. *bolt* m. (a).

#### References.

nom. acc. pl. *catapultas* : *speru*, *boltas* WW. 372<sup>25</sup>;  
~ ib. 508<sup>14</sup>.

nom. sg. *jactus* : *boltio* Er. (3) 1178 (*boltio* = the M.-Lat. form for *bolt*).

**Meaning.** Catapulta, a projectile, a bolt or heavy short arrow with blunt head to be shot from the cross bow or other engine of war.

**Etymology.** To OE. *bolt*, ME.-NE. *bolt* correspond the W.-Germ. forms OHG. *bolz*, *polz*, ODu. *bolt* ‘a bolt for shooting’, MDu., Du. *bout*, ON. *bolte* ‘a bolt in all senses’, MLG. *bolte*, *bolten* = ‘bolt, fetter’. A derivation from Lat. *catapulta* through the form *\*bulta* has been sought, but against this is the It. form *bolzone* < M.-Lat. *bultionem*, which was probably borrowed from the Germ. M.-Lat. *boltio* is recorded as early as the 8<sup>th</sup> century. The further etym. is unknown as the word is not found outside the Germ. languages.

### Brord.

Forms. *brord, broord* m. (a).

1. *punctus* : *brord*.

References.

nom. sg. *punctus* : *brord* WW. 277<sup>12</sup>; *pun(c)tus* : ~ WW. 470<sup>16</sup>; item Ep. 782, *broord* Er. 1685, *brond* Corp. 1685.

2. *herba* : *brord*.

*herbae*: *ne com þær nænig grownes up, ne wæstmas, ne furðan brordas oð sumres tid* Bd. lib. 4 C. 28.

*Welbrord* = a proper name Bd. 510, p. 414.

Meaning. 1. *Cuspis, punctus* : a prick, a point, a lance, a javelin.

2. *Herba*, the first blades or spires of grass or corn.

Etymology. Cognate forms to OE. *brord* are: OHG. *brort, prort* 'rim, the fore-part of a ship', ON. *broddr* 'arrow, also fore-part of anything', from a Germ. form \**brozds* to Idg. \**bhroz-dho-* 'Spitze' (Fick, Vgl. Wb. I, 94), cf. OI. *bhr̥stis* f. 'Zacke, Spitze, Ecke', all from an Idg. root \**bhers* 'hervorstehen, emporragen, borstig sein'. Here belong also in all probability OC. Slav. *brazda*, Russ. *borozdá* 'Furche' (s. Uhlenbeck, Ai. Wb. 205). Cf. also OE. *brerd* : labrum WW. 434<sup>18</sup> in Ablaut to *brord*.

### Cocer.

Forms. *cocer, cocor, cocur* m. (a).

*Cocer* is the normal form, *cocur* and *cocor* being probably influenced by the M.-Lat. form. *cucurum*.

1. *pharetra, quiver*.

References.

sg. nom. *faretra* : *cocer* Aelfc. Gl. 318<sup>5</sup>; id.: *coker* WW. 142<sup>24</sup>.

sg. dat. *faretra* : *cocere* Cant. Ps. 10<sup>3</sup>; *faretra* : *cocere* VPs. 10<sup>3</sup>; ~ ib. Ps. Spl. 10<sup>3</sup>.

sg. acc. *nim þin gesceot, þinne cocur and þinne bogan* Prs. Gen. XXVII<sup>3</sup>.

## 2. Framea or sword.

*frameam* : *cocor* Ps. Spl. 34<sup>3</sup>; *framea* : *cocore* Ps. Spl. 21<sup>19</sup>.

Meaning. 1. Pharetra, a case for arrows, a quiver.  
2. In two places perhaps a sword.

Etymology. This word appears only in N. and W.-Germ., being unrecorded in Goth. The cognates in the Germ. dialects to OE. *cocer* are: O.-Sax. *cocāre*, OHG. *chohhar, kochar* ‘a case, a quiver’, MHG. *kocher, kochaere* ‘a quiver’, MLG. *koker, kaker*, Frs. *koker*, Du. *kóker*, NLG. *köker*, ON. *kögurr*, Swed. *koger* (n), while Dan. *kogger* is probably borrowed from the W.-Germ. branch. In Icel. *kögurr* is lost except in the compound *kögur-sveinn* ‘quiver-boy’ of the Hbl. 13<sup>5</sup>, where Harbard is called *kögur-sveinn* by Thor, with the usual translation ‘Lumpenkerl’. Bergmann, however, has given as his translation not ‘Lumpenkerl’, but ‘boy who carries the hunter’s quiver’ with reference to the thunder bolts of Thor, thereby connecting it with OHG. *chohhar* s. Vig. (Wb. Add. 776). For the forms in the Romance languages s. Diez (Etym. Wb. 554) where the M.-Lat. form *cucurum* of the Capitulare de Villis is given as borrowed from OHG. (cf. MGr. *κούκουρον*), from whence is also derived OFr. *couire*, M. and NFr. *cuevre, cuivre*. Kluge takes exception to the Lat. borrowing from the Germ. (s. Pauls Grund. 337), and considers the OHG. form as a very early borrowing from such a form as \**cucerum* < M.-Lat. *cucurum*. According to his view borrowing from the OHG. must have given a M.-Lat. \**cocurum*.

The word is retained in NHG. *Köcher* ‘Behälter’ — in Westphalia the words *Inkstkuekr* ‘Tintenköcher’, *Nåilkuekr* ‘Nadelköcher’, being still in provincial use. In NE. on the other hand *quiver* from Fr. *cuirvre* has taken the place of the OE. *cocer*, though in ME. the two forms *coker* and *quiver* existed side by side, *koker* and *coker* being found in both Lazm. and Piers Plow., in the latter with the meaning ‘stockings’.

The Idg. root of the word is not clear, nor have related words in other than the Germ. branch of languages been discovered.

#### Earh.

Form. *earh* f. (wō).

References.

sg. nom. *fugax* : *flugol oððe earh* Aelfc. Gr. 69<sup>6</sup>.

sg. acc. *lætad gares ord*, *earh attre gemæl in gedufan in fæges ferð* An. 1331.

Compounds. with *earh* as first member of compound.

*earh-faru* f. 1. *sagittarum volatus* : flight of arrows.

acc. *þonne ic ærest him þurh eargfare in onsende in breostsefan bitre geþoncas* Jul. 404; *habbað scearp speru, atole earhfare* Sal. 129.

pl. dat. *wið sceppendra eglum earhfaram* Cri. 762.

2. *exercitus sagittariorum*. (ON. *herör* or *örvabod* ‘Heerpfeil’ oder ‘Pfeilgebot’.)

acc. *þa se casere heht ongean gramum guðgelæcan under earhfære ofstum myclum bannan to beaduce* El. 44.

instr. *þe læs him scyldhatan scyððan comon, mid earhfare euldgeniðlan* An. 1048.

pl. nom. *þær wæs heard handgeswing and herga gring, syððan heo earhfære ærest metton* El. 116.

### Arwe.

Forms. *arwe, arewe* f. (ōn).

#### References.

sg. dat. *framea*: *arwan* OE. Gl. 37<sup>1</sup>.

nom. acc. pl. *catapultas*: *arewan, gavelucas* OE. Gl. 1<sup>4233</sup>; *sagittas*: *strelæ* and *arwen* Cant. Ps. 77<sup>9</sup>; *sagittae*: ~ Cant. Ps. 56<sup>5</sup>, 76<sup>18</sup>; *Swa þæt on þære rode þe stod bufon þam weofode sticodon on mænige arewan* Chron. A. D. 1083 (Earle and Plummer, p. 215).

instr. *and scotedon adunweard mid arewan* Chron. A. D. 1083 (p. 215).

Flurnamen. *Se here gewende þa æfter þam fram Lundene mid heora scipum into Arwan* Chron. 1016 (ed. Earle, Plummer, p. 150<sup>15</sup>). The name of a river in several counties called so either from its swiftness or straightness.

Meaning. A slender pointed missile shot from a bow, usually feathered and barbed, Lat. *sagitta*.

Etymology. In OE. existed two cognate forms *earh* and *arwe* < \**arhwōn* w. f., akin to ON. *ör*, pl. *örvar* < \**arhwā* st. f., Goth. *arhwazna* f. from *arhw-* (cf. *hlaiwasna* 'grave' from *hlaiw*) probably 'the thing belonging to the bow', Lat. *arcus* 'bow'.

*Earh* is the older form and Noreen (Urg. L. 180) regards \**earwe* (not recorded) as a newly formed Nom. to the Casus obliqui *earwes, earwe* etc. after the manner of certain s-stems (cf. *dōgor, salor*). Compare also Sievers (PBB. IX<sup>332</sup>) where he treats *horh, horg* gen. *horwes, hores* (a similar case to *earh*) simply as an example of Gramm. Wechsel in the declension. Kluge (in Pauls Grund. I, 786) also agrees that *arwe* is a newly constructed form taken from the declension, but does not consider it a purely Eng. devel-

opment, but due rather to the influence of ON. *örvar* nom. pl. to *ör* (cf. Sweet. HES. 281). Kluge-Lutz regard it as due to Norse influence, and Koeppel (Archiv 104<sup>39</sup> ff.) grants the probability of this as very strong, though by no means certain, owing to want of references for \*earwe, and the very late appearance of the word in OE. The later development in ME. is from the wk. form *arwe*, *arewe*, NE. *arrow*. In OE. the ordinary terms were *stræl* and *fla*, *flan* of which the former disappeared after 1200, the latter occurred, however, in Scotch after 1500, but the ordinary prose word after 1000 was *arwe*, *arewe*.

The Idg. ground form is *ārq-* 'Geschoß' (s. Fick, Vgl. Wb. I, 355) from which Lat. *arcus* 'bow', belonging possibly to the rt. \*ark- 'tönen, jubeln, singen' (Fick I, 170) with reference to the singing sound of the bow string, and the sound of the arrow in flight.

### Fla, Flan.

Forms. 1. *fla*, *flaa* gen. *flan* f. (ōn).

2. *flan*, *flaan* gen. *flanes*, *flane* m. or f. (a, ö).

#### References.

sg. nom. 1. sagitta vel telum : *fla* Aelfc. Gl. 318<sup>4</sup> = WW: 332<sup>39</sup>; telum, sagitta : *fla* WW. 142<sup>35</sup>; telum uel obeliscus *flaa* WW. 143<sup>15</sup>; sagitta vel spiculum : *gefyðerad* ~ WW. 143<sup>16</sup>; scorpius : *geættrad* ~ WW. 143<sup>17</sup>; jaculum vel funda : *widnyt*, vel *fla* WW. 118<sup>9</sup>.

2. catapulta : *flaan* Corp. 353.

gen. sg. 2. m. *purh flanes flyht* By. 71; f. obolisci : *pæs stanes*, *brynes*, *flane* OE. Gl. 1<sup>3524</sup>; obolisci : *brenes*, *flane*, *pæs stanes* Hpt. Gl. 489<sup>13</sup>; obolisci : *flane* OE. Gl. 2<sup>318</sup>; 4<sup>62</sup>; 7<sup>91</sup>.

sg. dat. 1. *pær wearð Alexander þurhscoten mid anre flan* Or. 134<sup>23</sup>.

2. *jaculo (sagitta)* : *fla(ne)*, vel *gafeluce*, vel *wi(d)bere* Hpt. Gl. 432<sup>4</sup>; and *pær wearð ofscoten mid anre flane* Or. 1, 2 304<sup>4</sup>; *sceft nyte heold, feðer-gearwum fus flane full-eode* B. 3119; a sagitta volante : *fram flane fleogendre* Spelm. Ps. 90,6 (nach BT.).

1. or 2. *jaculo i. sagitta* : *fla ... gafe .., wiuere* (read *flan* or *flane*) OE. Gl. 1<sup>1103</sup>; late OE. : *mid anre fla ofsceoten* Chron. A. D. 1100 (p. 235).

sg. acc. 1. *an scytta ascet ana flan swylice on ungewis* Hom. Skt. I, 18<sup>220</sup>.

2. *effunde frameam* : *ageot ut flane* Bl. Gl. 34<sup>3</sup>.

instr. 2. *(he) hyne of horn-bogan flane geswencte* B. 2438.

pl. nom. acc. 1. *ne forhtast þu ðe on dæge flan on lyfie* Ps. 90<sup>6</sup>; *he gedeð his flan fyrena* Ps. Th. 7<sup>13</sup>; and *heora flan him on afestnodon foran and hindan* Hom. Skt. I, 5<sup>427</sup>; *hi ealle fíf fuhton mid Judan sceotiende heora flan* Hom. Skt. II, 25<sup>495</sup>; *ða deoflu feohtende scuton heora fyrgenan flan on-gean þa sawle* Rel. Antiq. I, 277<sup>28</sup>; *ac he fysde forð flan genehe* By. 269.

2. m. *tessa (for tela)* : *flanas* WW. 533<sup>24</sup>; *pila* : *flanas* WW. 533<sup>31</sup>. f. *sagittas* : *flana* Cant. Ps. 7<sup>14</sup>; *ic afestnie mine flana on him* Prs. Deut. XXX<sup>23</sup>; *flana* Ps. Th. 37<sup>2</sup>, 44<sup>7</sup>; *sagittas* : *flane* Cant. Ps. 10<sup>3</sup>; ~ ib. Cant. Ps. 17<sup>5</sup>; *jacula* : *flana* Bl. Gl. 54<sup>22</sup>; *ic him oderne eft willé sändan fleogende flanne forane to-geanes* Zauberseg. II, 11; *sagittae* : *flane* Cant. Ps. 37<sup>3</sup>; ~ ib. 44<sup>6</sup>.

pl. gen. 1. or 2. *flana scuras* El. 117; *hie leton forð fleogan flana scuras* Jud. 221; *æled lætað on ðæs feondes feax flana stregdan biterne brogan* Sal. 130.

pl. dat. 2. *spiculis* : *flanum* Ep. Er. 937, Corp. 1894;

*wæs Romana fela mid flanum ofscotod* Or. 206<sup>14</sup>; *þet hie mon mid flanum ofercome* Or. 174<sup>6</sup>; *mid flanum ofscotod* Prs. Exod. XIX<sup>18</sup>; ~ Ps. Th. 10<sup>8</sup>; *and (het) hentan his mid flanum* Hom. Skt. I, 5<sup>424</sup>; *þone þe ic gefyrn het mid flanum acwellan* Homl. Skt. I, 5<sup>450</sup>.

Meaning. *sagitta*: an arrow.

Compounds. 1. *flan* as first member of the compound.

*flän-boga* m. see *boga* (p. 199).

*flän-geweorc* n. apparatus jaculatorius : arrows.

sg. acc. *þonne gargetrum ofer scildhreadan sceotend sendað, flacor flangeweorc* Cri. 676.

pl. gen. *ic lufe geseah minum hlaforde, þær hæleð drunnon, þara flan[geweorca] on flet beran* Ridls. 57<sup>12</sup>.

*flän-hred* adj. arrow-equipped (?).

sg. nom. *þonne flanhred dæg nydgrupum nimeð* Reim. 72.

*flän-pracu* f. *sagittarum impetus* : attack or force of arrows.

sg. nom. *þes þe him ingesonc hat heortan neah hilde-scurum flacor flanpracu* Gud. 1117.

dat. (acc.) *wið flanpræce* Jul. 384.

2. *fla, flan* as second member of compound.

*guð-fla* f. (-*flan* m. f.) *sagitta bellica* : war-arrow.

pl. gen. *guðflana gegrind* Gen. 2063.

Etymology. The st. m. *a*-stem and f. *o*-stem *flan* only is descended from the old Germ. period. The cognates in N. and W.-Germ. are: OHG. *flein*, ON. *fleinn*. In MHG. and NHG. it has been replaced by the Lat. loan-word *pil* 'Pfeil', it being retained only in the proper name *Fleiner*.

The wk. form *fla* is a later development from the st. m. *flan*, in the same manner as in late OE. (Aelfric) a

wk. f. *ta* was formed from the st. m. *tān* 'branch' (s. Sievers, A.-S. Gramm. § 278, Anm. 2). *Fla* moreover appears principally in the glossaries.

An attempt to connect *flan* with Lit. *plienas* 'Stahl' has been made, but the further etymology of the word is not clear.

### Fodder.

Forms. *födder*, *föddur* n. (a).

References. coriti : *boge-fodder* WW. 143<sup>19</sup>; theca : *fodder* ib. 143<sup>20</sup>.

falcstrum, i. ferramentum curuum, a similitudine falcis uocatum : *wudubil* uel *foddur* WW. 235<sup>6</sup>.

Cf. bibliotheca i. librorum repositio : *boc-hord* uel *fodder* WW. 194<sup>18</sup>.

Meaning. It is necessary here in the case of *fodder* to distinguish between two etymologically separate words, which have fallen together in OHG. and OE. owing to identity of form. The first meaning is that of 'fodder, feed'; the second that of 'feeding case, holder, quiver' to Goth. *fodr* n. 'Scheide, case'.

Etymology. The word as it here stands is a new nom., formed from the casus obliqui forms, to the old, nom. *fōdor* 'food for cattle', related to OE. *fōda* w.m. 'food'. This shows gemm. before the liquid *r* in the gen. dat. etc. cf. *foddres*, *foddre* (s. Koeppel in Archiv 104<sup>56</sup>) after which is modelled the new nom. *föddor* or *foddur* with shortened vowel. The ME. double *o* in *foodyr* points to a retention of the long vowel in nom., but the shortened forms such as *fōdre*, *fōddre* finally superseded all other forms. Cognate forms are OHG. *fuotar* 'fodder for cattle, pabulum', MHG. *vuoter*, Du. *voeder*, ON. *fōðr* from a Germ.

\**fōdróm*. Related also to Goth. *fodjan*, which is probably derived from the Idg. rt. *pat-* (s. Fick, Vgl. Wb. I, 471) ‘to nourish’, an extension of the rt. *pā-* in Lat. *pasco* ‘weide, füttere’, *panis* ‘bead’, *pabulum* ‘fodder’. NE. *fodder* ‘food for cattle’.

*Fodder* meaning ‘case, holder’ stands in direct relationship to Goth. *fōdr* n. ‘case’, OHG. *fuotar* ‘dress-lining’. Uhlenbeck (Goth. Wb. 47) distinguishes between this *fuotar* and *fuotar* meaning ‘nourishment, food’ (cf. also Murray, NED. *fodder*).

This *fōdr* is derived from Idg. *patrom* n. ‘Behälter, Gefäß’ to *páti* ‘schützt’. All from a rt. *pā-* ‘hüten, schützen’ (Fick, Vgl. Wb. I, 471) to which is related Gr. πῶμα ‘Deckel’, Sct. *go-pā* ‘Hirt’. The Germ. form with its double meaning has been taken up in the Romance languages (s. Kluge, Wb.), cf. Prov., OFr. *fuerre* ‘case’ corresponding to Goth. *fōdr*, NFr. *feurre* ‘fodder’ from which comes NFr. *fourreau* ‘case, lining’ and Span., Fr. *fourrage*, NE. *forrage*.

### Hilde-nædre.

Form. *hilde-nædre* f. (ōn).

References.

nom. pl. *daroðesc flugon, hildenædran* El. 141.

pl. acc. *hie ða fromlice leton forð fleogan flana scuras, hilde-nædran of hornbogan, strælas stedehearde* Jud. 222; *on þæt fege folc flana scuras . . . hettend heorugrimme, hilde-nædran forð onsendan* El. 119.

Meaning. *vipera pugnae* : war-adder = a kenning for arrow or light throwing spear. Compare *ram* and *wifel*.

Onga.

Forms. *onga, anga* m. (an).

References. 1. Sagitta.

sg. nom. *me of bosme fareþ ætren onga* Ridls. 24<sup>4</sup>.

2. a prick, a point.

nom. *aquilius* (*aculeus*) : *onga* Leyd. 233 = Glogger 64, 12, p. 91; *aquilum* (*aculeus*) : *anga* Ep. Er. 43, ~ : *onga* Corp. 192; *aquilum* : *onga* WW. 350<sup>8</sup>.

dat. *aculeo* : *angan* Cant. H. 9<sup>17</sup>.

Meaning. A prick, a sting, a point, an arrow point.

Etymology. The meaning of arrow point is OE. only (once recorded), while the form is found in most of the Germ. dialects. The cognate forms are: OHG. *ango*, MHG. *ange* 'Hülse, Stachel', ON. *angi* 'a spine, a prickle'. In Lat. it appears as *ancus*, *uncus* 'gekrümmt, widerhakig', Gr. ἄγκων, δγκος 'Bug', all from an Idg. \**onkos* 'Haken, Wölbung', Ved. *ankás*, Zend. *aka-* 'Haken'.

Closely related is NE. *angle* 'fish hook' from OE. *angul*, Lat. *angulus*, OHG. *angul* 'Stachel, Fischangel', Du. *angel*, ON. *öngull* from which *Önguls-ey* 'Anglesey' is derived, all from a rt. \**ank-* 'to bend' (Fick, Vgl. Wb. I<sup>8</sup>).

Stræl, Stræle.

Forms. 1. *stræl, stræl, stræl*, nom. acc. pl. *strælas, strælas, stræle, stræle, stræla, strielae* m. f. (a, ö).

2. *stræle* f. (ön).

(*stræle* wk. f. is a later form recorded only in the nom. sg., the st. f. o-stem being the original, from which the newly formed st. m.)

References.

sg. nom. 1. *stragua* (*stragulum*) : *strel* Corp. 1907; ~ ib.

WW. 48<sup>18</sup>; *com an stræl of hefonum Mart. 106<sup>21</sup>; ond þa becom þær yldran stræl on þær gingran gunoð, ond þær gingran stræl on þær yldran breost Mart. 206<sup>11–12</sup>; þa sona mid þan þe se stræl on flyge wæs Bl. Hom. 199<sup>20</sup>; þæt seo stræl instepe wearð eft gecyrrred Bl. Hom. 199<sup>21</sup>.*

2. *swa seo stræle byð strangum and mihtigum hrorum on handa heard ascyrped Ps. 126<sup>5</sup>.*

sg. dat. *sagitta : strele Cant. Ps. 90<sup>6</sup>; ~ ib. VPs. 90<sup>6</sup>; mid his agenre stræle Mart. 78<sup>18</sup>; mid geættredum stræle Bl. Hom. 199<sup>18</sup>; mid þære gesættredan streale Vit. Güð. 4; boga sceal stræle Gn. Ex. 154.*

sg. acc. *wrohtbora forð onsendeð of his brægd bogan biterne stræl Cri. 765; his costunga streale Vit. Guth. 4.*

voc. *Ana þu heardeste stræl to æghwilore unrihtnesse Bl. Hom. 241<sup>3</sup>; hwæt du, deofles stræl, icest þine yrmðo An. 1189.*

instr. *þonne bið on hreppe under helm drepen biteran stræle B. 1746.*

nom. acc. pl. m. *sagittas : strelas VPs. 56<sup>5</sup>, 63<sup>8</sup>, 76<sup>18</sup>, 119<sup>4</sup>, 126<sup>4</sup>; þa strelas forcyrdon Mart. 182<sup>1</sup>; hig sceoton hyra strelas on twa healfa to somne Mart. 206<sup>11</sup>; þa flugon þa legetu swylce fyrene strelas ongearn þa hæðnan leode Bl. Hom. 203<sup>9</sup>; telaque : strelas Bd. Gl. 34; octavam : strelas<sup>1</sup> WW. 462<sup>9</sup>; sagittas : strelas VPs. 7<sup>14</sup>, 10<sup>3</sup>, 77<sup>9</sup>, 143<sup>6</sup>, VPs. H. 7<sup>47</sup>, <sup>88</sup>; hie leton forð fleogan flana scuras, strelas stede-hearde Jud. 223; ne þearf him ondrædan deofla strelas ænig on eorðan ælda cynnes Cri. 779.*

f. *sagittas : strelae Cant. Ps. 17<sup>15</sup>, 77<sup>9</sup>, 44<sup>6</sup>, 56<sup>7</sup>, 64<sup>8</sup>, 76<sup>18</sup>, 119<sup>4</sup>, Cant. H. 6<sup>23, 42</sup>; sagittae : strele VPs. 37<sup>3</sup>, 44<sup>6</sup>; sagittas : ~ VPs. 17<sup>15</sup>; id. : strela Cant. Ps. 143<sup>6</sup>; sagittae : strielae Cant. Ps. 126<sup>4</sup>; þæt hi him gebeorgan bogan and stræle*

<sup>1</sup> octavam is not glossed by stræl, which = sagitta.

Ps. 59<sup>4</sup>; *þurh pine stræle* Ps. 76<sup>14</sup>; *effremes bearn ærest on gunnan of bogan stræle bitere sendan* Ps. 77<sup>11</sup>; *strele beoð scearpe* Ps. 119<sup>4</sup>; *synd pine strele strange swylice* Ps. 143<sup>7</sup>; (*he*) *laeted stræle fleogan farende flan* Ridls. 4<sup>56</sup>; *boga sceal stræle* Gu. (Ex.) 154.

pl. gen. *strangularum: stræla, huvila, westlinga* OE. Gl. 1<sup>1085</sup>; *stræla storm* B. 3117.

pl. dat. *he het hine mid strælum ofscotian* Mart. 26<sup>3</sup>; *hy wæron mid strælum scotode* Mart. 180<sup>27</sup>; *mid þæm fyrenum strælum* Bl. Hom. 203<sup>29</sup>; *miþ strelum gewundæd* Ruth. Cross. 18 (d) (*mid strælum forwundod* B. Vercellitext 62); *hi hine sammununga scearpum strelum on scotiað* Ps. 63<sup>4</sup>; *and we hit þa unsofte mid strælum* Ep. Al. 153<sup>361</sup>; ~ ib. Ep. Al. 158<sup>517</sup>.

Compounds. 1. *\*stræl* as first member of the compound.

*stræl-bora* m. See B. T.

2. *stræl* as second member of the compound.

*here-stræl* m. sagitta : battle arrow.

sg. nom. *Pat him on aldre stod here-stræl hearda* B. 1435.

*wæl-stræl* m. f. sagitta mortifera : deadly arrow.

pl. instr. *awrecen wælstrælum* Guð. 1260.

*wæpen-stræl* m. sagitta.

nom. pl. *synd me manna bearn mihtigum toðum wæpenstrælas þa me wundedor [arma et sagitta]* Ps. 56<sup>5</sup>.

Meaning.

sagitta: an iron arrow head together with the shaft. The meaning 'sunbeam' which the word has in some Germanic dialects is derived from the old idea that the sun's rays were the arrows of the sun god.

Etymology. *stræl* is common to the W.-Germ.

languages appearing in OHG. and OSax. as *strala* a f. *o*-stem, MHG. *stral*, *strale* ‘arrow, flash of lightning’ from whence it was borrowed in Slavic (see Pauls Grundriss I, 360), OSl. *strěla*, NSl. *strijela*, Russ. *strelá* ‘an arrow’ (cf. the proper name *Strelitz*), Serv. *strijela*, Poln. *strzela*. In Du. it appears as *straal* ‘arrow’. To be connected probably with Goth. *straujan*, NHG. *streuen*, Idg. \**ster-a-* from the Idg. rt. \**str-* ‘ausbreiten, streuen’, cf. Lat. *sternere* and Skt. *str̥noti* ‘streut, bestreut’, OSl. *prostira*, OE. *streowan*. Compare also the OHG. words *donar-strala* ‘Blitzstrahl’, and NHG. *Strahlkeil* (Pfeilstein) ‘Blelemnite’.

Persson (Wz. w. u. Wz. var. p. 9) suggests a possible radical relationship between OE. *stræl* f. and OI. *srkás* m. ‘lance, shot’. The rt. is \**sr-e* in OI. *sar-*, *sáratí* ‘eilt, strömt’, and the fact is wellknown that Idg. \**sr-* becomes in Germanic, as well as in Slavic, *str-* (s. Brugmann, Grund. I, §§ 578, 584) so that it is possible according to the laws of sound change. The first explanation, however, is held by most authorities to be the correct one, the latter being more or less based on relationship in meaning.

### Wifel, Wifer, Wiber.

Forms. *wifel*, *wifer*, *wiver*, *wiber* (Sievers, Ags. Gramm., § 191) Gl.

#### References.

sg. dat. *spiculo* : *wifele* Hpt. Gl. 432<sup>13</sup>; *iaculo* (i. *sagitta*) : *fla*, *gafe* . . . , *wiuere* OE. Gl. 1<sup>1103</sup>, reading of Hpt. Gl. 432<sup>4</sup> *vi(d)bere*.

gen. pl. *sagittarum* : *wifera* Hpt. Gl. 405<sup>15</sup>.

Meaning. A projectile, an arrow, a dart.

**Etymology.** Leo (OE. Glossar) connects the Aldhelm glossary words *wifel*, *wifer* with Lat. *vibrare*, as does Pogatscher (Lit. Blatt für germ. u. rom. Phil. XXII, 160), who derives OFr. *guivre* f. 'arrow' from OE. *wifer*. With this he connects further *wibete*, *vibete* 'arrow', which Wace 8133 mentions as an English word. Pogatscher sets OE. *wifel*, *wifer* in the same class with NHG. *schweben*, *schweifen*, OE., NE. *swift*; they belong to the group without initial *s-*, like Lat. *vibrare*, OE. *wafian*, OHG. *wipf* 'rotation, quick motion', their original meaning being 'something swung, slung'. Cf. also NE. *swivel* from *swif-* 'a link turning on a pin or neck'.

For the derivation, which regards *wifel*, *wifer* as borrowed from the Fr. *givre* (*guivre*) 'an arrow', which Diez (Etym. Wb. 596) connects with Lat. *vipera* < *viviparus* s. Baist (Var. über Rol.).

In ME. *wife* appears Pr. P. 526 as *bipennis* : battle axe, in Robert Manning's Hist. of Eng. (ed. by Furnivall, London 1887) occurs the pl. form *wifles*.

#### 4. Miscellaneous.

##### **Ex.**

**Forms.** *æx*, *ex*, *axe* (merc.), *acase* (Rush.), *acas*, *acasa* (Lind.) f. (jō).

##### **References.**

sg. nom. *securis*, *vel secespita* : *æx* WW. 141<sup>25</sup>, ~ 478<sup>24</sup>, ~ 550<sup>22</sup>; ~ OE. Gl. 61<sup>2</sup>; *ex* Aelfc. Gr. 56<sup>9</sup>; ~ Aelfc. Gl. 318<sup>15</sup>; *acas* Lind. Matt. 3<sup>10</sup> (another reading *axe* Rush.); *securis* : *acasa* Lind. Lk. 3<sup>9</sup> (*acase* Rush.); *bipennis*, *securis*:

*twilafte æx uel twibile* WW. 194<sup>35</sup>; *ac sio æcs wint of ðam hielfe* Past. 167<sup>7, 9</sup>.

sg. gen. *ne æxe hlem ne bieles sweg* Past. 253<sup>17</sup>.

sg. dat. *on æxe* Ps. Spl. 73<sup>1</sup>; *mid anre æxe yre* Chron.

AD. 1012 (p. 142).

sg. acc. *securim : æxe* OE. Gl. 56<sup>39</sup>; *bær him æcse on handa* Bd. 4,<sub>8</sub>, 246<sup>6</sup>; *heora an sona his exæ upbræd* Skt. Hom. II, 31<sup>152</sup>.

pl. nom. *bipennes* i. *securis biceps : twi-billes, æcssa* OE. Gl. 1<sup>2231</sup>; id. : *æcssa* Hpt. Gl. 459<sup>1</sup>; id. : *æxa* OE. Gl. 2<sup>71</sup>.

pl. dat. *mid scearpum æxum* Hom. Skt. II, 29<sup>289</sup>; *securibus : exum* Cant. Ps. 73<sup>6</sup> (Werkzeug); *æxum* Ps. (Th.) 73<sup>6</sup>; *securibus : ecesum* VPs. 73<sup>5</sup>.

#### Compounds.

*bræd-æx* f. a broad axe, the war axe.

*dolabrum : bradæx* WW. 141<sup>26</sup>; *dolabella : bradacus* Leid. Gl. 197; *dolatura* i. lata securis : *bradæx* WW. 224<sup>35</sup>, 390<sup>13</sup>.

*ceorf-æx*. executioner's axe.

pl. dat. *þa heafda mid ceorf-æxsum of acorfenæ* Or. 4, 1, 16015.

*hand-æx* a hand axe.

*dextralis*, i. dextre abilis : *handæx* WW. 221<sup>22</sup>.

*Stān-æx*. According to WW. the use of this compound for translating bipennis points either to the use of stone axes by the Anglo-Saxons (cf. WW. 141<sup>27</sup>), or that they believed that the axes of stone found in different parts of England, and usually ascribed to the Celtic population of the island, were really the Roman weapons designated by that name.

*bipennis : stanæx* Aelfc. Gl. 318<sup>17</sup>; *bipennis : twibble* uel *stanæx* WW. 141<sup>27</sup>; ~ 334<sup>1</sup>.

*tapor-æx* f. a small axe.

sg. nom. *swa feorr swa mæg an taper-æx beon ge-worpen ut of ðam scipe upon þet land* Chart. Th. 317<sup>30</sup>.

sg. acc. *and þar beo an mann stande on þan scipe and habbe ane taper-æx on his hande* Chron. A. D. 1031 (p. 158).

Cf. Icel. *tapar-øx*, borrowed from the OE.

*æxfaru* f. apparatus.

aparatu: *æxfaru* WW. 6<sup>22</sup> = Corp. 186.

Meaning. 1. A workman's tool. 2. A weapon of war.

The latter with widely extended blade remained in use even into the Middle Ages — cf. Laym. 2263 *wi-eax*; Barbour's Bruce XII, 20, where *ane braid ax in swerdys bryth* is mentioned, and the Destruc. of Troy. 1588 *Armurers and arrowsmythes with axes of werre*. In the glosses it is impossible to distinguish between 1 and 2, bipennis and securis being used indiscriminately for both. For discussion of bipennis s. Part I, p. 58 ff.

Etymology. The term *æx* with its allied forms is confined to the continent of Europe, notwithstanding the fact that the tool or weapon itself dates back to the Idg. period. In W.-Germ. the related forms are: OSax. *accus*, MDu. *akes*, Du. *aaks*, OHG. *ackus*, MHG. *ackes*, NHG. *ax* or *axt* with inorganic *t*, Goth. *agizi* (Vollstufe in suffix syllable beside OHG. Schwundstufe, s. Streitberg § 80), in N.-Germ.: ON. *æx* gen. *axar*, Swed. *yxa*, — all from an Idg. \**agēsia* f. Axt (*agsia*) (Fick, Vgl. Wb. I, 349). Radically related are Lat. *ascia* (*ac-scia*), Gr. *ἀξίνη* 'axe'. According to Diez (Etym. Wb. 5), Fr. *hache* is not to be connected with *ascia*, an Ablative form *axada* existed, however, in OSpan., which has given NSpan. *azada* 'spade, hoe', although the forms to be expected *aza* or *axa* are not extant. Cf. also OPort. *enxada*.

### Lidere.

Forms. *lidere*, *lyðre*, *lidre* f. (ōn).

#### References.

sg. nom. funda : *lidere* Aelfc. Gl. 318<sup>6</sup>; ~ ib. WW. 333<sup>6</sup>, 404<sup>27</sup>; id.: *lyþre* WW. 142<sup>31</sup>; funda : *lidre* WW. 23<sup>38</sup>; ~ Corp. 939.

sg. gen. fundibali : *liperan* OE. Gl. 1<sup>695</sup>; fundibulae (?) : *liperan* WW. 404<sup>28</sup> (gen. or pl.).

sg. dat. *swa micelre brædo swa mon mæge mid lidran geworpan* Bd. 4, 18, 304<sup>25</sup>; of *blacere lidran* Sal. 27.

Meaning. Funda; the simple hand-sling of woven work or leather, frequently with a kind of pocket in the middle used for hurling small stones.

Etymology. Being a weapon only of the ordinary soldier, various expressions common to the people have been applied to it in the different Germ. languages, arising from the motion used to hurl the stones, or from the material of which the *lidere* or sling is made. For example in OHG. *slinga* indicates the motion, while the OE. *lipere* is so called from the material. In ME. *lipere* still occurs, cf. Rob. 394, pl. dat. *liþeren* where it is equiv. to slings, but gradually the OE. word gave way to the W.-Germ. *slinga*, NE. *sling*.

The wk. subst. f. is formed from OE. *leðer* 'leather' (cp. adj. *lideren*) to which correspond Du. *Leder*, ON. *leðr*, Dan. *læder*, Swed. *läder*, NHG. *Leder*, NE. *leather* from a Germ. base *leðra-* 'tanned skin of an animal'. Root unknown.

### Stæflidere.

Forms. *stæflidere*, *stæflide*, *stæflidera* (?), *stæblidrae*, *steblidrae* f. (ōn).

### References.

sg. nom. ballista : *stæflidre*’ (Ms. R. reads *stæflideran*)  
OE. Gl. 1<sup>3443</sup>; *stæflidere* Hpt. Gl. 423<sup>28</sup> = OE. Gl. 1<sup>733</sup>;  
ballista : *stæflidra* (?) Hpt. Gl. 487<sup>31</sup>; id. : *staeblidrae* Ep.  
136; *steblidrae* Er. 136; *staefliðre* Corp. 263; fundibalum :  
~ WW. 338<sup>8</sup>; idem Aelfc. Gl. 318<sup>7</sup> = WW. 142<sup>32</sup>; (f)undi-  
balum : *steflipere* WW. 550<sup>2</sup>.

sg. dat. fundibulo : *stæflidran* Hpt. Gl. 527<sup>12</sup>; ~ ib.  
OE. Gl. 1<sup>5026</sup>.

Meaning. A weapon for casting stones; a kind of leather sling fastened to a staff in order to increase the force in hurling. Cf. Part. I, p. 62.

Etymology. A compound of *stæf* and *lidere*, s. *stæf-sweord*. In ME. it is found together with *stæf-slinge*, cf. *fustibulum : a stafslynge* WW. 585<sup>30</sup>.

### Ram.

For *ram* consult Jordan “Die altenglischen Säugetiernamen”, p. 153. The Lat. term *aries* is used with reference both to the war-machine and the animal. Cf. *ðerscað ðone weall mid ramum* Past. 161<sup>6</sup>, where the meaning is clear, but in most cases the word occurs in Glossaries where it is impossible to distinguish between the two. In Aelfc. Gl. 319<sup>7</sup> it follows an enumeration of weapons, and in OE. Gl. 1<sup>3444</sup> is in a list with ballista, so that probably the war-machine is meant. In Aelfc. Gr. 12<sup>4</sup> occurs the following ‘aries : byð ram betwux sceapum and ram to weal- geweorce’, which can scarcely be regarded as ballista, and may refer to some sort of a machine used in building.

### \*Scot.

Form. \**scot*, pl. dat. *scotum* n. (a).

Very rarely found with the meaning ‘jaculum : a

missile used for throwing, a shot'. More frequently used to denote 'rapid movement, a rush, a dart', and 'contribution, tax, tribute'. For references for the latter consult B. T., and cf. NE. *scot-free* 'exempt from tax', then 'exempt from anything'.

Reference.

pl. dat. *mid scotum, ge mid stana torfungum* (Cotton MS. *gesceotum*) Or. 3, 9, 134, 15.

Compounds.

*gesceot* s. *gesceot*.

*scot-spere* s. *spere*.

Derived.

*scotung* f. (ð) a shot, a missile.

pl. nom. acc. *jacula* : *scotunge* VPs. 54<sup>22</sup>; *ipsi sunt jacula* : *hi synt scotunge oððe flana* Ps. Lamb. 54<sup>23</sup> (quoted from B. T.); *jacula tua* : *pine Scotunge* Ps. Surt. II, p. 190<sup>15</sup> (id.); ~ ib. VHy. 6<sup>23</sup>.

pl. dat. *oð þæt he eall wæs besæt mid heora scotungum, swilces igles byrsta* Hom. Skt. II, 32<sup>117</sup>; *þa wunda þe þa wælhreowan hæpenan mid gelomium scotungum* Hom. Skt. II, 32<sup>182</sup>; *wið ðam scotungum ðara werigra gasta he hine mid gastlicum wæpnim gescylde* Vit. Guð. 3 (quoted from B. T.).

Two Nomina Agentis formed on the same stem are:

*scota, gescota* m. (an). a warrior.

sg. nom. *commanipularius* : *gescota, vel conscius, socius, collega* Corp. 551; *commanipularius, collega, miles* : *incempa, vel gescota* WW. 207<sup>6</sup>.

*scotere* m. (ja). *jaculator* : shooter, archer.

pl. dat. *no he þære feoh-gyfte for scoterum [scotenum MS.] scamigan ðorfta* B. 1026.

### Scytle.

Form. *scytle* m. (i).

#### References.

sg. acc. *sumum wyrp oððe scytle* Wy. 69; ne sagittarum jactus impedirentur : *pæt hie hæfdon þy strengran scytle* (strength in shooting) Or. 131, 10, 46, 18.

pl. dat. *ictibus i. percussionibus* : *scytum* OE. Gl. 1<sup>8090</sup>; ~ ib. 2<sup>148</sup>.

nom. acc. pl. *jacula* : *scytas* Lchdm. I, LXIX<sup>9</sup>.

Meaning. The same as *gesceot*.

#### Compounds.

*fær-scyte* m. jactus improvisus vel fatalis.

sg. dat. *forþon we fæste sculon wið þam færscytle symle wærlice wearde healdan* Cri. 766.

*scytle-finger* m. shooting or index finger.

sg. nom. index vel salutaris : *scytfinger* WW. 158<sup>34</sup>; index : *becnend*, *scytfinger* WW. 423<sup>39</sup>.

Cf. also the OE. Laws:

*Gif man scytle-finger of aslæhð, VIII scill.' gebete Aedelberht's Law 54, 2, Ges. Lieberm. p. 6 [54]; also in King Alfred's Law 57 ~ gif se scytle finger bið of aslegen, sio bot bið XV scill'.; his nægles bið III scill.* Ges. Lieberm. p. 82 [57].

#### Nomen Agentis.

*scytta* m. (jan) archer, shooter.

sg. nom. arcister : *strælbora, scytta* WW. 350<sup>28</sup>.

nom. acc. pl. *þa gegaderade Regulus ealle þa scyttan* Or. 4, 6, 174, 5; and on *þam ufan stodon gewæpnode scyttan* Ep. Al. 142<sup>80</sup>.

pl. gen. *twelf þusenda scyttena symle him ætforan* Hom. Ass. IX<sup>55</sup>.

### Gesçot.

Forms. *gesçot, gesceot* n. (a).

For *gesceot* s. Bülbring, AE. Lautlehre § 511, being a parallel case to *sçoldon* for *scoldon* so frequently found in Alfred, and always in Aelfric. Also Sievers 76<sup>8</sup>.

#### References.

sg. nom. *pila* : *gesceot* WW. 143<sup>11</sup>; *cancella* : ~, *gradus ligneus* WW. 198<sup>17</sup>; *categia i. telum* : ~ WW. 140<sup>36</sup>; *clava, vel cateia, uel teutona* : *anes cynnes* ~ WW. 143<sup>10</sup>.

sg. gen. *gif hit wære ylfa gescot* MC. 38; *þis ðe to bote ylfa gescotes* MC. 42.

sg. acc. *nim þin gesceot* Gen. XXVII<sup>8</sup>.

· sg. instr. *ponne þu of heofenum dom hider on eorpan-mid gescote sendest* Ps. 75<sup>6</sup>.

pl. dat. *jactibus . . . uacuis: mid idelum gescotum* OÆ. Gl. 49<sup>2</sup>; *þær forwearþ micel Alexandres heres for geætredum gescotum* Or. 134, 34.

Meaning. 1. *jaculum* : a missile used for throwing (usually a small stone), sometimes perhaps a small javelin.

2. *Clava*, a war club (?).

#### Compound.

*gesçot-feoht* f. *pugna* : battle, war.

sg. dat. *eft gewurdon on gesçot-feohta scearpe garas* Ps. 54<sup>21</sup>; *æt gesçot-feohta* Ps. 75<sup>8</sup>.

Etymology. Both \**sçot* and *gesçot* are neuters formed on the pp. stem *sçoten, gesçoten* of the verb *sçötan* 'to shoot'. *Sçyte* on the pret. pl. stem *sçuton* with *i* Umlaut.

The related words in other Germ. dialects are: OHG. *scoz, gescoz*, MHG. *schoz, geschoz* 'a missile', OSax. *gescot* 'a throwing spear (?)', MLG. *geschot*, Du. *gescot* = *pijlen*, Ndrhein. *geschoysz*, Rhein. *geschoz, geschuz* 'sagitta, jaculum':

arrow, missile', NHG. *Schoß*, *Geschoß* 'a bolt, a missile', then 'a weapon of any sort to be shot', ON. *skotr*, OFries. *gescot*, ODu. *schut* 'an arrow, a dart', Du. *schot* 'a shot', ME. *schot*, *shot*, NE. *shot*, all from a Germ. base \**skut-* to \**skeutan* 'shoot'.

Cf. further Kluge, Etym. Wb., p. 352.

### Scytel.

Forms. *scytel*, *scutel*, *sciutil* m. (a).

For *iū* instead of *y* cf. Bülbring, § 511 and § 302.

References. 1. a dart, missile, arrow.

*jaculum* : *sciutil* Er. (⁹) 1177; *sagitta* : *sciutil* Er. (⁹) 1179; *sagittis parvulorum* : *scytelum cilda* Ps. 63⁷.

2. the tongue of a balance.

*momentum* : *scytel* Ep. Er. 632, ~ : *scytel* Corp. 1325; id.: *scutil* WW. 477⁹.

Compound.

*scytelfinger* m. Index-finger.

*index uel salutaris* : *scytelfinger* WW. 306⁴⁴.

Etymology.

A masc. nom. instr. formed on the pret. pl. stem *scut*, Germ. \**skut-* of the vb. *sceutan* 'to shoot' with the suffix -*ila* (s. Kluge, Stammbild., § 90). For the further Etym. cf. *gescot*.

A related word is OE. *scytels*, *scytel*, *scytel*, 'bar of a door': NE. *shuttle* 'a weaver's instrument for shooting the thread of the woof between the threads of the warp in weaving'.

### III. Weapons of Defence.

#### i. The Shield.

##### Bord.

Form. *bord* n (a).

References. 1. *clypeus* : shield.

sg. nom. *þær bord stunað* Crä. 40; *lig-yðum forborn bord wið rond[e]* B. 2673; *sceolde celod bord cenum on handa ban-helm berstan* Fin. 31; *bord ord onfeng* By. 110; *scyld (sceal) gebunden, leoht linden bord* Gn. (Ex.) 95.

sg. gen. *bærst bordes lærig* By. 284.

sg. acc. *bord up ahof* Exod. 253; *fordon ic me on hafu bord ond byrnan* B. 2524; *þa hwile þe he mid handum healdan mihte bord and brad swurd; Byrhtnoð . . . bord hafenode; het þa bord beran; wæpen up ahof, bord to gebeorge; hwilon he on bord sceat; Byrhtwold . . . bord hafenode* By. 15, 42, 62, 131, 270, 309; *ac he bord ongean hefeð hygesnottor* Jul. 385; *gecoste berað bord ond ord* El. 1186.

pl. gen. *ofer borda gebræc* B. 2259; *þa wearð borda gebræc* By. 295; *þær wæs borda gebræc* El. 114.

pl. acc. *berað linde forð, bord for breostum* Jud. 192; *rum wæs to nimanne londbuendum on ðam laðestan . . . heolfrig herereaf . . . bord ond brad swyrd* Jud. 318; *(hie) clufon celloð bord* By. 283.

pl. dat. *stopon headorincas . . . to beadowe bordum beðeahte* Jud. 213; *he mid bordum het wyrcan þone wiħagan* By. 101; *cene under cumblum corðre mycle to ðam orlege ordum ond bordum* An. 1205; *wordum ond bordum hofon herecombol* El. 24; *bordum ond ordum* El. 235.

2. *tabula* : board.

sg. gen. *ic on wude stonde bordes on ende* Ridls. 88<sup>23</sup>.

- sg. dat. *habban him gomen on borde* Gn. (Ex.) 183.  
pl. dat. *hwilum ic bordum sceal heard heafodleas be-hlyped ligian* Ridls. 15<sup>9</sup>.  
3. tabulatum, latera navis.  
sg. nom. *bord oft onfeng ofer earrhgeblond yða swen-gas* El. 238.  
sg. dat. *drugað his ar on barde* Gn. (Ex.) 188.  
sg. acc. *læd . . . under earce bord eaforan þine* Gen. 1333, 1357.  
pl. dat. *þa beutan beoð earce bordum* Gen. 1354.  
For further references to 2 and 3 s. B. T., and Grein, Sprachsch. I, 133.  
Compounds. 1. with *bord* as second member of the compound.  
*guð-bord* n. clipeus bellicus : war-board, shield.  
sg. nom. *gearo sceal guð-bord* Gn. (Ex.) 203.  
sg. gen. *guðbordes sweng* Gen. 2693.  
*hilde-bord* n. s. *guð-bord*.  
pl. acc. *lætað hildebord her onbidian* B. 397.  
pl. instr. *him ða gegiredan Geata leode ad on eorðan un-waclicne, helm[um] behongen, hilde-bordum* B. 3139.  
*hleo-bord* n. a protecting board, a book-cover.  
pl. instr. *mec sippān wrähæleð hleo-bordum* Ridls. 27<sup>12</sup>.  
*nægled-bord* adj. s. Grein, Sprachsch. II, p. 275.  
Cf. *Nægling* m. the name of Beowulf's sword B. 2680.  
*wæg-bord* n. navis s. Gen. 1340.  
*wig-bord* n. battle-shield.  
sg. acc. *heft him þa gewyrcean wigendra hleo eall irenne . . . wig-bord wrætic* B. 2339.  
pl. nom. *wigbord scinon* Ex. 466.  
*ȝð-bord* n. navis s. An. 298 and Crä. 57.  
*þryð-bord* n. scutum validum : shield.

acc. *com þa wigena hleo þegna preate þryðbord stenan*  
El. 151.

2. with *bord* as first member of the compound.

*bord-gelac* n. clipeorum impugnatio : weapon.

sg. nom. *þy læs se attres ord in gebuge biter bordgelac under banlocan* Cri. 769.

*bord-hæbbende* m. scutifer : warrior.

sg. nom. *þat eorl-weorod . . . mod-giomor sæt, bord-hæbbende* B. 2895.

*b o r d - h a g a* m. clipeorum sepimentum : testudo, phalanx.

dat. *under bordhagan* El. 652.

*bord-hreoda*, (-*hreða*) m. clipeus, testudo : shield ornamentation (Zupitz), a shield-covering either of animal's hide or of bast (Heyne, Holder).

*bord* and *hreoda* from the st. v. *hreodan* 'to cover, to clothe'. Cf. *gold-hroden* 'gold-adorned' B. 614, 640 etc.

dat. *him hildemeceas under bord-hreodan to bonan wurdon* B. 2203; *heapum þrungon . . . , under bordhreodan An 128; þa þe for geogude gyt ne mihton under bordhreodan breostnet were wið flane feond folnum werigean* Exod. 236; *hæfdon him to segne . . . ofer bordhreodan beacen aræred* Exod. 320.

pl. nom. *blicon bordhreodan* Exod. 159.

pl. acc. *bræcon bordhreðan* El. 122.

Cf. further *scild-hreoda*.

*bord-rand* m. s. *rand*.

*bord-weall* m. 1. scutorum agger, testudo, clipeus.

sg. acc. *he bræc þone bordweall* By. 277; *hi bordweal clufon* Aæfelst. 5; *brecan ofer bord-weal* B. 2980.

2. litoris agger.

acc. pl. *bordweallas grof heard and hifende* Ridls. 34<sup>6</sup>.

*bord-wudu* m. clipei lignum, shield.

acc. pl. *setton him to heafdon hilderandas, bordwudu*  
B. 1243.

*bord-paca, peaca* m. (an). bord-thatch.

nom. sg. *testudo* : *borohaca vel sceldreda, vel faeruca* Ep. 997; ~ : *brodhaca vel sceldhreða vel fænuca* Er. 997; ~ : *bordþeaca* Corp. 1999. Covering of a shield.

**Meaning.** The original meaning is board, from which is derived the meaning of shield, that which is made from a wooden board.

**Etymology.** Corresponding words to OE. *bord* in other Germ. dialects are: Goth. *-baúrd* in *fotubaúrd* 'foot-stool', OSax. *bord*, OHG. *bort, port* in Ablaut to *brēt*, MDu. *bert* (cf. Stokes in K. Z. 35, p. 157), Du. *bord, boord* with meaning of 'shield, board', ON. *bord*, Dan. *bord*, Swed. *bord*. For the NHG. borrowing from the LG. in *Steuerbord* and *Backbord*, for OIr. *bord* (OE. loanword), and for Fr. *bord* from the LG. cf. Skeat., Etym. Dic., Kluge, Etym. Wb. 53, 57, Murray NED. under *board*, and Diez, Etym. Wb., p. 59, for the Fr. forms.

### Camp-wudu.

A poetical expression probably for shield, it may, however, refer to a spear as the term 'battle wood' leaves it indefinite. The quotation from El. 51 is as follows. *ponne rand dynede campwudu clynde*. Similar expressions are *xsc-holt* = 'spear', *beadu-leoma* = 'sword', and *hring-isen* = 'coat of mail', also *mægen-wudu* = 'spear' B. 236.

Lind.

Form. *lind* f. (ð).

References.

sg. nom. *pæt him holt-wudu helpan nemeahte, lind wið lige* B. 2341.

sg. gen. *ofer linde lærig* Exod. 239.

sg. dat. *eodon him pa togenes garum gehyrsted lungre under linde* Exod. 46; *stod under linde, moder leohtum scylde* MC. 9.

sg. acc. *pæt meahte wel æghwylc on fyrd wegan fealwe linde* Gen. 2044; *ne mihte ða forhabban, hond rond gefeng, geolwe linde* B. 2610; *(he) his linde ahof* By. 244.

pl. (sg.?) acc. *þe him foran ongean linde bærон* B. 2365; *berað linde forð* Jud. 191; *(hi) linde heowon* Jud. 304; *linde bærон* By. 99; *hofon herecyste hwite linde* Exod. 301.

pl. dat. *under lindum* Exod. 228; *ofer lindum* Exod. 251.

pl. instr. *stopon headorincas . . . to beadowe bordum beðeahte, hwealfum lindum* Jud. 214.

Compounds. 1. *lind* as second member of the compound.

*heaðu-lind* f. *tilia bellica, scutum*: battle-shield of linden-wood.

pl. acc. *heowon headolinda hamora lafum eaforan Eadweardes* Aedelst. 6.

2. *Lind* as first member of the compound.

*lind-croda* m. *collisus scutorum, pugna*: battle, shield-press.

dat. *æt þem lindcrodan* Gen. 1998.

*lind-gecrod* n. *turba clipeata*: warlike troop, host.

sg. dat. *com werod unmæte, lyswe larsmeoðas mid lindgrocrode* An. 1220.

*lind-gelac* n. *pugna scutiferorum*: battle.

sg. gen. *næron ða twegen tohtan sene, lindgelaces*  
Ap. 76.

*lind-gestealla* m. *socius scutifer* : a shield-comrade.

sg. nom. *wigendra hleo, lindgestealla, lifgende cwom*  
B. 1973.

voc. pl. *rincas mine, lindgesteallan* An. 1344.

*lind-hæbbende* m. *scutifer* : a warrior.

pl. nom. *no her cuðlicor cuman ongunnon lind-hæbbende*  
B. 245.

pl. gen. *gum-feþa stop lind-hæbbendra* B. 1402.

*lind-hwæt* adj. *scutifer strenuus* : shield-brave.

sg. nom. *wæs se lindhwata leodgeborga eorlum arfæst*  
[MS. *leodhwata lindgeborga*] El. 11.

*lind-plega* m. s. *lind-gelac*.

sg. dat. *æt þam lind-plegan* B. 1073; *to ðam lind-plegan*  
B. 2039.

*lind-werod* n. *exercitus scutiferorum* : warlike troop.

sg. nom. *heap wæs gescyrded, laðra lindwered* El. 142.

*lind-wiga* m. *bellator scutifer* : warrior.

sg. nom. *Weoxstanes sunu, leoflic lind-wiga* B. 2603.

*lind-wigend* m. s. *lind-wiga*.

pl. nom. *sceotend þohton Italia ealle gegongan lind-wigende* Boet. 1<sup>18</sup>; *ða fromlice lindwiggende lædan ongunnan þa torhtan mægð* Jud. 42.

pl. gen. *lindwigendra land gesohte secga preate* El. 270;  
*flugon, ða ðe lyfdon laðra linde (?)* Jud. 298 [Grein reads  
here *lindwiggendra*].

Derivative.

*linden* adj. of lime wood.

sg. nom. *leoht linden bord* Gn. (Ex.) 95.

Meaning. Clipeus : a shield made of linden wood,

which wood was most frequently employed on account of its lightness and impenetrability.

**Etymology.** Cognate forms, with the meaning 'shield' are OHG. *linta*, MHG. *linde*, ON. *lind*. Cf. Swed., Dan. *lind* 'linden wood', NHG., Du. *linde*, ME. *lind*, *lynd*, NE. *lind*, *linden* 'the linden tree'. The further etymology is not definitely settled. Cf., however, Schrader, Real. Lex., p. 503, for relationship with the Slav. branch, Uhlenbeck, PBB. 26<sup>303</sup>, and Kluge, Etym. Wb., p. 249, who conjectures relationship with Lit. *lentà* 'board', Gr. ἐλάτη (from \**lnta*) 'Fichte, Weißtanne'.

### Rand.

**Forms.** *rand*, *rond* m. (a), *randa* m. (an).

**References.** 1. *litus*, *margo*.

sg. dat. *aras ða bi ronde rof oretta* B. 2538.

2. *margo clipei*.

sg. nom. *rand sceal on scylde* Gn. (C), 37.

sg. dat. *bord wið rond[e]* B. 2673.

sg. acc. *ponne he gewyrced to wera hilde . . . scirne mece oððe scyldes rond* Crü. 65.

3. *clipeus*.

sg. nom. *rand dynede* El. 50; *ponne rond ond hand on herefelda helm ealgodon* An. 9; *ponne hand ond rond on beaduwange billum foregrunden nearu prowedon* An. 412.

sg. dat. *he under rande gecranc* B. 1209.

sg. acc. *pæt he me ongean slea, rand geheawe* B. 682; *sipðan ic hond ond rond hebban mihte* B. 656; *hond rond gefeng* B. 2609.

pl. acc. *randas wægon forð fromlice on foldwege* Gen. 2049; *hi . . . on þone readan sze randas bærон* Ps. 105<sup>8</sup>; *randas bærон sƿicingas ofer sealne mersc* Exod. 332; *dælan ealde*

*madmas, reaf ond randas* Exod. 586; *beran ofer bolcan beorhte randas* B. 231; *setton sæ-meþe side scyldas, rondas regn-hearde wiþ þas recedes weal* B. 326; *þæt we rondas beren eft to earde* B. 2653; *þæt hy hyra randan rihte heoldon [for randas?]* By. 20.

Compounds. 1. with *rand* as second member of the compound.

*bord-rand* m. *scuti margo, clipeus*: shield.

sg. acc. *biorn under beorge bord-rand onswaf wið ðam gryre-gieste* B. 2559.

*geolo-rand* m. *clipeus flavus*: a shield, so called from the yellow colour of the linden wood of which it was made.

sg. acc. *þæt ic . . . geolorand to grufe (bere)* B. 438; *garas ofer geolorand* El. 118.

*hilde-rand* m. *scutum bellicum*.

pl. acc. *setton him to heafdon hilde-randas* B. 1242.

*sid-rand* m. *scutum amplum*: a wide shield.

sg. nom. *þa wæs on healle . . . sid-rand manig hafen handa fæst* B. 1289.

2. *rand* as first member of the compound.

*rand-bēag* s. p. 233.

*rand-burg* f. city.

pl. dat. (*he*) *rondburgum weold* Jul. 19.

Cf. the *skjaldborg* of Brunhilde on the Hindarfjall in the Volsunga Saga C. XX.

*rand-burg* f. wall.

pl. nom. *fægum stæfnum flos blod gewod. Randbyrig wæron rofene* Exod. 463.

*rand-hæbbend* m. bellator: warrior.

pl. gen. *þætie ofer nænig under swegles begong selra nære rond-hæbbendra, rices wyrðra* B. 861.

*rand-wiga* m. bellator clipeatus.

sg. nom. *se wæs Hrogare . . . rice rand-wiga* B. 1298.

sg. acc. *Geat unigmetes wel, rofne randwigan restan lyste* B. 1793.

pl. gen. *randwigena ræst be þan readan sæ* Exod. 134.

pl. dat. *þæt þu randwigum rumor mote on ðisse folkeare frætwa dælan* Gen. 2828.

*rand-wigend, wiggend* m. id.

pl. gen. *nu ic gumena gehwæne pyssa burgleoda biddan wylle, randwiggendra . . .* Jud. 188; *cneowmaga, randwiggendra rim* Exod. 435.

**Meaning.** margo, clipeus : the shield rim, which, with the boss, served to strengthen and hold the shield together, so that the whole shield came finally to be named from one of its most important parts.

**Etymology.** Cognate forms to OE. *rand* in Germ. dialects are: OHG. *rant*, MHG. *rant*, ON. *rond* st. f., Swed. *rand*, but strange to say fails to appear in OSax., and is not recorded in Goth.

In the Romance languages it appears as Germ. loan-word Sp., Ptg. *randa*, *renda* 'lace border on a dress', It. *a randa* 'with difficulty, near', the exact meaning of which is 'near to the edge or brim', OFr., Prov. *randar* 'to adorn', NProv. *randa* 'Streichholz, um den Inhalt eines Gefäßes dem Rande gleich zu machen' (Diez, Etym. Wb.), from which is derived the verb *rander* 'dem Rande gleichstreichen' from which Fr. *randir* 'andringen, to press forward', Prov., Fr. *random* 'force', vb. *randomer*, *randomar* 'antreiben, anrennen', with reference perhaps to the force of a river full to the brim (s. Skeat, Etym. Dic.), or to the charge of warriors with shields held before them, with reference to the OHG. *rant*, *sciltrant*. Cf. NE. *at random*,

used as subst., ‘done or said at hazard’, the older meaning of which was ‘force, impetuosity’.

The Germ. ground form is *\*randa-* (Idg. *\*ram-tā*), which according to Kluge is in Ablaut to *\*rind-*, NHG. *Rinde* from a root *\*rem*, *\*ram* ‘aufhören, Ende’, the *m* of which has become *n* before *d*. Related is NE. *rim*, and from the same ground form OHG. *ramft* ‘Einfassung, Rand, Rinde’.

Relationship to Goth. *rimis* ‘rest, quiet’, OI. *ram-* ‘to cease, to rest’ has been suggested (s. Kluge, Etym. Wb., p. 318).

In NE. one meaning only, that of ‘edge or bank of a river’ has been retained in dialect; cf. *a reed-rand on our rivers and broads* = a reed-grown river bank (Vocab. of East Anglia EDS. 20<sup>75</sup>).

### Rand-bēag.

Forms. *randbēag*, *-bēah*, *bēg*, *-bēh* m. (a).

For *bēh* s. Sievers (Ags. Gramm., § 108<sup>2</sup>, Bülbring, § 317), and for *bēg* Bülbring (§ 107, 108, 193).

### References.

sg. nom. *umbo* : *randbeah* WW. 549<sup>44</sup>; id.: ~ Aelfc. Gr. 35<sup>2</sup>; *umbo uel bucula*<sup>1</sup> : *randbeh* WW. 142<sup>30</sup>; *bucula*, *umbo* : *rand-bēag* Er. (3) 1156; *buculus* : *randbeag* Ep. 153; *baculus* : *rondbaeg* Er. 153; *buculus* : *rondbaeg* Corp. 335; *buculus*, *uel bucalaris* : *randbeag* WW. 195<sup>31</sup>; *buculus* : *randbeah* WW. 275<sup>24</sup>; *ferreus umbo* : *isen randbeag* WW. 237<sup>6</sup>; *umbro* (for *umbo*) : *randbeah* Aelfc. Gl. 318<sup>5</sup> = WW. 333<sup>5</sup>; *testudo* : *snægel øððe randbeah* Aelfc. Gramm. 37<sup>8</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Lat. *buccula* ‘Bäckchen, erhabene Rundung’ from which OFr. *bocle*, MHG. *buckel*. Cf. Kluge, Etym. Wb. u. *Buckel*. Cf. further NE. *buckle* ‘boss, ring; clasp’, and *buckler* ‘a shield named from the boss on it’.

gen. sg. *umbonis* : *randbeuges* OE. Gl. 1<sup>5024</sup>; reading of Hpt. Gl. 521<sup>8</sup> *umbonis* : *hrandbeages*; *umbonis* : *randbeages* WW. 512<sup>19</sup>.

dat. sg. *testudine* : *scildtruman*, *randbeaga* [MS. R. reads *randbeage*] OE. Gl. 1<sup>3796</sup>; ~ *hrandbeaga* (marg. *scildtrume*) Hpt. Gl. 495<sup>9</sup>.

acc. sg. *testudinem i. aciem* : *scildtrume*, *randbeag* OE. Gl. 1<sup>781</sup>.

dat. pl. *umbonibus* : *randbeam* [*bea(g)um*] OE. Gl. 1<sup>748</sup>, Hpt. Gl. 424<sup>6</sup>; *umbonibus* : *randbeagum* WW. 489<sup>25</sup>.

Meaning. *bucula*, *umbo*: the boss of the shield, usually of iron.

Etymology. A compound formed of *rand* 'rim, shield', and *bēag* 'ring', corresponding to OHG. *rantioug*, *-bouc*, *rantpauc* st. m., 'shield-boss'.

### Sield.

- Forms. *scild*, *scyld*, *sceld* m. (a). Originally a *u*-stem. For the various forms s. Bülbring, § 151 and Anm., § 306, and for later lengthening before *ld* § 285.

#### References. 1. scutum.

sg. nom. *scutum vel clypeus* : *scyld* Aelfc. Gl. 318<sup>5</sup> = WW. 333<sup>4</sup>; *scutum* : ~ Aelfc. Gr. 31<sup>8</sup>; *scutum*, *uel clypeus*, *uel parma* : ~ WW. 142<sup>28</sup>; *pelta* : *lytel scyld* WW. 142<sup>29</sup>; *clypeus*, *testudo* : *scyld* WW. 143<sup>23</sup>; *pelta* : ~ WW. 468<sup>29</sup>; *achile* [ancile] : ~ WW. 347<sup>28</sup>; idem 532<sup>8</sup>; *ancile* : *sintryndel*, *lytel scyld* WW. 143<sup>24</sup>; *scyld wel gebearg life ond lice læssan hwile nærum peodne* B. 2570; *scyld scefte oncwyrð* Fin. 7; *scyld sceal cempan* Gn. (Ex.) 130; *se selosta scyld* Bl. Hom. 13<sup>10</sup>; *fordon þe englas beop a halgum mannum on fultume swa swa scyld* Bl. Hom. 29<sup>22</sup>; *scyld* (*sceal*) *gebunden* Gn. (Ex.) 94.

sg. gen. *þonne he gewyrceð to wera hilde helm . . .*  
*oððe scyldes rond* Crä. 65.

sg. dat. *scuto : scylde* Cant. Ps. 45<sup>10</sup>; id. : *mid scelde*  
VPs. 5<sup>11</sup>; idem 90<sup>5</sup>; *rand sceal on scylde* Gn. (Ex.) 37;  
*under leohatum scylde* MC. 10. *he sceaf þa mid ðam scylde*  
By. 136.

sg. acc. *scutum : scild* Cant. Ps. 34<sup>3</sup>; idem 75<sup>4</sup>; ~  
*sceld* VPs. 34<sup>3</sup>; idem 75<sup>4</sup>; *ne lecge scepes fell on scyld* Ges.  
Lieberm., p. 158; ~ Bd. 6, 9, p. 122; *guma norðerna ofer*  
*scyld sceoten* Aelðst. 19; *þær he hornbogan hearde gebendeð*  
*and sweord and sceld æt gescot feohta* Ps. 75<sup>8</sup>; *under his*  
*mæges scyld* B. 2675; *þat ic sidne scyld (bere)* B. 437; *ac he*  
*bord ongean hefeð hyge snottor, haligne scyld* Jul. 386.

nom. acc. pl. *peltae, uel parme : þa læssan scyldas*  
WW. 143<sup>25</sup>; *on Sardinium mon geseah twegen sceldas blode*  
*swætan* Or. 4, 8, 188, 25; *for þon þe hiera sceldas weron*  
*betogen mid elpena hydum* Or. 5, 7, 230, 24; *dynedan scildas*  
Jud. 204; *scyldas lixton* Exod. 125; *ac hy scamiente scyldas*  
*bærar, guð-gewædu, þær se gomela læg* B. 2850; *setton sæ*  
*meþe side scyldas . . . wið þas recedes weal* B. 325; *hwanon*  
*ferigeað ge fætte scyldas* B. 333; *scyldas wegon lidmen to*  
*lande* By. 98; *ðaette Gotan eastan of Sciddia sceldas læddon*  
Boet. 1<sup>2</sup>; *II scyldas* Ges. Lieberm., p. 358; *and ic an mine*  
*kinelouerd . . . to scheldes Chart. Th. 573<sup>7</sup>; þre scheldes Chart.*  
Th. 505<sup>28</sup>.

pl. gen. *peltarum i. scutorum : scylda* OE. Gl. 1<sup>3795</sup>;  
id. : *scilda* Hpt. Gl. 495<sup>7</sup>; *parmarum : scylda* WW. 532<sup>7</sup>;  
*hlyn wearð on wicum scylda and sceafita* Gen. 2062; *eallswa*  
*fela scylda* Ges. Lieberm., p. 358.

pl. dat. *mid sperum and scyldum* Hom. Skt. II, 31<sup>450</sup>;  
*mid scyldum* Ep. Al. 151<sup>307</sup>.

2. *praesidium, tutela.*

sg. nom. *þam biþ dryhten scyld in siþa gehwane* Ph. 463; *scyldigra scyld* Sal. 79.

Voc. *æc þu Drihten scyld minre iugope* Bl. Hom. 89<sup>10</sup>.

3. a part of a bird's feathers.

sg. nom. *is se scyld usan frætwum gefegeg ofer þes fugles bæc* Ph. 308.

Compounds. 1. *scield, scild* as first member of the compound.

*scield-burg* f. *scutorum testudo : phalanx.*

sg. nom. *scyldburh (wearð) tobrocen* By. 242.

sg. acc. (*hi*) *scildburh scæron* Jud. 305.

sg. dat. *sodfæste men, sunnan gelice, fægre gefrætewod in heora fæder rice scinað in sceldbyrig (= in coelo)* Sat. 309.

*scield-freca* m. *bellator : warrior.*

sg. nom. *ponne scyld-freca ongean gramum gangan scolde* B. 1033.

*scield-hrœða, -reða, -hræada* m. *clipeus, testudo : shield, shield covering, phalanx.*

sg. nom. *testudo : borohaca vel sceldreda vel færucæ* Ep. 997; id. : *brodhaca vel sceldhreda vel fænucaæ* Er. 997.

sg. dat. *testudine : scyldreðan* WW. 532<sup>8</sup>.

acc. *ponne gargetrum ofer scildhreadan sceotend sendað* Cri. 675.

pl. nom. *scinon scyldhreðan* Exod. 113.

*scield-truma* m. *testudo : phalanx.*

sg. dat. *testudine : of scyltruman* OE. Gl. 1<sup>2959</sup>; id. : *scildtruman* OE. Gl. 1<sup>3796</sup>.

sg. acc. *testudinem, i. aciem : scild-trume [for -man — MS. R. reads scildtruman], randbeag* OE. Gl. 1<sup>781</sup>.

*sciold-weall* m. clipeorum vallum, testudo : phalanx.  
sg. acc. *ponne stræla storm strengum gebæded scoc ofer*  
*scild-weall* B. 3118.

*sciold-wiga* m. bellator : warrior.

sg. nom. *scearp scyld-wiga* B. 288.

*sciold-wyrhta* m. shield-maker.

sg. nom. *pæt nan scyldwyrhta ne lecge nan scepes fell*  
on *scyld* Aedelstan's law 15, Ges. Lieberm., p. 158.

2. *sciold* as second member of the compound.

*bōc-sciold* m. fagineum scutum : shield of beech-wood.

sg. gen. *and mines bocscyldes* Chart. Th. 561<sup>5</sup>.

*pleg-sciold* m. pelta, parma : a small shield.

sg. dat. *cum tuta* (gl. firma, secura) pelta (clypeo,  
parma) : *mid truman plegscelde* Hpt. Gl. 430<sup>36</sup> = pelta  
i. parma : *plegscylde* OE. Gl. 1<sup>761</sup>; pelta : ~ WW. 464<sup>21</sup>.

Derived.

*scioldan* vb. 'to shield, protect'.

*scioldend, ge-* m. protector.

*scioldere* m. id.

*gestcioldnes* f. protection.

*scioldung* f. id.

Meaning. scutum, clipeus : shield.

Etymology. The OE. name *sciold* is of Germ. origin.  
OE. *scīld*, *scyld*, *sceld*, ME. *shēlde*, *schēlde*, NE. *shield*, OHG.  
*scīlt*, *skilt*, MHG. *schilt*, NHG. *Schild*, OSax. *scīld*, NFr.  
*schild*, OFrs. *skīld*, *schild*, *schield*, Du. *Schild*, ON. *skjöldr*,  
Dan. *skiöld*, Swed. *sköld*, Goth. *skūldus*, with the original  
meaning of 'board', are derived from Germ. \**skelduz* to  
which Lit. *skiltės* 'abgeschnittene Scheibe', *skeliù*, *skélti*  
'cleave', Gr. σκαλλω scrape, dig [OI. *kalá* f. 'a small portion'];  
probably to the Idg. rt. \**skel-* 'to cleave, divide', from which  
the transition to shield is 'that which is made from cut

wood, from peeled off bast or from hide flayed from an animal' (s. Kögel, Idg. Forsch 4<sup>319</sup>). Cf. Goth. *skil-ja* 'butcher', ON. *skilja*, *skilda* 'to separate, divide', OE. *scylian* 'to separate' (s. Persson, p. 38, No. 14, p. 62, No. 6).

Grimm (G. Spr.<sup>3</sup> 222, 333) on the other hand connects Goth. *skildus* with a form \**skidlus*, \**skidilus* formed on the lost stem “\**skid-* earlier \**skud-*”. The latter is Schwundstufe to the rt. \**skei-* (s. Persson, p. 45, No. 4) 'bedecken, cover', from which Gr. *oxū-toç* 'skin, hide', Lat. *scutum* 'a leather covered shield'.

Schrader (Real. Lex. u. Schild), however, while suggesting the possibility of the connection of *scutum* with *oxū-toç*, derives it rather from a form \**skoito-m* in Ablaut to \**skeito-*, from which latter are derived Ir. *sciath*, OSlav. *štítu*, likewise OHG. *scit*, and ON. *skið* 'log, piece of wood', from an Idg. rt. \**sqit-* (\**sqeito-*, \**sqoito-*) or \**sqid-*. Cf. Lat. *scindo* (\**sq(h)id*) beside OHG. *sciedan* (*sq(h)it*)- with the original meaning of 'cleaving', then 'cleft wood', then 'shield'. Cf. further Persson (p. 43, No. 10, p. 176, No. 28), who regards the roots \**ski-d*, \**sku-d* as derived from \**ski-* 'to cleave' (p. 112, No. 22), \**sku* 'to separate, to hew' (p. 133, No. 26), which in turn are derived from \**sek-*, \**s(e)ka* 'to cleave, to cut' (cf. Burg, K. Z. XXIX, 358 ff.). Thus *Scutum* shows a parallel development in meaning to *skildus*.

### Targa.

Form. *targa* m. (an).

#### References.

sg. nom. *ignitus clipeus : ferentarga* WW. 84<sup>39</sup>.

sg. dat. *parma i. scuto : tar . . .* OE. Gl. 1<sup>726</sup> = Hpt. Gl. 424 *targa(n)*.

nom. acc. pl. *pæt is ærest minum hlaforde . . . tva*

*targan* Cod. Th. 516<sup>32</sup>, in a later copy of will (970) read  
*tueye targen* ib. 518<sup>4</sup>.

gen. pl. *peltarum* : *targena* OE. Gl. 1<sup>2958</sup>.

Derived: *getarged* pp.

nom. pl. *scutati* : *getargedē* OE. Gl. 1<sup>2259</sup> = Hpt. Gl. 459 from a vb. *targian*.

Meaning. A round shield smaller than the *scyld*, with the original meaning of 'rim, rim of shield', which finally came to refer to the whole shield in the same way as *rand*, which is a parallel development.

Etymology. Cognates to OE. *targa*<sup>1</sup>, ME. *targe*, *target*, NE. *targe* (obsolete), *target* are: OHG. *zarga*, MHG. *zarge* f. 'rim, ring, the sides of something enclosing a space, a frame', NHG. *zarge* 'the rim of a sieve', ON. *targa* 'shield'. Radically related is further OI. *dārh-*, *dīhyati* 'macht fest, befestigt', Lit. *dārėas*, Let. *dáras* 'garden, an enclosed space', Gr. *δέρασθαι* 'fasse an', to the Idg. rt. \**der-gh* 'fassen, festhalten' (s. Brugmann, Grundr. I, p. 463, Persson, p. 27, Uhlenbeck, OI. Wb., 129). The meaning of shield then has developed from 'rim, band', originally 'that which held something fast'.

In the Romance languages the word appears as Germ. loanword in It., Span. *targa*, OFr. *targe* originally 'a large shield', Span., Port. *darga* from OHG. *zarga* beside Span. *adarga*, *adaraga* of Arabic origin (cf. Arabic *addaragah*). This word has wandered back again to the Germ., and has been taken up in OHG. as *tartsche*, ODu. *tartsche*, and in ME. *targe* as a Fr. loanword is found in Rob. of Gloucester (361) and Chaucer (C. T. 473). The diminutive suffix -*et* in NE. *target* 'a small shield, a mark to fire at' is also

---

<sup>1</sup> For absence of breaking s. Bülbring, § 132 c.

of Fr. origin, and the NE. pronunciation of *target* with *g* is probably due to an OFr. form *targuete* beside *tarȝete*, otherwise the pronunciation of the *g* would be as in *pageant*, and most other French loanwords.

The form *targaid* recorded in Ir. and Gael., is probably a loanword from some such form as ME. *targat*.

### Tud (?).

*tud* m. n. *tudu* f. (?).

References. *parma* (Abl., to Aldhelm Laud. Virg. 71, <sup>86</sup>): *tude* OE. Gl. 1<sup>5025</sup>, Hpt. Gl. 521<sup>9</sup>.

pl. gen. *scutorum*: *tudenarda* OE. Gl. 1<sup>747</sup>. *tudenarda* is according to Napier perhaps corrupted from *tudena*, *randa* in which case *tude* above might be dat. sg. f. and *tudena* the unrecorded gen. pl. of *tud* m. n. or *tudu* f.

Meaning. With the meaning *parma*, *scutum*: 'shield', *tud* (?) occurs only in the two glosses mentioned above. Middendorf, however, gives *tud*<sup>1</sup> st. m., *tudde* wk. f. with the meaning 'Höcker, Wulst', and regards it as related to Dan. *tot* 'Haarbüschel, Zotte', OHG. *zotta*, *zata*, *zota* f., *zotto* m., MHG. *zote*, *zotte* m. f. 'Haarzotte, Flausch' from \**toddon*. Cf. ON. *todde* m. 'Büschen, Gewicht für Wolle' from whence NE. *tod* 'a bush, a measure of wool'. Cf. Kluge, Etym. Wb., p. 438, and Skeat, Conc. Etym. Dic. under *tod*.

The relation in meaning is not clear.

---

<sup>1</sup> Flurnamen. *to tudes leghe* G. B. 1033 (A. D. 958); *an tuddan ham* G. B. 480 (A. D. 854).

ðel.

Forms. *ðel*, *pell* pl. *pelu* n. (a).

References.

sg. acc. *peltam aurandel* i. e. *peltam auram del* = *peltam uaram del* = *peltam*. *parmam*: *ðel* Er. C. G. L. V, 385<sup>43</sup> verbessert von Schlutter (Jour. Germ. Phil. I, 318); *and þeah man gesette an brad isen pell ofer þas fyres hrof* Wulfst. 147<sup>3</sup> and 7.

pl. dat. *swelce eac heora wæpena noht lytel byrðen wæs forpon eal heora wæpenu þera minra þegna and ealles mines weoredes and heriges ic hie mid [g]yldenum þelum bewyrcean* Ep. Al. 145<sup>150</sup> = thin plates of gold, with which the weapons were overlaid.

Compounds.

*pell-fæsten* n. ship, ark.

sg. dat. *nolde gladu æfre under salwed bord syððan ætywan on pell-fæstenne* Gen. 1482.

*benc-pel* n. wood of the benches.

nom. acc. pl. *eal bencþelu blode bestymed* B. 486; ~ *beredon* B. 1239.

*ceol-pel* tabulatum navis, ship wood.

sg. dat. *eom nu her cumen on ceolpele* Bot. 8.

*wæg-pel*. tabulatum marinum, navis: ship.

sg. acc. *lædan weras on wægþel and heora wif somed* Gen. 1358.

sg. dat. *of er sid wæter secan wolde on wægþele eft* Gen. 1446; *of wægþele* 1496; *hie ða gebrohton æt brimes næsse on wægþele wigan unslawne* An. 1711.

Flurnamen. In the composition *ðel brycȝ* G. B. 50 (A. D. 680), *be þael brycȝe* G. B. 869 (A. D. 948) is mentioned together with *stanbrycȝ* and *eorðbrycȝ*. Cf. also the proper name *Delbrück*.

Meaning. 1. A wooden plank, a shield.

2. A thin plate of metal.

Etymology. To OE. *ðel* are related : OHG. *dili* m., MHG. *dil* m., MDu. *dèle*, Du. *deel*, ON. *pile* 'board, deal' from Germ. \**pēlaz*, \**pilis* n. 'board'. Allied to *ðel* are further OE. *pille*, NE. *thill* 'the shaft of a cart', OHG. *dilla* f., MHG. *dille*, NHG. *diele* f. 'board, board wall', ON. *pilja* 'rowing-bench', Fin. *teljo* 'ship's bench' from Germ. \**piljan* 'that which is made of board'.

Radically related are OPr. *talus* 'floor covered with planks', OSlav. *tilo* n., NSlav. *tilo* 'floor', Lit. *tilé* 'boards at the bottom of a boat'. To the Celt. family belong OIr. *talam* 'the ground, the earth', Cymr., Corn. *tal* 'brow'. Related are also Lat. *tellus* 'the earth', Gr. *τηλία*, Skt. *talam* n. 'surface, plane'; perhaps to Idg. rt. \**tel-*, *tla* 'to raise, lift, carry' s. Uhlenbeck (Ai. Wb., p. 110 and 114).

*thel* remained until the end of the 16<sup>th</sup> century, when it was supplanted by Du. *deel* (NE. *deal*), which is identical with OE. *ðel*.

## 2. The Helm.

### Bucc (?)

Forms. *bucc*, *bua*, *buuc* m. (!)

References. *buccula* : *bucc* Ep. <sup>120</sup>; *bua* Er. <sup>338</sup>; *buuc* Corp. <sup>338</sup>.

Meaning and Etymology. Sweet explains this word recorded only in the above mentioned glosses as 'beaver of a helmet', deriving it from Lat. *buccula*, diminutive from *bucca* 'the cheek', with the meaning of 'beaver or cheek piece of helmet' as used by Livy, and places it in his Dic. without a question mark.

For another explanation s. Jour. of Germ. Phil. (I, 332 f.) where Schlutter offers the following suggestion: "As the Corp. Gloss. plainly reads *buuc*, and as in the Er. (²) (C. G. L. V, 318<sup>³</sup>) we find *patera fiola uel bucula calicis*, one might be inclined to think we had to do here with *buc*, 'bulky vessel, pitcher'. But we meet C. G. L. IV, 314<sup>⁴⁵</sup>, with *buccula*, *bucca* in a glossary where there is no idea of Old English interpretation; again we find IV, 27, 3, *buccula bacca*, and IV, 489, 32, *bucula uacca diminutiae* = V, 272<sup>⁴⁶</sup> (Er. ²), *bacula uacca diminutiuae*, wherewith cp. IV, 212<sup>⁴⁰</sup> *bucula : uaccula*. Hence it would appear that neither a pitcher nor a beaver, but a cow, is meant. Read then *bucula : uacca*, following the traces of Erfurt."

With reference to the second explanation cf. the gloss *vacca, vel buccula : buch* R. A. Wright I, p. 97, from a Welsh Gloss of the end of the 12<sup>th</sup> or the beginning of the 13<sup>th</sup> century from MS. Cott. Vespas. A. XIV, fol. 7 r<sup>o</sup>.

### Byge.

Form. *byge* m. (i).

#### References.

nom. sg. *conus : helmes byge* WW. 143<sup>⁷⁸</sup>; *sinus : byge* Corp. 1874.

Meaning. A corner, a bend or curve, apex of a helmet.

Etymology. Formed from the weak grade of *bugan* intr. 'to bend, stoop, swerve' with the suffix *-ie*.

Camb.

Forms. 1. *camb* m. (a).

2. *cambe* f. (ōn).

References.

sg. nom. *crista* : *helmes camb* WW. 143<sup>27</sup>; id. : *camb-ih-te*, *camb on hætte oðre on helme* WW. 373<sup>18</sup>; (*pecten* : *camb* WW. 282<sup>5</sup>, 336<sup>17</sup>, Corp. 1564, Ep. 825).

sg. dat. *crista* : *cambe* OE. Gl. 1<sup>5019</sup> = Hpt. Gl. 521; item OE. Gl. 2<sup>416</sup>.

Cf. further *cristas i. comas* : *combas on fugele*, *uel loccas* WW. 215<sup>34</sup>.

and the ME. Gloss: *hec crista, est crinis vel quod eminet super galeam et super capita quorundam animalium: the cokcome* WW. 703<sup>28</sup>.

*cambiht* = crested.

*crista* : *cambiht* WW. 512<sup>15</sup>; cf. above WW. 373<sup>18</sup>.

Meaning. 1. A comb, a crest. The form of the Anglo-Saxon leather cap or helmet with ridged edge having a strong resemblance to a cock's comb.

2. honeycomb.

Etymology. Related forms in other Germ. dialects are: OHG. *kamb*, *champ*, MHG. *kam*, *kamp*, NHG. *kamm*, ON. *kambr*, Dan. *kam*, Swed. *kam*, *kamm* 'the ridge of a mountain, crest'. Cf. Skt. *jámbhas* m., OSlav. *zqbū* 'tooth'. Lit. *žāmbas* 'edge, corner', Lett. *zūbs* 'tooth', Gr. *γόμφος* to Idg. \**gombho-s* to rt. \**gembho* 'to tear, to bite'. Retained in NE. with the meaning of *comb*, cf. also *cock's comb*.

Čin-berg.

Form. *činberg* f. (ō).

Reference.

sg. acc. *grimhelm gespeon cynning, cinberge* Exod. 175.

Meaning. The part of the helmet covering or protecting the chin.

Etymology. A compound of two Anglo-Saxon words *činn*, Goth. *kinnus*, NE. *chin*, and *berg* or *beorg* from the infin. stem of the verb *beorgan* ‘to protect, conceal’.

[*Cræsta* (?)]

[This word is given by Somner, Lye, and Bosworth-Toller, but without references. I have been unable to find it in any of the OE. Glossaries, it occurring first in a weapon list of the 15<sup>th</sup> century as *hic conus : a crest* WW. 786<sup>29</sup>, where *crest* is undoubtedly identical with Lat. *crista* ‘a crest, a cock’s comb’, but whether it existed in OE. is questionable, for ME. *creste, crest* Chaucer (C. T. 15314), NE. *crest* comes from OFr. *creste* ‘a tuft, a comb’, making the supposition of an OE. *cræsta* unnecessary.]

**Eofor-cumbol.**

The word *cumbol* (*cumbor*) belongs under the head of war banners and pennants rather than under helm. Nevertheless the compound *eofor-cumbol* (*eofur-cumbol*), of El. 76 and 259, refers distinctly to a boar emblem used on the helmet, which through a figure of speech (part for the whole) is transferred to the helmet itself. In OSax. *kumbal* has the meaning of a ‘heavenly sign or token’, which is retained in OE., but with the more specific meaning later of ‘war banner, pennant, war emblem’. A similar compound to the above is found in the Norse Fornaldor Sögur, where *her-kuml* refers to ‘a badge worn on the helmet’. The compounds with *cumbol* such as *cumbol-gebrec* ‘battle’, *cumbol-gehnast* (Æðelst. 49), *cumbol-wiga* ‘warrior’ Jud. 12, 243, 259, are numerous.

Cf. further *hroden hilt cumbor* ‘banner with a staff’ of B. 1022.

**Grima.**

Form. *grima* m. (an).

**Reference.**

sg. nom. *larbula* : *egisgrima* Ep.-Er. 569, Corp. 1168; *masca* : *grima* Corp. 1279; *mascus* : ~ Corp. 1280 = *marcus*: ~ of Ep.-Er. 643; *musca* (*masca*?): *egisgrima* Corp. 1351.

**Compounds.**

*beadu-grima*. larva bellica, cassis.

pl. acc. *feormend swefað*, *þa-ðe beado-griman bywan sceoldon* B. 2257.

**Meaning.** 1. Cassis : helmet.

2. masca : a mask.

**Etymology.** Cognates to OE. *grima* are: OHG. *grimo* ‘mask, helm’, ON. *grima* ‘mask, covering, a kind of hood used for a head covering’, Dan. *grime* ‘a horse’s halter’. From the meaning ‘mask’ has arisen the mistake of regarding *grima* as a ‘helm with a visor’, which is, however, an impossibility for the OE. period as the visor was certainly not introduced, at the earliest, before the 12<sup>th</sup> century, and in all probability later in the 13<sup>th</sup>. (Cf. the simple nasal of the helmets on the Bayeux Tapestry as late as 1066.) The ON. *grimu-maðr* ‘a disguised man’, also the name of Odin *Grimr*, *Grimnir* = ‘der Verlarvte’ (Grm. 46, and Pauls Grd. III, 335), points to some sort of a head covering used to disguise a person. So *grima* may be taken to refer to a helmet used in the sense simply of ‘a head covering’, not that of ‘helmet visor’.

Schade connects the word further with OHG. *grinan* ‘den Mund verziehen’, which is related to NE. *grin*, NHG. *greinen* to the Germ. rt. \**grī*, Idg. \**ghrī* (s. Kluge, Etym. Wb.).

The connection in meaning is probably from the distortion of the mouth produced by a grin making the person appear other than usual, from whence the Norse meaning of 'disguise, a covering for the head used as a disguise', and finally the OE. *grima* 'head covering, helm'. Cf. Du. *grijus* 'a mask, a grin', where both meanings exist side by side.

In the Romance languages the Span. *grima* 'terror, fear', Port. ~ 'dislike' are borrowed from the German. It is possible that Fr. *grimace*, Span. *grimazo*, NE. *grimace* 'a distortion of the countenance', are related to *grima*, but the etym. is not certain (cf. Diez, Wb., 456, and Skeat, Etym. Wb.).

### **Heafod-beorg.**

A kenning for *helm*, the head-protection. *Ymb þes helmes hrof heafodbeorge wirum bewunden walan utan heold* B. 1030. Cf. *healsbeorg*, *brēostbeorg*, *bāngebeorg*, *scancgebeorg*.

### **Helm.**

Form. *helm* m (a).

References. 1. *galea*, *cassis* : helmet.

sg. nom. *galea* : *helm* WW. 332<sup>20</sup> = Aelfc. Gr. 317<sup>17</sup>; *cassis* : ~ Aelfc. Gr. 56<sup>5</sup>; id. : *irsen* [*isern*] - ~ WW. 142<sup>2</sup>; and *eac wæs his helm ðyrl* Fin. 47; *helm sceal cenum* Gn. (Ex.) 205; *þa wæs of þæm hroran helm ond byrne lungre alysed* B. 1629; *þær wæs helm monig, eald ond omig* B. 2762; *þær on bence wæs ofer æfelinge yþ-gesene heapo-steapa helm* B. 1245; *se hwita helm hafelan werede* B. 1448; *sceal se hearda helm hyrsted golde fætum befallen* B. 2255; *urum sceal sveord ond helm, byrne ond byrduscrud bam gemæne* B. 2659.

sg. gen. cassidis, i. galeo : -mes (MS. R. *helmes*) OE. Gl. 1<sup>5020</sup>; cassidis : *helmes* OE. Gl. 2<sup>417</sup>; item WW. 12<sup>3</sup>, 200<sup>88</sup>, 363<sup>18</sup>, Corp. 418; apex, summitas galeæ : *helmes top* WW. 143<sup>26</sup>; crista : ~ *camb* WW. 143<sup>27</sup>; conus : ~ *byge* WW. 143<sup>28</sup>; cassidis : *helme[s]* WW. 512<sup>16</sup>; id. : *helme[s]* i. diadematis Hpt. Gl. 521<sup>1</sup>; *ymb þes helmes hrof* B. 1030.

sg. dat. cassibus, calamitatibus, uel ferum : *helme* WW. 200<sup>41</sup>; and *gelædde Mardocheum . . . mid helme geond þa burh* Hom. Ass. VIII, 242; *mid helme = cynhelme* Aelfc. Es. 245; *ecg sceal wið helme hilde gebidan* Gn. (C.) 16; *swin ofer helme* B. 1286; *heard under helme* B. 2539, 342, 404; and *he mid ane helme hlod it* Ep. Al. 146<sup>168</sup>; *na mid readum scylde, oððe mid helme* Hom. Skt. II, 31<sup>115</sup>.

sg. acc. cassium : *helm* Corp. 4<sup>22</sup> = WW. 12<sup>7</sup>; item 363<sup>28</sup>; cassium, conum : *helm* WW. 200<sup>37</sup>; (*hi*) *brohton . . . sveord ondswatigne helm* Jud. 338; *ponne he gewyrceð to wera hilde helm obbe hupseax* Crä. 64; *forgeaf þa Beowulfe bearn Healfdenes . . . helm ond byrnan* B. 1022; *helm ne-gemunde* B. 1290; *helm oft gescær* B. 1526; *pioden fristhydig þegne geselalte . . . gold-fahne helm* B. 2811; *ponne he on ealubence oft geselalte heal-sittendum helm ond byrnan* B. 2868; *ac he him on heafde helm ær gescer* B. 2973; *nam on Ongendio iren-byrnan, . . . ond his helm somod* B. 2987; *ponne rond ond hand on herefelda helm ealgodon* An. 10; *under helm drepen* B. 1745; *his helm onspeon* B. 2723; *het þa in beran eafor heafod-segn, heaðo-steapne helm* B. 2153; *ond his magum ætbær brun-fagne helm* B. 2615; *let se hearda Higelaces þegn brad(n)e mece . . . , eald sveord eotenisc, entiscne helm brecan ofer bord-weal* B. 2979; and *ic on mine kine-louerd . . . and helm and brinie* Chart. Th. 573<sup>5</sup>; *nd ic an mine kyne louerd . . . helm and brinie* Chart. Th. 556<sup>21</sup>.

nom. acc. pl. *and læddon to ðære beorhtan byrig Be-thuliam helmas and hup-seax* Jud. 328; *pæt we him ða guð-  
getawa gyldan woldon . . . helmas ond heard sveord* B. 2638;  
*berað linde forð . . . scire helmas in sceadena gemong* Jud.  
193; *rum wæs to nimanne londbuendum on ðam laðestan,  
. . . herereaf, brune helmas* Jud. 318.

pl. gen. *and he becwæð his laford . . . LX healma*  
Chart. Th. 549<sup>18</sup>.

pl. dat. *hæleð under helmum* Jud. 203.

pl. instr. *oð þæt folcgetrume gefaren hæfdon sid to somne  
suðan and norðan helmum þeahte* Gen. 1989; *ad on eorðan  
. . . helm(um) behongan* B. 3139.

2. corona : crown, diadem.

sg. nom. corona : *helm* WW. 290<sup>20</sup>.

sg. dat. *heah on helme hrysted fægere* Run. 53.

sg. acc. coronam : *helm* Cant. Ps. 20<sup>4</sup>; spineam, coro-  
nam : *þyrnenne helm* Mk. 15<sup>17</sup>.

3. any sort of covering.

sg. nom. ulmus : *helm* WW. 279<sup>14</sup>; frondea ficus,  
i. frondosa : *geþuf ficbeam, vel helm, vel rug.*

sg. gen. verticis i. capitidis : *helmes* OE. Gl. 1<sup>1564</sup>; item  
Hpt. Gl. 443<sup>28</sup>.

sg. acc. siððan wæges *helm werode gesohte* El. 230;  
*under lyfte helm* Ridls. 4<sup>64</sup>.

nom. acc. pl. frondea robora : *helmas* WW. 243<sup>34</sup>.

4. a) Protector, God.

nom. acc. voc. sg. *gasta helm* Gen. 2420; *him engla  
helm . . . getigðode* Gen. 2751; *eala dugaða helm!* Sat. 164;  
*þu eart hæleða helm* Sat. 658; *wuldres helm* Cri. 463; *ne  
hie huru heofena helm herian ne-cuþon* B. 182; *hu se gasta*

*helm in prynesse prymme geweordad acenned wearð El. 176;  
gewat him þa se halga helm ælwihta An. 118; aeðelinga helm  
Gen. 1858, 2721.*

*sg. dat. and þa waldende lifes leohtfruman lac onsægde,  
gasta, helme Gen. 1793.*

b) Wordly protectors, leaders, kings.

nom. acc. voc. *gewat þa heriga helm ham eft þanon*  
El. 148; *swa hire weoruda helm byrnwiggendra beboden hæfde*  
El. 223; *Hroðgar... helm Scyldinga* B. 456, 371, 1321.

pl. dat. *þat hie oft fela folca feore gesceodon heriges  
helnum* Dan. 16.

For further references to 3 and 4 consult Grein,  
Sprachschatz II, p. 31 ff., and for the countless proper  
names with *-helm* s. Sweet, OET., p. 520.

Compounds. *helm* as first member of the com-  
pound.

*helm-bære, -berende* leafy.

sg. gen. *frondiferi nemoris : helmbærēs bearuwæs* WW.  
243<sup>ss</sup>.

*helm-berend* m. bellator: warrior.

pl. acc. *gegrette ða gumena gehwylcne, hwate helm-  
berend hindeman side* B. 2517; *þe he usic gar-wigend gode  
tealde, hwate helm-berend* B. 2642.

pl. gen. *ne rohte he to þære hilde helm-berendra* Höll. 37.

Derivations.

*helmian* vb. obducere 'to cover'.

*ban-helm* m. munimentum adversus occisores :  
helmet.

nom. *sceolde celod bord cenum on handa, banhelm  
berstan* Fin. 32.

*cyne-helm* m. corona, diadema.

sg. nom. diadema i. corona : *cyme-helm* OE. Gl. 1<sup>2202</sup>; item WW. 142<sup>3</sup>; corona inclita : *myclic cynehelm* WW. 57<sup>31</sup>.

sg. dat. palma i. corona : *cynehelme* OE. Gl. 1<sup>3098</sup>.

nom. acc. pl. *þa cyne-helmas wæron scinende* Hom. Skt. II, 34<sup>76</sup>; *we habbað cyne-helmas halige* Hom. Skt. II, 34<sup>114</sup>.

pl. dat. *mid twam cyne-helnum* Hom. Skt. II, 34<sup>75</sup>.

*grim-helm* m. helmet, s. *grima*.

sg. nom. acc. *guðweard gumena grimhelm gespeon* Exod. 174; *pær wæs on eorle eðgesyne brogden byrne... grimhelm manig* El. 258.

pl. gen. *beadumægnes ræs, grimhelma gegrind* Exod. 330.

pl. acc. *hwanon ferigeað ge fætte scyldas... ond grimhelmas* B. 334.

*guð-helm* m. galea bellica : helmet.

sg. nom. *guð-helm toglad* B. 2487.

*heafðo-helm* (?) m. s. *guð-helm*.

acc. *hildes egesan hyðo h... f mid (?)* B. 3156.

For *lyft-*, *mist-*, *neah-*, *sceadu-*, *sund-*, *wæter-helm* s. Grein, Sprachschatz, and B. T.

*heolop-helm*, *hæleþ-* m. helmet which makes the wearer invisible. Cf. ON. *huliðs hialmr*.

sg. acc. (*he*) *hæleþhelm on heafod asette* Gen. 444.

sg. instr. *mid þam he færinga heolop helme biþeaht helle seceð goda geasne* Wal. 45.

*leþer-helm* m. leather helmet.

sg. nom. *galea : leþerhelm* WW. 142<sup>1</sup>.

Meaning.

*galea*, *cassis*: A helmet either of leather or of metal.

**Etymology.** Cognates to OE. *helm* are: OHG., OSax., OFrs. *helm*, Du. *helm*, *helmet*, ON. *hjalmr*, Dan. *hielm*, Swed. *hjelm*, M. and NHG. *helm*, Goth. *helms* to a Germ. \**helm-as* m. from the vb. *helan* 'to cover', from an Idg. rt. \**kel-* 'to cover, protect, conceal'. Cf. OI. *gar-man-* 'Schirm, Schutzdach, Decke'; from the same rt. also Lat. *cēlare*.

The Germ. word appears very early in Slav. as loanword (s. Schrader, Real. Lex., p. 366, and Kluge, P. Gdr., 361). According to Uhlenbeck OSlav. *šlēmū* is a borrowing from the OHG. *helm* (\*Germ. *helma-*), not from Goth. *hilms* (s. Uhlenbeck, Archiv f. Slav. Phil. 15<sup>491</sup>, and Hirt, PBB. 23<sup>538</sup>). The OSlav. form, and Lit. *szálmas* are in all probability, however, not borrowed directly from the OHG., but have come through the medium of OPr. *kelmis* 'a hat', which became \**chelmū*, *šelmu* > OSlav. *šlēmū* (cf. Grimm, Gd. d. Spr. 121, and Berneker V, 474).

The Germ. word appears also to have wandered westward and appears as loanword in It., Span., Port. *elmo*, Prov. *elm*, OFr. *heaume* (s. Diez, Wb. 121); cf also MLat. *helmus* in the Reichenauer Glossar.

From Fr. *healm*, *heaume* is formed a diminutive with the suffix *-et*, which appears in Span. and Port. as *almete* for *elmete*, and in Fr. as *armet* 'Pickelhaube'.

In ME. and NE. appear both *helm* from OE. *helm* and *helmet* with the Fr. diminutive suffix *-et*, the former of which in NE. is confined chiefly to poetry.

### Hleorberge (?).

*hleor-berge* f. (ōn), *hleor-bere* f. (ōn) [?].

Reference.

ac. pl. *hleor-bergan* (?) B. 304 reading of Heyne.

sg. dat. *eofor-līc scinon ofer hleorberan gehroden golde fah and fyrheard ferh wearde hēold Grein.*

**Meaning and Etymology.** This much contested passage reads in the MS. *hleorberan*, which was emended by Gering (Z. Z. 12<sup>128</sup>) to *hleor-bergan*, which was adopted by Heyne in his Glossar, and is explained by him as having reference to 'der Teil des Helmes, der über die Wangen herabreichend sie einschließt und schützt' i. e. 'Wangenberge'.

Bugge (Z. Z. 4<sup>125</sup> ff.) reads 'of *hleor beran*' and regards *līc-scionen* as dat. sg. to *līc-scione* (adj. 'schön gestaltet') with reference to Beowulf, while he translates *ferhwearde* as a compound meaning 'Lebensschutz'. Grein retains the reading of the MS., but regards *hleorbere* as referring perhaps to the 'visor of a helm'. Cf. *grima* where the reasons against such a translation are given.

As regards the formation of the compound it is composed of *hleor* 'cheek' OSax. *hleor*, Du. *lier*, ON. *hlyr* to Germ. *hleura-* (cf. NE. *leer*) and *berge* a subst. from the vb. 'beorgan' 'to protect' (for form *berge* without breaking s. Sievers, § 43, 3. 164, 1), or *bere* from *beran* 'to bear', with the meaning in either case of 'a helm with some sort of protection for the cheeks, but not for the entire countenance' (s. Part I, p. 92).

### Wala (?).

*wala* m. (an), *wale* f. (ōn) [?].

#### Reference.

nom. or acc. pl. *ymb þæs helmes hrof heafod-berge wirum bewunden walan utan heold* B. 1031.

**Meaning.** According to Sievers ‘a rounded elevation or projection on the helmet to which the crest was fastened’ (s. PBB. XII<sup>369</sup>).

**Etymology.** *Wala* m., *wale* f. is perhaps a weak variant of the strong fem. *walu* ‘weal, mark of a blow’. To this OE. *walu* correspond Goth. *walus* ‘stick, staff’, ON. *vplr*, Swed. *val* ‘a round staff’, OFrs. *walu* (in *walubera* ‘a pilgrim’). The word occurs four times in the glosses with the meaning ‘mark of a blow upon the flesh, a ridge’: — *vibex* : *walu*, *vibices* : *wala* Hpt. Gl. 487<sup>59</sup>; *vibice* : *wale* Hpt. Gl. 516<sup>16</sup>; *vibices* : *wala* Hpt. Gl. 510<sup>41</sup>; *asperae invectionis mastigias*: *sljdra wala swipa* Hpt. Gl. 527<sup>26</sup> — from which is derived the meaning of ‘round projection or elevation’. *walu* is from Germ \**walu* — ‘a round staff’ probably connected with the root \**yel*, which is found beside root \**yer* with the meaning ‘to turn, to wind’ (cf. Persson 31<sup>8</sup>). Of similar origin is Fr. *gaule* (*waule*) ‘a large pole’ (Diez, Wb. 594). Cf. also OI. *válati* ‘wendet sich, dreht sich’, Lat. *vol-v-o*, OSlav. *valiti* ‘to roll’. ME. *wale*, NE. *wale*, *weal* ‘the mark of a blow’.

**Compound.**

*wyrt-wale* wk. f. *wyrtwalu* st. f. root.

*wyrt-wala* m. See Sweet Stud. Dic. and Bosw.-Toll.

**Wig-hafola.**

‘The war head’ in B. 2661 is a poetical kenning for helmet. Grein will change *heafola* into *neafola* reading *wig-neafolan* ‘umbonem bellicum i. e. clypeum: shield’, but Heyne retains *heafola* citing as parallel to *wigheafolan bær* the expressions: — *wæpen beran* 291, *hring-net beran* 2754, and *scyldas bær* 2850.

### 3. Body Armour.

#### Brēost-beorg.

Forms. *breost-beorg* f. (ō) or *-gebeorh* n. (a).

References. propugnaculum : *breostgebeorh* WW. 466<sup>14</sup>; id. : *briostbiorg* Corp. 1696.

Cf. propugnacula : *breostweal* WW. 490<sup>15</sup>.

A protection for the breast, a small *byrne*. The word is found only in the glosses. Cf. further *healsbeorg*.

For the meaning and etymology of the terms for corslet, which are applied to ordinary garments as well, refer to the Heidelberg Diss. by Stroebe 'Die alten'glischen Kleidernamen' (1904).

#### Byrne.

Forms. *byrne* f. (jōn). Late *brinie*, *brenie*, *beorne*.

#### References.

sg. nom. lorica : *byrne* Aelfc. Gl. 317<sup>17</sup>; item WW. 332<sup>18</sup>; lorica, uel torax, uel squama : ~ WW. 142<sup>5</sup>; lorica anata (for hamata) : hringedu ~ WW. 434<sup>1</sup>; thoraca (Aldh. thorace) : ~ WW. 512<sup>17</sup>; on him *byrne* scan B. 405; þær on bence wæs ofer æpelinge yþ-gesene heapo-steapa helm, hringed *byrne* B. 1245; ða wæs of þam hroran helm ond *byrne* lungre alysed B. 1629; urum sceal swoord ond helm, *byrne* ond *byrdu-scrud* bam gemæne B. 2660; *byrne* nemeahte geongum gar-wigan geoce gefremman B. 2673; sæde, þæt his *byrne* abrocen wäre heresceorpum hror Fin. 46; seo *byrne* tobærst By. 144; seo *byrne* sang By. 284; þær wæs on eorle eðgesyne brogden *byrne* ond bill gecost El. 257.

sg. gen. thoracis : *byrnan* WW. 532<sup>8</sup>; ne-mæg *byrnan* hring æfter wig-fruman wide feran hæleðum be healfe B.

2260; *and ic gean minon feder Aedelrede cynge . . . þæs seolfer-hiltan swurdes . . . and þære byrnan* Chart. Th. 559<sup>15</sup>.

sg. dat. *þa gegyrede heo hy mid hærenre tunecan ond mid byrnan, þæt is mid lytelre hacelan* Mart. 190<sup>28</sup>; *mid his scinandan byrnan* Hom. Skt. II, 25<sup>279</sup>; *on byrnan* B. 2704.

sg. acc. *hi to mede hyre . . . brohton . . . swatigne helm, swylce eac side byrnan* Jud. 338; *þa þu me gesealdest sword ond byrnan* Hö. 72; *forgeaf þa Beowulfe bearn Healfdenes . . . helm ond byrnan* B. 1022; *helm ne-gemunde, byrnan side, þa hine se broga angeat* B. 1291; *fordon ic me on hafu bord on byrnan* B. 2524; *he frætwe geheold fela missera, bill ond byrnan* B. 2621; *þioden þrist-hydig þegne gesealde, . . . beah ond byrnan* B. 2812; *þonne he on ealu-bence oft gesealde healsittendum helm ond byrnan* 2868; *þa Byrhtnoð bræd bill of sceðe, . . . and on þa byrnan sloh* By. 163; *oder him ongan wyrcan ðurh dierne cræftas segn ond side byrnan* Sal. 453; *feta, gyf ðu dyrre, æt ðus heaðuwerigan hare byrnan* Wald. 2<sup>17</sup>; *het ða in beran . . . hare byrnan* B. 2153; *and habbað Cristis byrnan* Hom. Skt. I, 5<sup>244</sup>; *and ic . . . an mine kine louerd . . . helm and brinie* Chart. Th. 573<sup>6</sup>; ~ ib. Chart. Th. 556<sup>21</sup>; *ic him to mine here-gete an helm and a brenie* Chart. Th. 582<sup>9</sup>.

pl. nom. acc. *byrnan hringdon* B. 327; *IIII helmas and IIII byrnan* Ges. Lieberm., p. 358 [71a]; *and læddon to ðære beorhtan byrig Bethuliam . . . hare byrnan* Jud. 328.

pl. gen. *and he becwæð his lafod . . . LX healma and LX beornena* Chart. Th. 549<sup>18</sup>.

instr. pl. *billum ond byrnum* B. 40; *hwæt syndon ge searo-hæbbendra, byrnum werede* B. 238; *gebide ge on beorge byrnum werede* B. 2529; *ad on eordan . . . helm[um] behongen, . . . beorhtum byrnum* B. 3140.

Compounds. 1. *byrne* as second member of the compound.

*guð-byrne* f. lorica bellica : corslet.

sg. nom. *guð-byrne* scan B. 321.

*here-byrne* f. idem.

sg. nom. *here-byrne hondum gebroden* B. 1443.

*heapo-byrne* f. idem.

sg. nom. *nemne him heaðo-byrne helpe gefremede* B. 1552.

sg. acc. *ponne he gewyrceð to wera hilde . . . heapu-byrnan* Crā. 64.

*iren-byrne* f. lorica ferrea.

sg. acc. *nam on Ongendio irenbyrnan* B. 2986.

*isern-byrne* f. idem.

sg. acc. *þa he him of dyde isern-byrnan* B. 671.

Worthy of note is the form *heals-brynige*, to gloss thoraca OE. Gl. 2<sup>418</sup>, being from ON. *bryンja* not OE. *byrne*, and corresponding to ME. *brunie*.

2. *byrne* as first member of the compound.

*byrn-ham* m. s. *ham*.

*byrn-wiga* m. bellator loricatus.

sg. nom. *þæt se byrn-wiga bugan sceolde* B. 2918.

voc. *eala byrnwiga!* Wand. 94.

pl. gen. *byrnwigena brego* Jud. 39.

*byrn-wigend* m. idem.

pl. nom. *ealle his weagesiðas, bealde byrnwiggende* Jud. 17.

pl. gen. *swa hire weoruda helm byrnwiggendra beboden hæfde* El. 224.

pl. instr. *and þa gehlodon hildesercum, . . . byrnwigen-dum, werum and wifum wæghengestas* El. 235.

Meaning. lorica, thorax : corslet, coat of mail.

**Etymology.** The Germanic branch is represented by OE. *byrne*, ME. *brunie*, *brynie*, *brinie*, *brenie* (for the dialectical differences cf. Morsbach, ME. Gramm., § 127), NE. *byrnies*, *brinie*, *brynie*, Goth. *brunjō*, OHG. *brunja*, *brunna*, MHG. *brünne*, NHG. *brünne*, MLG. *bronnies*, *bronige*, ON. *brynya*, *brynja hringr*, Dan. *brynie*, Swed. *brynya*. OSlav. *brūnja* (s. Pauls Grundriß, p. 361) is to be regarded as a loan word from the Germ. Berneker (V, 419) attributes also OPr. *brunjos*, Lett. *brūnas* to Germ. borrowing. Prellwitz looks upon OSlav. *brūnja* as borrowed from MHG. *brunje*, *bronigen*, while Uhlenbeck (Archiv f. Slav. Phil. 15<sup>483</sup>) regards it as borrowed from OHG. *brunja*, and Hirt (PBB. 23<sup>487</sup>) from Goth. *brunjō*. However, the fact remains that the Slav. word is Germ. in origin, and has to do with a wellknown list of loan words, for in the names of weapons, and in war tactics the Germanic example was followed by the Balto-Slavs.

Grimm (Gramm. III<sup>443</sup>) connects the word with the vb. *brinnan* 'leuchten, glänzen', on account of the metallic gleam of the *byrne*; Weinhold (Aldnord. Leb. 209) regards the Germ. word as borrowed from the Slav. (cf. Kluge in Grundriß 361), but at present the probability is in favour of bringing it together with OIr. *bruinne* 'breast'. Leo (Fer. Schrift. 1<sup>57</sup>) is in favour of Celt. borrowing and brings forward various proofs from the different Celtic dialects. To the Celt. branch belongs Gael. *bran-nunch* or *bran-nouch* 'the byrnies or coat of mail', from OCymr. *broun* or *bruin* 'the breast, the body', also originally 'the breast covering'. In Welsh and Gael. the meaning of *bron* or *broun* is confined to the 'female breast', which accounts for the entire absence in Welsh of such derived forms as *brannunch* or *bruineadach*, and the very unusual

appearance of such in Bret. — here the corresponding words are formed from a derived form from *bron-* meaning ‘the breast, the body of man in general’ *breunid*, from which then ‘the covering for that part of the body’ *breunidad*. Stokes also (cf. Fick, Vgl. Wb. II, 184) points to Celt. origin for Goth. *brunjô*, OHG. *brunna*, and endeavours to connect them with the Urcelt. rt. \**brend* ‘schwellen, sich erheben’.

The Romance forms OFr. *broigne*, *brunie*, Prov. *bronha*, MLat. *brugna* (in a charter of 813) ‘armour, coat of mail’, are Germ. loan words (s. Diez, Etym. Wb. 534).

The development from ME. into NE. shows various dialectical differences and Norse influence (s. Murray NED.). The most frequent forms are: NE. *byrnies*, which comes from a ME. form *byrny*, *byrnies* (cf. Barbour’s Bruce II, 352 *byrnys*, and Douglas, Aen. XII<sup>95</sup>), also used by Morris in “Sigurd the Wolsung”; NE. *brinie*, *brynie*, with *r* metathesis, from ME. *brinie*, *brynie* (Hav. 1775 *brinie*); all these forms, as also the ME. dialectic variants *brunie*, *bruni*, *brenie*, *breni*, point to Icel. *brynjá*, Dan. *brynie* (cp. Björkman Scand. Loan Words in ME., p. 183). NE. *byrnies* cannot be directly derived from OE. *byrne* with *r* metathesis, which would have given ME. *burn*, *birn*, but is to be regarded as a mixed form derived from the OE. form with metathesis, and the ending of the Scand. form. The ME. form with *u* belongs to the SW. Mittelland (cf. Laym. 1553 *brunie*, 6718 *burne*). The word is now obsolete, being used only as an archaismus.

### Ham, hom.

Forms. *ham*, *hom* m. (a), and *hama*, *homa* m. (an). In simplex *hom*, *homa* (s. Stroebe, Altengl. Kleidern.,

1058. 73) is a kind of under garment worn chiefly by the men in the house without any other upper garment. The form was that of a long jacket without sleeves (later with sleeves), from whence the compounds *byrn-*, *fyrd-hom* etc. with reference to a battle garment, a protecting coat or jacket, in the poets synonymous with *byrne*.

Compounds. *ham*, *hama* as second member of the compound.

*byrn-ham* m. lorica.

acc. pl. *berat linde forð*, . . . and *byrnhomas* Jud. 192.

*fyrd-ham* m. idem.

sg. acc. *heo þone fyrd-hom ðurh-fon nemihte* B. 1504.

*scir-ham* adj. clad in bright armour.

pl. nom. *pæt wīl-cuman Wedera leodum scapan scir-hame to scipe foron* B. 1895.

*byrn-hama* m. lorica.

sg. acc. *ðeahþe laðra fela ðinne byrnhomon billum heowun* Wald. 1<sup>17</sup>.

*gold-hama* m. lorica aurea.

dat. *næs þa fricgendra under goldhoman gad in burgum feorran geferede* El. 991.

*græg-hama* adj. grey-colored.

*gylleð græghama, guðwudu hlynned* Fin. 7.

Etymology. Cf. Stroebe, Die Altenglischen Kleidernamen, p. 74.

### Healsbeorg.

Forms. *halsbeorg*, *halsbearh*, *healsbearh* f. (ō), *healsberga* m. (an) [?].

For *halsbearh* cf. Bülbring, § 134, Sievers 214<sup>1</sup>, for *healsberga* Sievers, § 164<sup>1</sup>. The forms with *r* breaking are in the majority.

References.

sg. nom. thoraca i. lorica : *halsbearh* OE. Gl. 1<sup>5021</sup>; thorace (gl. lorica) : *healsbearh* Hpt. Gl. 521<sup>4</sup>; lorica i. galea : *healsberga* OE. Gl. 1<sup>725</sup>; ~ — : *halsberga* Hpt. Gl. 423<sup>10</sup>.

sg. acc. loricam (inextricabilem) : *unoferwinnendlice halsbearga* (for *a* in f. acc. cf. Sievers, AS. Gramm., § 253, Anm. 2, or nom.? ) OE. Gl. 1<sup>759</sup>; item Hpt. Gl. 424<sup>a</sup> (adds, however, inexpugnabilem to inextricabilem above).

Meaning. lorica, thorax : a piece of protective armour for the neck and throat, which developed later into the hauberk.

Etymology. A compound word formed from Germ. *hals* 'neck' and subst. *beorg* from the vb. *beorgan*, Goth. *bairgan* 'to protect, to cover'. To OE. *heals-beorg* correspond OHG. *halsberg*, -*berga*, -*perga*<sup>1</sup>, MHG. *halsberc* m., *halsberge* f., ON. *halsbiörg* f., Du. *halsbarch*. It appears further as Germ. loan word in It. *usbergo*, *osbergo*, Prov. *ausberc*, OFr. *halberc*, *hauberc*, NFr. *haubert*. The OFr. form was taken up in ME. before the time of Chaucer (cf. C. T. 2433) from which developed NE. *hauberk* 'a coat of ringed mail'.

Hlenča.

Forms. *hlenča* m (an). *hlenče* f. (ōn) [?].

References.

pl. acc. *Moyses bebead . . . frecan arisan, habban heora hlencan . . . beran beorht searo* Exod. 218.

Compound.

*wæl-hlenča*, -*e* m. f. (?). A coat of mail, or possibly fetters.

---

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Steinm.-Sievers, Ahd. Glossen III, 632, 17 lorica : *halsp-ch*, 687, 43 torax : *halsberga*, 682, 65 thorax : *halsberga*.

acc. *cyning cinberge . . . wiges on wenum, wælhencan sceoc, het his herecista healdan georne fæst fyrdgetrum*  
Ex. 176.

pl. nom. *garas lixtor, wridene wælhencan; wordum ond bordum hofon herecombol* El. 24.

**Meaning.** The linked battle garment, a shirt or coat of chain mail. Dietr. (H. Z. X, 424 f.) regards *hlenca* as well as *wæl-hlenca* or *hlence* as the chains with which the conquered in battle were bound. Grein, Zupitza, and others regard both passages, however, as referring to a kind of shirt woven from iron links, and synonymous to such expressions as *hring-locene syrče* Jerem. 46<sup>4</sup>, *hringtren* B. 322, *wæl-net* Exod. 302, all of which can refer only to a garment of chain mail.

**Etymology.** *hlenča*, *hlenče* with the meaning 'ring-mail' is confined to the OE. Cognates in the other Germ. dialects have the meaning 'link, fetter, hip' etc. Cf. ON. *hlekkr* < \**hlenkr* 'a chain', Dan. *lænke*, Swed. *länk* (from whence NE. *link-*, OE. *hlenča*, -e, would have given NE. *linch*). OHG. *lanca*, *hlanca* (*lancha*, *hlancha*) 'hip, loin, bend', MHG. *lanke* and *gelenke* 'the slender supple part of the body between hip and breast', being, as it were, the joint of the whole body, NHG. *Gelenk* 'joint of every kind'. Cf. Lit. *lènkti* 'to bend', and MHG. *lenken* 'to bend, to turn' denominative to MHG. *lanke* (Kluge, Etym. Wb., p. 246). From OHG. *hlanca* is also derived Fr. *flanc* 'side', which has been re-borrowed in German as '*Flanke*', in NE. as *flank* 'the side'. The Germ. forms are derived from Germ. \**hlančo*, \**hlančjōn-* to Idg. \**klong-*, \**kleng-* (cf. Fick, Wb. II, p. 395) 'umfassen'. Cf. further, Lat. *clingere* Skt. *çrikhala* f., *çrikhala-* m. or n. 'chain, fetter' (Uhlenbeck, AI. Wb., p. 315).

### Hrægl.

Form. *hrægl* n. (a).

In simplex *hrægl* has usually the meaning of 'garment in general' i. e. vestimentum. In Beowulf, however, it has in several instances the secondary meaning 'armour, byrnie'.

pl. gen. *onsend Higelace, gif mec hild nime, beadu-scruda betst, þet mine breost wereð, hrægla selest* B. 454.

sg. gen. *bruc ðisses beages, Beowulf leofa, hyse, mid hæle, ond pisces hrægles neot, peo[d]-gestreona* B. 1217.

sg. nom. *him wæs ful boren . . . ond wunden gold estum geeawed, earm-[h]reade twa, hrægl ond hringas* B. 1195.

1217 and 1195 may refer to a valuable garment rather than to a corslet, but the latter is more probable.

#### Compounds.

*beado-hrægl* n. lorica.

sg. nom. *beado-hrægl broden on breostum læg* B. 552.

*fyrd-hrægl* n. idem.

sg. acc. *helm oft gescær, fæges fyrd-hrægl* B. 1527.

For Etymology and later development cf. Stroebe, Alt-englische Kleidernamen, p. 75.

### Hring.

Form. *hring* m. (a).

References. 1. *Annulus aureus* : *hring*, s. Grein, Sprachschatz II, 106.

2. *vinculum* : chain, idem.

3. *annulus loricae, hamus*.

sg. nom. *hring utan ymb-beareh, þet heo lone fyrd-hom ðurh-fon ne-mihte, locen leoðo-syrcan lafan fingrum* B. 1503;

*ne mæg byrnan hring æfter wig-fruman wide feran hæleðum  
behealfe* B. 2260.

pl. dat. *hamis, circulis lorice* : *hringum* OE. Gl. 50<sup>50</sup>.

Compounds. With *hring* as first member of the compound.

*hring-irēn* n. lorica.

sg. nom. *guð-byrne* scan heard *hondlocen*, *hring-irēn*  
*scir* B. 322.

*hring-loca* m. (an) *hami loricae nexi* : a coat of  
ringed-mail.

pl. acc. *he wæs on breostum wund purh ða hringlocan*  
By. 145.

*hring-net* n. s. net.

Derivations.

*hringed* adj. made of rings or links.

sg. nom. *þær on bence wæs... hringed byrne* B. 1245.

sg. acc. *ond his magum ætbær... hringlede byrnan*  
B. 2615.

*hring-mæl, -mæled* adj. capulus annulo instructus :  
hilt adorned with rings.

sg. acc. *he gefeng þa fetel-hilt... hringlede gebrægd*  
B. 1564.

pl. acc. *handum brugdon hæleð of scæðum hringmæled*  
sweord Gen. 1992.

Etymology. To OE. *hring* correspond OHG. *hring*,  
MHG., NHG. *ring*, ON. *hringr*, Dan., Swed., Du., LG. *ring*,  
OSax. *hring*.

Radically related possibly to Gr. *κρίνως* 'ring', CSlav.  
*kragū* 'circle', *kraglū* 'round' to Germ. \**hringa-*, Idg. \**krengho-*  
'to turn, revolve' (Fick, Vgl. Wb. II, 394) from the root  
\*(s)*ker*, (s)*kr-i* 'to turn, to move hither and thither' (Persson  
106<sup>12</sup>, 165<sup>13</sup>).

Nett.

Form. *net* n. (ja).

Compounds.

*breost-nett* n. lorica.

sg. nom. *him on eaxle læg breost-net broden* B. 1548.

pl. nom. *pape for geogude gyt ne mihton under bord-hreodan breostnet wera wið flane feond folnum werigean* Exod. 236.

*here-nett* n. idem.

sg. nom. *nemne him heado-byrne helpe gefremede, here-net hearde* B. 1553.

*hring-nett* n. idem.

sg. acc. *hring-net beran, brogdne beadusercean* B. 2754.

pl. acc. *hring-net bæron, locene leoðosyrcan* B. 1889.

*searo-nett* n. lorica affabre facta.

sg. nom. *on him byrne scan, searo-net seowed smipes or-pancum* B. 406.

*wæl-nett* n. lorica.

pl. *egesan stodon, weredon wælnet, þa se woma cwom* Ex. 202.

Meaning. A battle garment made of woven iron rings, a coat of mail.

Etymology. *Net* alone had not the meaning of coat of mail in the OE. poems, but only in compound. *Net* in simplex is common to most of the Germ. languages and corresponds to OHG. *nezi*, *nezzi*, MHG. *nezze*, *netze*, NHG. *netz*, OFrs., NFRs., OSax., Du., ON. *net*, Swed. *nät*, Dan. *net*, Goth. *nati* from Germ. \**natja-*. According to Uhlenbeck (Goth. Wb. 115) *nati* is derived from an Idg. rt. \**ned-*, *nedh-*, OI. *nadh-*, *nah-* with the meaning 'binden, knüpfen, flechten', in Ablaut to which is the Idg. rt. \**năd*

'nähen, stricken' from which Kluge (Etym. Wb., p. 282) derives the various forms.

**Pād.**

Forms. *pād, paad* f. (ō).

In simplex *pād* has the meaning of 'body garment', cf. Stroebe, Altengl. Kleidern., p. 48. In compound with *here*, however, it has the meaning of 'battle garment, coat of armour'.

*here-pād* f. *vestis militaris, lorica.*

sg. nom. *seo herepad, sio æt hilde gebad ofer borda gebræc bite irena* B. 2258.

For Etymology cf. Heyne, Körperpflege und Kleidung, p. 255, and Stroebe, l. c.

**Sceorp.**

Form. *sceorp* n. (a).

In simplex *sceorp* 'ornatus, vestitus' has the meaning of 'garment', in compound with *fyrd, guð, heoru, hild, sige* it refers to 'war-ornament, battle-garment, armour'.

Compounds.

*fyrd-sceorp* n. *armour.*

acc. *freolic fyldsceorp hwilum folcwigan wicge wegað Ridls. 15<sup>18</sup>.*

*guð-sceorp* n. *war-garment.*

sg. acc. *and læddon to ðære beorhtan byrig . . . hare byrnan, guðsceorp gumena golde gefrætwod* Jud. 329.

*heoru-sceorp* n. *armour.*

sg. acc. *þa þu me gesaldest sveord ond byrnan, helm ond heorosceorp* Hð. 73.

*hilde-sceorp* n. *idem.*

sg. acc. *me ðis hilde-sceorp Hroðgar sealde* B. 2155.

*sige-sceorp.* *adornment of victory, triumphal apparel.*

sg. nom. *gold geriseð on guman sweorde, sellic sige-sceorp*  
Gn. Ex. 127.

For Etym. s. Diss. by Stroebe, p. 79.

### Scrud.

Forms. *scrud, scruid* n. (cons. st.).

In simplex *scrud* = habitus, vestitus, vestimentum, clamis, colobium, 'a garment, a mantel, or some sort of undergarment'. In compound with *guð* etc. = 'a battle garment', byrne, lorica.

*beadu-scrud.* vestimentum bellicum, lorica.

pl. gen. *beadu-scruda* B. 453 (for citation s. *hrægl*).

*byrd u-scrud* (?).

sg. nom. *urum sceal sveord ond helm, byrne ond byrdu-scrud bam gemæne* B. 2660. For the various readings here suggested cf. Heyne's Beow. Glossar 118, Bugge, Tidskr. VIII, 58, and Zach. Z. IV, 216. Heyne is of the opinion that *byrdu* is a mistake for *bord*, which would give the meaning of 'an especially richly adorned shield with decorated umbo and *rand-beag*'. Bugge, proposes the reading *bjwdu-scrud* (from vb. *bjwan*) 'a richly adorned garment', which is nearer to the original meaning of *scrud*. Ettmüller and Thorpe suggest *beadu-scrud* 'lorica, byrne' supporting the reading by reference to B. l. 453 above. This reading apparently has much in its favour as it makes a better parallel to *byrne*. Holthausen, in his new Beowulf edition, has *bord ond beaduscrud bam gemæne*.

*guð-scrud.* vestitus bellicosus.

sg. nom. *pær wæs on corle eðgesyne brogden byrne... geatolic guðscrud* El. 258.

For Etymology s. Diss. by Stroebe, p. 81.

Serēe.

Forms. *serēe, syrēe* f. (jōn).

References for meaning 'lorica'.

sg. nom. *æt þem ade wæs eþ-gesyne swat-fah syrce*  
B. 1111.

pl. nom. acc. *hwanon ferigeað ge fætte scyldas, græge*  
*syrcan* B. 334; *syrcan hrysedon* B. 226.

Compounds. *serēe* as second member of the compound.

*beado-serēe* f. tunica bellica, lorica.

sg. acc. *hring-net beran, brogdne beadu-sercean* B. 2755.

Cf. ON. *bōt-serkr*.

*heoru-serēe* f. idem.

sg. acc. *oretta . . . heard under helme, hioro-sercean*  
*bær under stan-cleofu* B. 2539.

*here-serēe* f. idem.

sg. acc. *sæ-deor monig hilde-tuxum here-syrcan bræc*  
B. 1511.

*hilde-serēe* f. idem.

pl. dat. *and þa gehlodon hilde-sercum, . . . werum ond*  
*wifum wæghengestas* El. 234.

*leoðo-serēe* f. lorica hamata : chain mail (lit. limb shirt).

sg. acc. *þæt heo þone fyrd-hom ðurh-fon ne-mihte, locene*  
*leoðo-syrcan laðan fingrum* B. 1505.

pl. acc. *hring-net bærion, locene leoðo-syrcan* B. 1890.

*lic-serēe* f. lorica corpus tegens.

nom. *þær me wið laðum lic-syrce min heard hand-*  
*locen helpe gefremede* B. 550.

Meaning. A kind of shirt worn by men and women, which, however, in Beowulf, and in compound with *beadu* etc. in the Elene also, refers to the shirtlike coat

long and wide worn by the men in battle, and frequently woven from iron links (s. Part I, p. 100).

Etymology. A Lat. loan word for which cf. Pogatscher, §§ 129, 269, 279, and Diss. by Stroebe, p. 60, Sarrazin (PBB. XI, 173 ff.) cites *sercē* as a Norse loan word in Beowulf, which is refuted by Sievers (PBB. XI, 354).

### Wæd, Wæde.

Forms. *wæd* f. (i), *wæde* n. (ja).

In simplex *wæd* and *gewæd* have the meaning of 'dress, garment' the Lat. lemma being *indumentum*. For references s. Stroebe, Altenglische Kleidernamen, p. 82. In compound, however, with *here*, *gūð* etc., *wæd* has the meaning of 'battle garment' : *vestis bellica*.

#### Compounds.

*here-wæd* f. *vestis militaris*.

inst. pl. *þa wæs on sande sxe-geap naca hladen here-wædum* B. 1897.

Cf. ON. *here-vaðir*.

*heado-wæd* f. *vestis bellica*.

inst. pl. *ne hyrde ic cymlicor ceol gegyrwan hilde-wæpnum ond heado-wædum* B. 39.

*gewæde* n.

*breost-gewæde* n. *lorica* : breast garment, byrnies.

pl. nom. *gehwearf þa in Francna . . . fæðm . . . feorh cyninges, breost-gewædu ond se beah somod* B. 1212.

pl. acc. *no ðy ær suna sinum syllan wolde, hwatum Heorowearde . . . breost-gewædu* B. 2162.

*eorl-gewæde* n. *vestitus virilis* : armour.

pl. dat. *gyrede hine Beowulf eorl-gewædum* B. 1442.

*gūð-gewæde* n. *vestitus bellicosus*.

nom. acc. pl. *syrcan hrysedon, guð-gewædo* B. 227; *ond his magum ætbær brun-fagne helm... guð-gewædu, fyrd-searu fulsic* B. 2617; *ac hy scamiende scyldas bærar, guð-gewædu* B. 2851; *pæt he genunga guð-gewædu wraðe forwurpe* B. 2871.

pl. gen. *geaf him ða mid Geatum guð-gewæda æghwæs unrim* B. 2623.

For Etymology s. Diss. given above p. 84.

#### 4. Greaves.

##### Ban-beorg.

Forms. *ban-beorg, -berg* f. (ð), *-gebeorg, -geberg* n. (a).

References. *ocreos (ocreas) : banberge, scan(c)gebeorg* WW. 535<sup>9</sup>; *ocreis : baangeberg* WW. 35<sup>13</sup> = Corp. 1426; *ocreis : banbeorgum* WW. 459<sup>13</sup>.

Meaning and Etymology. Protection for the legs or greaves is the name applied to the protective armour of thin plates of metal, which reaching to the foot were made fast there. Cf. OHG. *beinberga* (Steinm. - Sievers III, 632, 6, *ocrea : peinperga*, 637, 44, *ocree : beinberga*), MHG. *beinberge*. Cf. also Walt. 335: *Ingentes ocreis suras complectitur aureis*, and San Marte, p. 42.

##### Ban-rift.

Form. *bān-rift* f.

References. *tibialis : ban-rift* WW. 277<sup>37</sup>; id. : *baan-rift* Ep. 1031, *baan-ryft* Er. 2025; id. : *baan-rist* Corp. 2025.

Cf. *tibarii : pein-refta* Steinm.-Sievers I, 665<sup>15</sup>.

Meaning. *Ban-rift* refers to the bandages so frequently worn by warriors. For further discussion and Etymology s. above mentioned Diss. by Stroebe p. 12. Also Heyne, *Haus-Altertümer*, III, p. 253.

### Scin-hosa (?).

Forms. *scin-hosu* f. (ō) [?], *-hosa* m. (an) [?], *-hose* f. (ōn) [?]; nom. pl. [?] *-hosa*, dat. pl. *scinhosum*.

Cf. Sievers, Ags. Gramm., § 278, Anm. 1.

References. *casus obliquus* (?). *ocreis* : *scinhose* Hpt. Gl. 521<sup>5</sup>; item OE. Gl. 1<sup>5022</sup> (MS. R. reads *hosum*). pl. dat. *ocreis* : *of scinhosum* OE. Gl. 2<sup>419</sup>.

nom. m. (?). *caliga* and *ocrea* : *hosa* Aelfc. Gl. 314<sup>14</sup> = WW. 327<sup>29</sup>; = ib. 547<sup>10</sup>.

Cf. *ocreae*, *uel tibiales* : *leper-hosa* WW. 125<sup>31</sup>.

Meaning. Hose for the shins, greaves. At an early period a metal plate appears to have been attached to the stocking, reaching only to the knee, and protecting only the front of the leg. Later in the age of Chivalry they increased in size, were made of iron or steel rings, and belonged to the full equipment of a knight. They were at first used only for the right leg, which was unprotected by the shield.

*Scin-hosa* (?) is a compound of *scinu* shin and *hosa*, a kind of stocking or covering for the leg. In some cases of metal, the NE. greaves. Cf. Stroebe Diss. for *hosa* in simplex p. 37. Cf. also MHG. *sin isen hosen* Wigalois 295<sup>11</sup>.

### Sceanc-gebeorg.

The neut. *sceanc-gebeorg* is synonymous with *bān-beōrg* 'greaves, shank protection'. It is recorded only once as *ocreos* (*ocreas*) : *banberge*, *scan(c)gebeorg* WW. 535<sup>9</sup>.



## Corrections.

Page 4, line 10: read 'Psalms' for 'Psalmes'.

Page 48, line 9 from bottom: read 'takes' instead of 'is N. Europ. taking'.

Page 49, line 1 and 2 from top: cancel the words 'Caesar for mention of arrows among the Gauls;' and note <sup>1</sup>.

Page 50, line 8: read *isern-scure*, instead of *isern scure*.

Page 50, line 15: read II, 171 instead of II, 17.

Page 50, line 16: read 'thicker' instead of 'ticker'.

Page 50, line 23: cancel the words '*draca ne fleoged*' (Fins. 3).

Page 118, line 4: cancel 'sg. instr.'.

Page 118, line 10: read *sylð me* inst. of *sylðme*.

Page 118: cancel lines 20 and 21.

Page 118, line 23: read 'exuviae' inst. of 'exuuiae'.

Page 118, line 25: read 'exuuiae' inst. of 'exuuiae'.

Page 119, line 4: put comma after *bidon*.

Page 119, line 4 fr. b.: read \**rauða* inst. of \**rauba*.

Page 119, line 5: read 'booty' inst. of 'boody'.

Page 119, line 9: read 'nom. acc. sg. or pl.' inst. of 'nom. acc. pl.'

Page 119, line 11: read *todælan* inst. of *to dælan*.

Page 119, line 14: read 'manubrium: *waelreaf* Corp. 1277; inst. of 'manubrium: *wæl-reaf* Corp. 1279'.

Page 119, line 15: cancel 'Er. 1277'.

Page 119, line 22: The words 's. under *rēaf* WW. 233<sup>45</sup>' belong to sg. nom. in the preceding line.

Page 128, line 13–14: cancel 'sg. nom.' and transfer the reference to 'sg. acc.'

Page 153, line 5 and 6 fr. b.: read *wælsteng* inst. of *wæl-steng*.

Page 161, line 3: cancel 1.

Page 162, line 9: read 'caedens' inst. of 'cadens'.

Page 162, line 16: read *yldo*, inst. of *yldo-*.

Page 162, line 17: read *fromweardum* inst. of *from weardum*.

- Page 163, line 1: read *wid-cudne* inst. of *widcudne*.  
Page 163, line 8 fr. b.: read *ágrí-s* f. inst. of *áſri-s*.  
Page 164, line 1: read *andweard*.  
Page 165, line 9: read *heoru-dreorige*.  
Page 167, line 16 f.: read 'most Old Germanic dialects' inst. of 'Goth. and Icel. or ON. though wanting in WGerm.'.  
Page 167, line 19: read *kérus* inst. of *kérus*.  
Page 176, line 5 fr. b.: read 'mucrone' inst. of 'muerone'.  
Page 234 ff.: read *scild* inst. of *sciield*.



